

# ***MAZDA CX-8***

## **Zoom-Zoom**

**All children instinctively know it.**

**A few adults still remember it.**

**One unique car company refuses to outgrow it.**

**In grown-up language, it means the exhilaration and liberation that come from experiencing sheer motion.**

**But as usual, children put it much better and simply call it "Go Zoom-Zoom."**

**We practice it every day.**

**It's why we build the kind of cars we do.**

**Zoom-Zoom.**

**Can we re-awaken it in you today?**

# Quick Guide

This Quick Guide is provided as a simple explanation of how to operate some of the features equipped on your Mazda CX-8.

For more information regarding the following sections, refer to the main owner's manual.

The content described in the quick guide may differ depending on the vehicle grade and specification.

<b>Essential Safety Equipment</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Before Driving</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>When Driving</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>Interior Features</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>Maintenance and Care</b>	<b>39</b>
<b>If Trouble Arises</b>	<b>41</b>

The meaning for each of the symbols used in the Quick Guide is as follows:



Detailed explanation pertaining to some information.

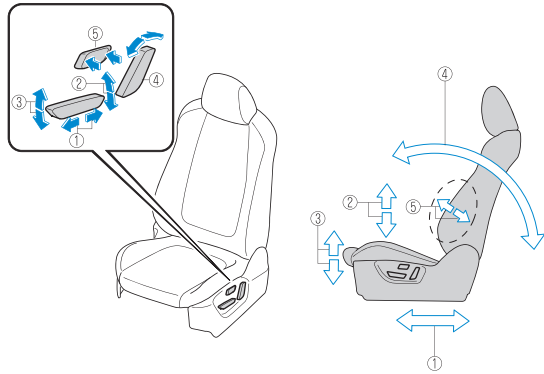
## Seat Operation

### Adjusting the Driver's Seat

The adjustments for the driving position recommended by Mazda are done using the following procedures.

1. Moving the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.
2. Adjusting the seatback angle.
3. Adjusting the seat position forward and back.
4. Adjusting the seat height.
5. Adjusting the steering wheel position.
6. Adjusting the head restraint position.

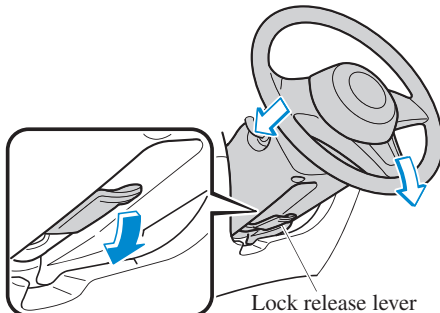
- ① Seat Slide
- ② Height Adjustment
- ③ Height Adjustment for Front Edge of Seat Bottom
- ④ Seat Recline
- ⑤ Lumbar Support Adjustment



### Before making adjustments to the driving position recommended by Mazda

#### How to move the steering wheel to its default position

Lower the lever, move the steering wheel to the lowest position, and then push it down and all the way back.



#### How to move a driver's seat to its default position

1. Slide the seat all the way back.
2. Lower the seat to its lowest height.
3. Sit squarely in the seat and rest your back against the seatback.



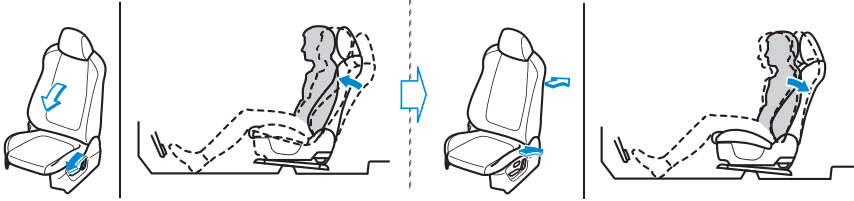
# Essential Safety Equipment

## Seat Operation

### Seat adjustment procedure for the driving position recommended by Mazda

#### Adjusting the seatback angle (reclining)

Adjust the seatback to the angle providing a comfortable seated posture.

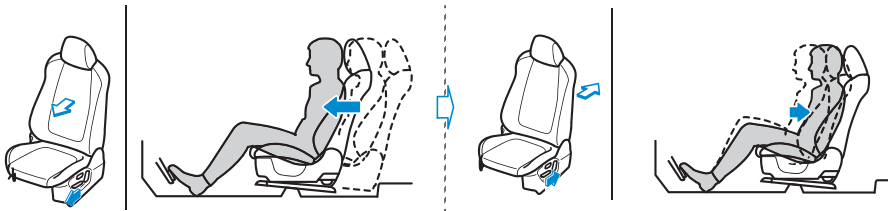


With your posture slightly slouched, move the seatback forward to the angle where your waist feels slightly cramped.

Move the seatback backward to a comfortable seated posture without any feeling of cramping in your waist.

#### Adjusting the seat position forward and back (sliding)

Adjust the seat to the position best for operating the accelerator and brake pedals.



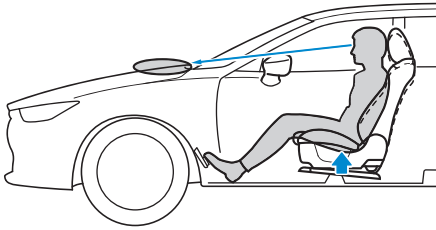
Place your left foot on the footrest, your right foot between the accelerator and brake pedals. With your heel set on the floor, set your right foot on the brake pedal and move the seat forward as far as possible until you feel a slight cramping in your ankle.

With your right foot set on the brake pedal, move the seat back until you no longer feel cramping in your ankle. For the details, refer to the owner's manual.

## Seat Operation

### Adjusting the seat height

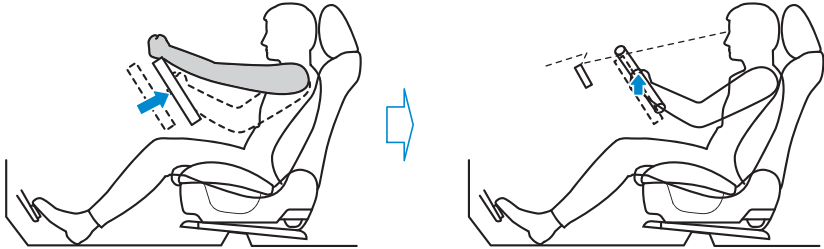
Adjust the seat height to a position where you have a clear forward view and you can drive the vehicle easily.



With your back resting against the seatback, raise the seat to the height where you can see the rear edge area of the bonnet surface from the windscreen. With the manual seat, if you raise the seat height, the seat moves forward. Adjust the seat forward or back again.

### Adjusting the steering wheel position

Adjust the steering wheel to the position where it can be operated easily and the gauges can be viewed easily.

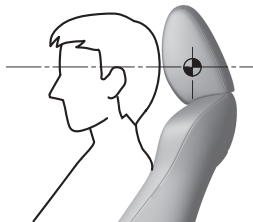


With your back resting against the seatback, extend both arms, place them on the top of the steering wheel, and pull the steering wheel towards you to the position of your wrists.

Adjust the steering wheel height so that the gauges can be viewed easily. Raise the lever to securely lock the steering wheel.

### Adjusting the head restraint position

Adjust the head restraint so that the centre is even with the top of the passenger's ears.

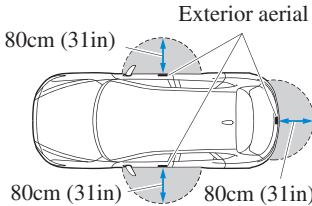


# Before Driving

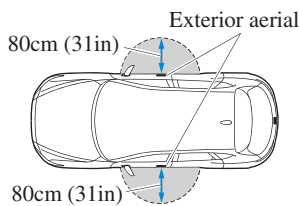
## Operational Range

The advanced keyless system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

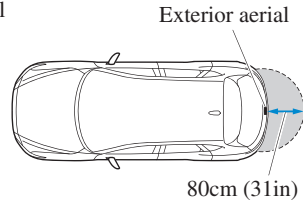
### Lock



### Unlock



### Opening the Liftgate



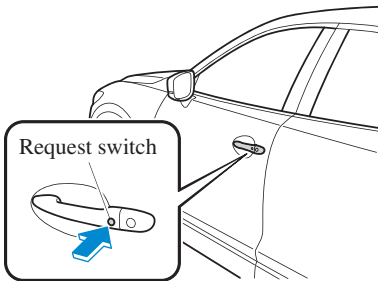
Operational range

## Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch

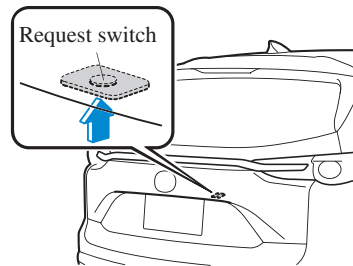
All doors and the liftgate can be locked/unlocked by pressing the request switch on the front doors while the key is being carried.

The request switch on the liftgate can only be used to lock all doors and the liftgate.

### Front doors



### Liftgate (Lock only)

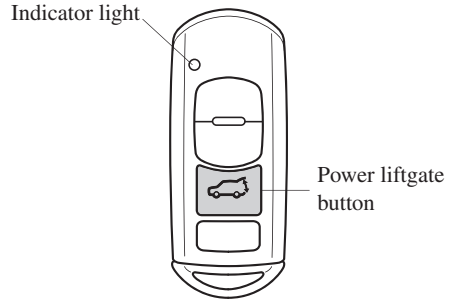


## Power Liftgate

The power liftgate opens/closes electrically by operating the switches in the vehicle or the buttons on the keyless entry system transmitter.

### Operation using the transmitter

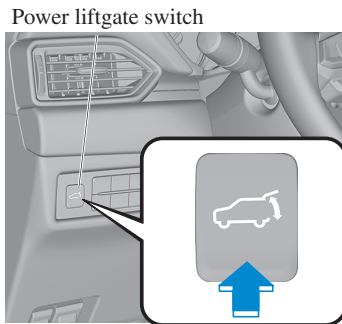
Press the power liftgate button for one second or longer. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes after the beep sounds.



### Operation using each switch

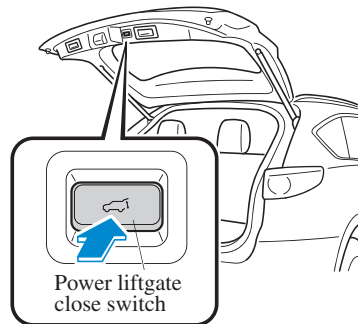
#### **Operation from the driver's seat (To open/close)**

Press the power liftgate switch for about one second or longer while the liftgate is in the fully closed/open position. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes fully after the beep sound is heard.



#### **Operation from outside (To close)**

Press the power liftgate close switch while the liftgate is fully opened. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate closes automatically after the beep sound is heard.



# Before Driving

## Fuel Requirements and Capacities

### SKYACTIV-G 2.5

Fuel	Research Octane Number	Capacity
Premium unleaded fuel (within E20)* <sup>1</sup>	95 or above	2WD: 72.0 L (19.0 US gal, 15.8 Imp gal)
Regular unleaded fuel* <sup>1</sup>	92 or above	4WD: 74.0 L (19.5 US gal, 16.3 Imp gal)
	90 or above	

\*1 For the details, refer to the owner's manual.

### SKYACTIV-D 2.2

Fuel	Capacity
The vehicle will operate efficiently on diesel fuel with specification EN590 or the equivalent.	2WD: 72.0 L (19.0 US gal, 15.8 Imp gal)
	4WD: 74.0 L (19.5 US gal, 16.3 Imp gal)

When refuelling, always add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.

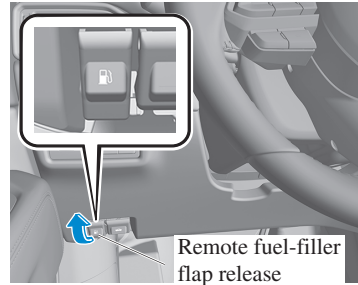




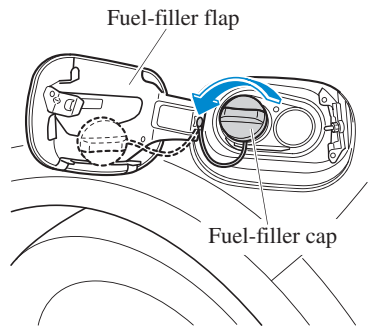
## Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap

### Refuelling

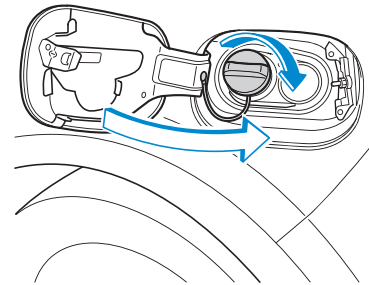
1. To open the fuel-filler flap, pull the remote fuel-filler flap release.



2. To remove the fuel-filler cap, turn it anticlockwise.
3. Attach the removed cap to the inner side of the fuel-filler flap.



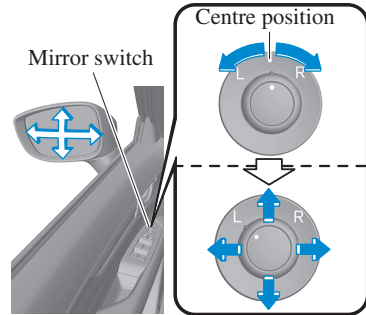
4. Insert the refuelling nozzle all the way and begin refuelling. Pull out the refuelling nozzle after the refuelling stops automatically.
5. To close the fuel-filler cap, turn it clockwise until a click is heard.
6. To close, press the fuel-filler flap until it locks securely.



# Before Driving

## Outside Mirrors

1. Rotate the mirror switch to the left (**L**) or right (**R**) to choose the left or right side mirror.
2. Press the mirror switch in the appropriate direction.

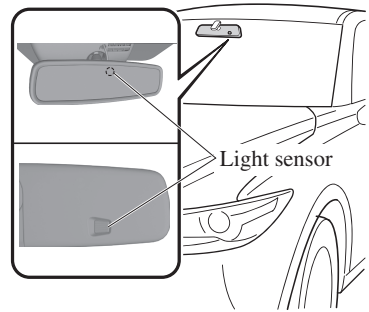


## Rearview Mirror

### Auto-dimming mirror

The auto-dimming mirror automatically reduces the glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear when the ignition is switched ON.

The auto-dimming function is cancelled when the ignition is switched ON and the shift/selecter lever is in reverse (R).

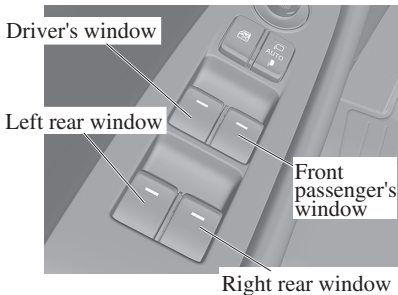


## Operation of the Power Windows

The window opens while the switch is pressed and it closes while the switch is pulled up with the ignition switched ON.

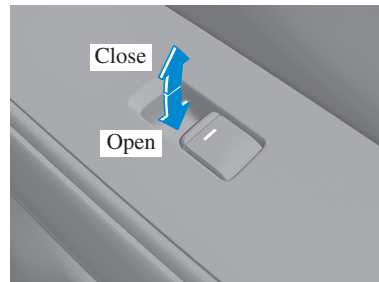
The passenger windows may be opened or closed using the master control switches on the driver's door.

### Master control switches



### Front passenger's window switch

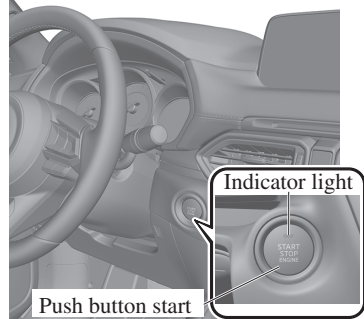
### Rear window switches



# When Driving

## Starting the Engine

1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Continue to press the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
3. Put the vehicle in park (P). If you must restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift into neutral (N).
4. Press the push button start after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.



### (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

- The starter does not rotate until the glow indicator light turns off.



- If the ignition is left switched ON for a long period of time without the engine running after the glow plugs are warmed up, the glow plugs may warm up again which will illuminate the glow indicator light.
- When starting the engine, do not release the brake pedal until the glow indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the engine starts, after pressing the push button start.
- If the brake pedal is released before the engine starts, depress the brake pedal again and press the push button start to start the engine.

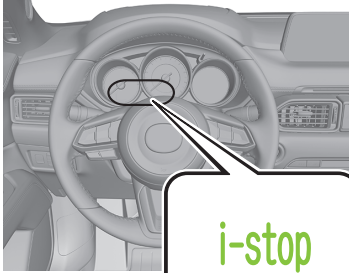


## Operation of i-stop Function

The i-stop function automatically stops the engine when the vehicle is stopped at a traffic light or stuck in traffic, and then restarts the engine automatically to resume driving. The system provides improved fuel economy, reduced exhaust gas emissions, and eliminates idling noise while the engine is stopped.

### NOTE

- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns on under the following conditions:
  - When engine idling is stopped.



- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns off when the engine is restarted.

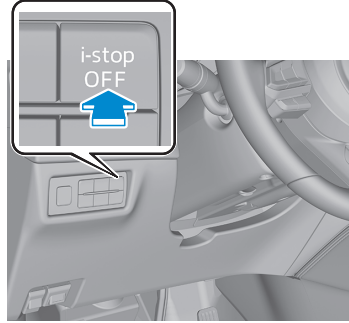
The i-stop function restart conditions differ depending on the system used.



# When Driving

## i-stop OFF Switch

By pressing the switch until a beep sounds, the i-stop function is turned off and the i-stop warning light (amber) in the instrument cluster turns on. By pressing the switch again until the beep sounds, the i-stop function becomes operational and the i-stop warning light (amber) turns off.



## i-stop warning light (amber)/i-stop indicator light (green)

### i-stop warning light (amber)

i-stop

- The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and turns off when the engine is started.
- The light turns on when the i-stop OFF switch is pressed and the system is turned off.

### i-stop indicator light (green)

i-stop

- The light turns on while engine idling is stopped and turns off when the engine is restarted.

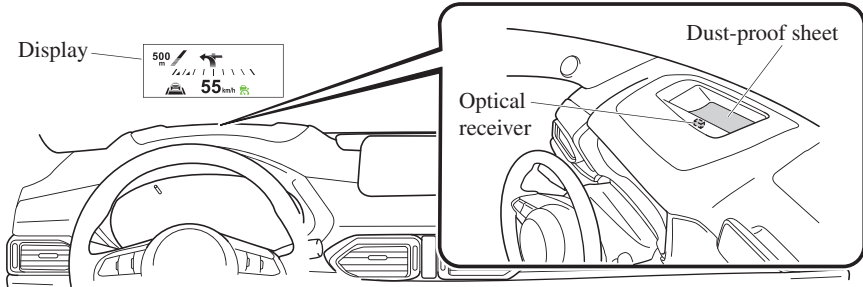
## i-stop Warning Beep

If the driver's door is opened while engine idling is stopped, the warning sound operates to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped. It stops when the driver's door is closed.



## Active Driving Display

The active driving display indicates the vehicle speed, system operation status, and warnings.



### **WARNING**















***Always adjust the display brightness and position with the vehicle stopped:***  
*Adjusting the display brightness and position while driving the vehicle is dangerous as doing so could distract your attention from the road ahead and lead to an accident.*
















# When Driving

## Warning Indication/Warning Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.















Signal	Warning
	Brake System Warning Light
	ABS Warning Light
	Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light
	Engine Oil Warning Light
	High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication/Warning Light
	Power Steering Malfunction Indication/Malfunction Indicator Light
	Master Warning Indication/Warning Light
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Indication/Warning Light
	Check Engine Light
	Automatic Transaxle Warning Indication
	4WD Warning Indication
	Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light
 (Amber/White)	KEY Warning Indication
 (Amber)	i-stop Warning Light














Signal	Warning
 (Amber)	Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Indication/Warning Light
	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication
 (Amber)	Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warning Indication
 (Amber)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Warning Indication
 (Amber)	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication
	LED Headlight Warning Light
	Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Indication
	Low Fuel Warning Indication
	Engine Oil Level Warning Light
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)
	Door-Ajar Warning Indication
	Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication





## Indication/Indicator Lights

Signal	Indicator Lights
	Seat Belt Indicator Light (Rear seat)
	i-stop Indicator Light
	Security Indicator Light
	Wrench Indication
	Glow Indicator Light
	Diesel Particulate Filter Indication
	Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light
	Shift Position Indication
	Lights-On Indication/Indicator Light
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light
	Fog Light Indicator Light
	Direction Indicator/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Indication/Indicator Light
	AUTOHOLD Active Indicator Light

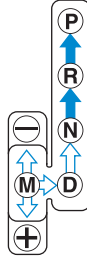
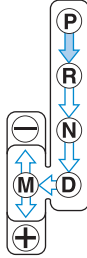
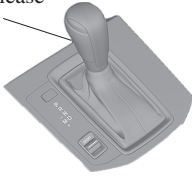
Signal	Indicator Lights
	TCS/DSC Indicator Light
	TCS OFF Indicator Light
	Select Mode Indication
	Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Indicator Light
	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light
	Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Main Indication
	Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Main Indication
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indication
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF Indicator Light
	Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indication
	Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) OFF Indicator Light
	Cruise Main Indication
	Cruise Set Indication



# When Driving

## Automatic Transaxle Controls

Lock-release button



### Various Lockouts:

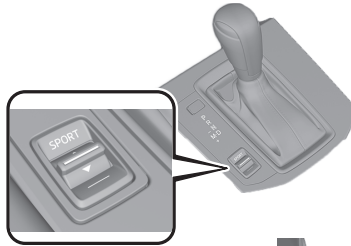
	Indicates that you must depress the brake pedal and hold in the lock-release button to shift (The ignition must be switched ON)
	Indicates the selector lever can be shifted freely into any position.
	Indicates that you must hold in the lock-release button to shift.

## Drive Selection

Drive selection is a system to switch the vehicle's drive mode. When the sport mode is selected, vehicle's response against accelerator operation is enhanced. This provides additional quick acceleration which may be needed to safely make manoeuvres such as lane changes, merging onto freeways, or passing other vehicles.

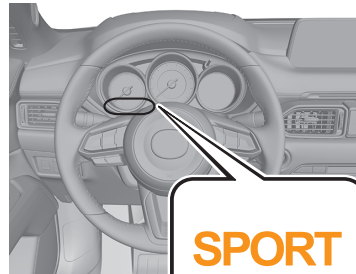
### Drive Selection Switch

Press the drive selection switch forward “ (SPORT) ” to select the sport mode. Pull the drive selection switch back “ ( — ) ” to cancel the sport mode.

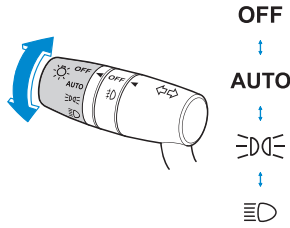


### Select Mode Indication

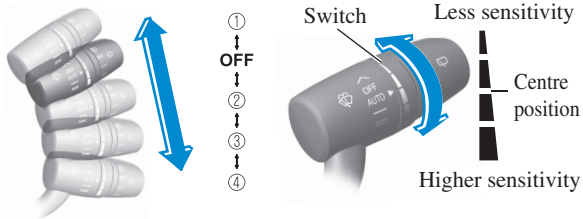
When the sport mode is selected, the select mode indication turns on in the instrument cluster.



## Operation of the Headlights



## Operation of the Windscreen Wipers



Switch Position	Wiper operation
①	Operation while pulling up lever
OFF	Stop
②	Auto control
③	Low speed
④	High speed

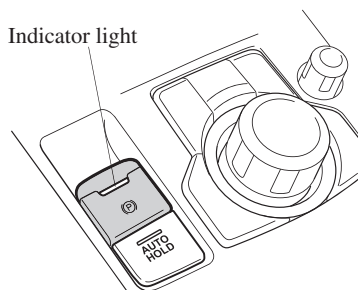
When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the rain sensor senses the amount of rainfall on the windscreen and turns the wipers on or off automatically.



# When Driving

## Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

The EPB equipment applies the parking brake using an electric motor. When the parking brake is applied, the EPB switch indicator light turns on.

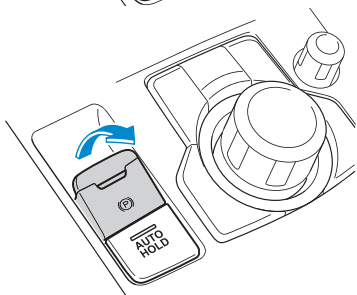


### When applying the parking brake

The parking brake can be applied regardless of the ignition switch position.

Securely depress the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.

The parking brake is applied and the EPB indicator light and the EPB switch indicator light turn on.

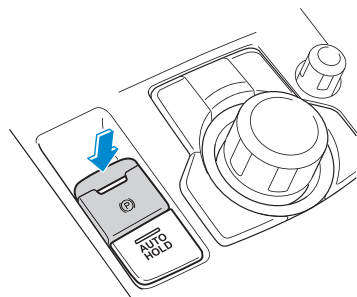


### When releasing the parking brake

The EPB can be released while the ignition is switched ON or the engine is running. When the parking brake is released, the EPB indicator light and the EPB switch indicator light turn off.

### Parking brake manual release

Firmly depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch.



### Parking brake automatic release

If the accelerator pedal is depressed with the parking brake applied and all of the following conditions met, the parking brake is released automatically.

For the operation conditions, refer to the main owner's manual.

## **i-ACTIVSENSE**

i-ACTIVSENSE is a collective term covering a series of advanced safety and driver support systems which make use of a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and radar sensors.

These systems consist of active safety and pre-crash safety systems.

These systems are designed to assist the driver in safer driving by reducing the load on the driver and helping to avert collisions or reduce their severity. However, because each system has its limitations, always drive carefully and do not rely solely on the systems.

### **Active Safety Technology**

Active Safety Technology supports safer driving by helping the driver to recognise potential hazards and avert accidents.

### **Driver awareness support systems**

#### **Nighttime visibility**

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)

Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)

#### **Left/right side and rear side detection**

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)

#### **Inter-vehicle distance recognition**

Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)

#### **Driver fatigue detection**

Driver Attention Alert (DAA)

#### **Rear obstruction detection when leaving a parking space**

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

#### **Full-surround recognition**

360° View Monitor

### **Driver support systems**

#### **Inter-vehicle distance**

Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)

#### **Lane departure**

Lane-keep Assist System (LAS)



## i-ACTIVSENSE

### **Pre-Crash Safety Technology**

Pre-crash safety technology is designed to assist the driver in averting collisions or reduce their severity in situations where they cannot be avoided.

#### **Collision damage reduction in low vehicle speed range**

##### **Forward driving**

Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)

##### **Reverse driving**

Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

#### **Collision damage reduction in medium/high speed range**

Smart Brake Support (SBS)

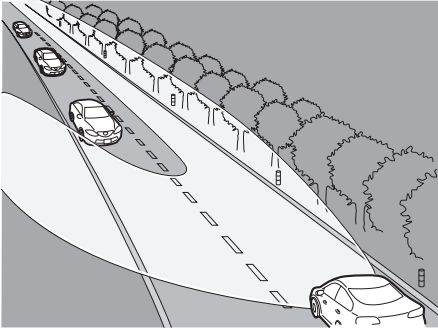


## Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)

The ALH are a system which uses the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) to determine the situation of a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction while driving at night to automatically switch the illumination range of the headlights, the illuminated area, or the illumination brightness.

### **Glare-free high beam**

This feature dims only the high-beam light shone on the vehicle ahead. The high beams will dim while driving at a speed of about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster. When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the beams switch to the low beams.

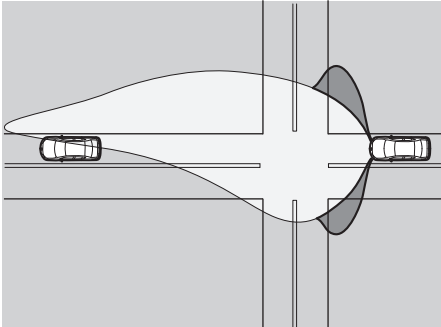


### **NOTE**

The headlight high-beam indicator light turns on while the high beams are on.

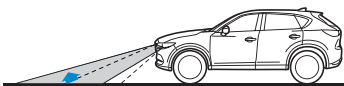
### **Wide-range low beam**

This feature extends the illumination range of the light cast by the low beams while driving at a speed less than about 40 km/h (25 mph).



### **Highway mode**

This feature shifts the illumination angle of the light cast by the headlights upward while driving on highways.



## Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)

### **To Operate the System**

The system switches the headlights to the high beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. The ALH indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.

### **CAUTION**

- Do not modify the suspensions or headlight units, or remove the camera. Otherwise, the ALH may not operate normally.
- Do not rely excessively on the ALH and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.

### **NOTE**

Under the following conditions, the ALH may not operate normally. Manually switch between the high and low beams according to the visibility, and the road and traffic conditions.

- When there are other sources of light in the area such as street lamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.
- When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.
- When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.
- When driving on roads with sharp curves or undulations.
- When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles ahead or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.
- When there is insufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.
- When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.
- When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.

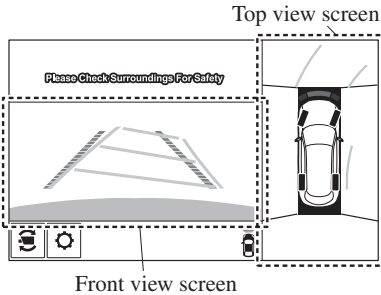


## 360° View Monitor

The 360° View Monitor assists the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle using various indications and warning information in the centre display while the vehicle is being driven at low speeds or while parking.

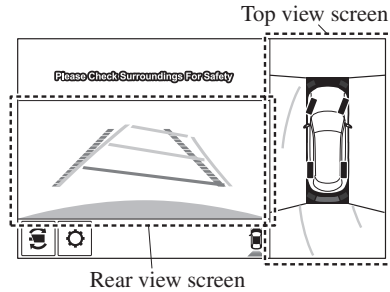
### Top view/Front view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the vehicle front.



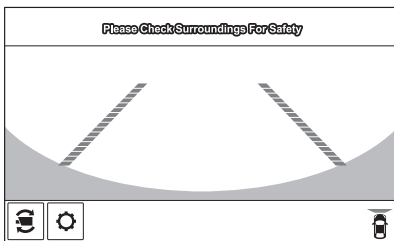
### Top view/Rear view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the rear of the vehicle.



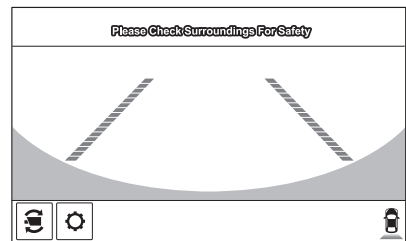
### Front wide view

Displays the image of the front of the vehicle (wide-area).



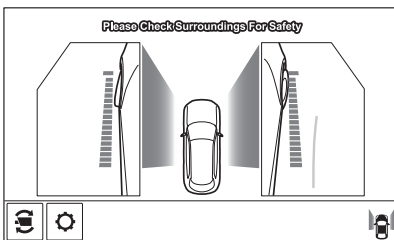
### Rear wide view

Displays the image of the rear of the vehicle (wide-area).



### Side view

Displays the image of the left and right sides of the vehicle.



# When Driving

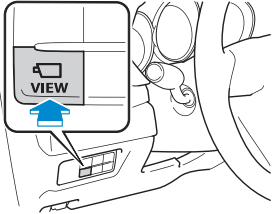
## How to Use the System

### Top view/Front view, Front wide view, Side view

#### Indication

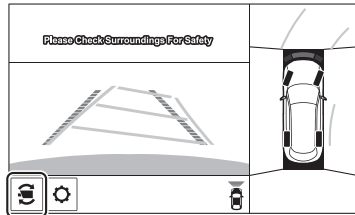
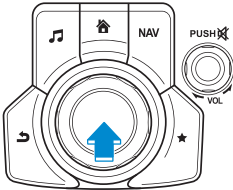
Images are displayed on the screen when the 360°View Monitor switch is pressed with all of the following conditions met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The shift lever-selector lever is in a position other than R.



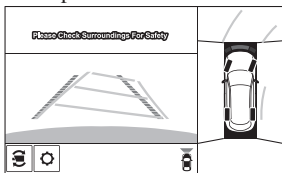
#### Display switching

You can change the displayed screen by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view is displayed.

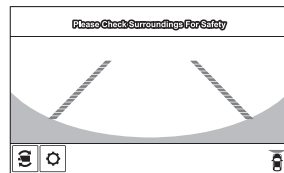


Switch camera icon

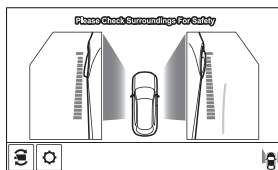
Top view/Front view



Front wide view



Side view



## How to Use the System

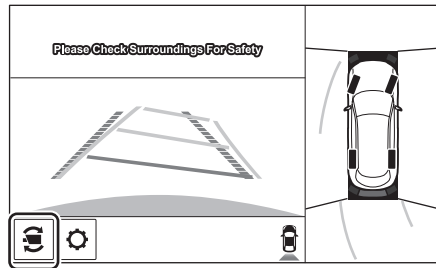
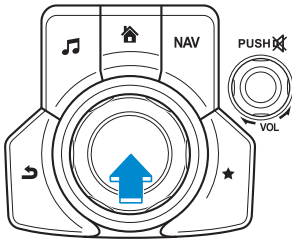
### Top view/Rear view, Rear wide view

The top view/rear view, rear wide view displays when all of the following conditions are met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- Shift lever/selector lever is in R position.

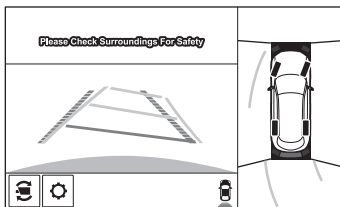
### **Display switching**

The displayed screen can be switched by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/rear view, rear wide view is displayed.

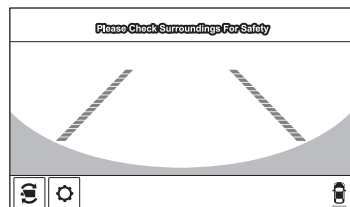


Switch camera icon

Top view/Rear view



Rear wide view



## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)

The MRCC system is designed to maintain headway control\*1 with a vehicle ahead according to your vehicle's speed using a radar sensor (front) to detect the distance to the vehicle ahead and a preset vehicle speed without you having to use the accelerator or brake pedals.

\*1 Headway Control: Control of the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead detected by the MRCC system.

Additionally, if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead such as if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a warning sound and a warning indication in the display are activated simultaneously to alert you to maintain a sufficient distance between the vehicles.

### **WARNING**

#### **Do not rely completely on the MRCC:**

*The MRCC system has detection limitations depending on the type of vehicle ahead and its conditions, the weather conditions, and the road conditions.*

*Additionally, the system may be unable to decelerate sufficiently to avoid hitting the vehicle ahead if the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly or another vehicle cuts into the driving lane, which could result in an accident.*

*Always drive carefully and verify the surrounding conditions and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.*



## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)

### **WARNING**

***Do not use the MRCC system in the following locations, using the MRCC system at the following locations may result in an unexpected accident:***

- ***General roads other than highways.***
- ***Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy and there is insufficient space between vehicles.***
- ***Roads where frequent and repetitive acceleration and deceleration occur.***
- ***When entering and exiting interchanges, service areas, and parking areas of highways.***
- ***Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads.***
- ***Long, descending slopes.***
- ***Slopes with a steep gradient***

***For safety purposes, switch the MRCC system off when it is not being used.***

### **NOTE**

- The MRCC system does not detect the following as physical objects.
- Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction
- Pedestrians
- Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)
- If a vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely low speed, the system may not detect it correctly.

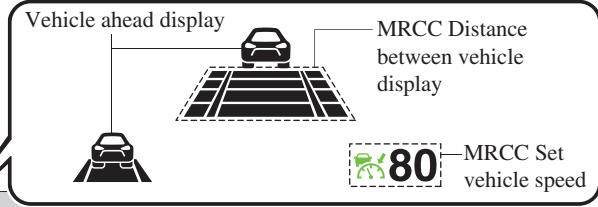


# When Driving

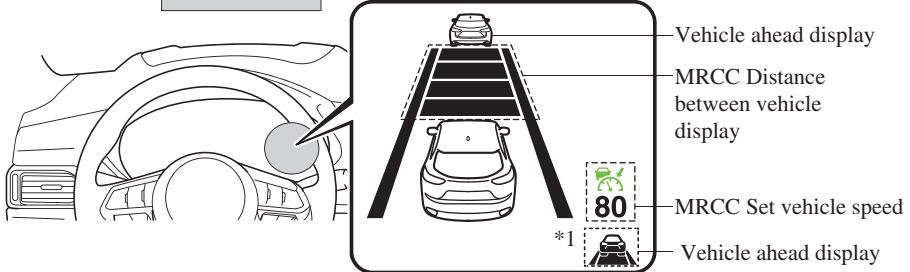
## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Display Indication

The MRCC setting status and operation conditions are indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display.

Active driving display

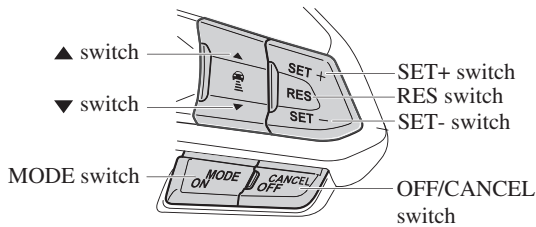
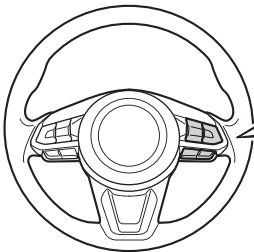


Multi-information display



\*1: If the indication on the active driving display has been turned off using the personalisation features, the indication is displayed on the multi-information display.

## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)



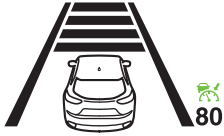
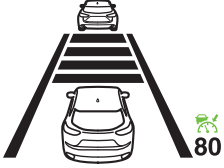


When the MODE switch is pressed once, the MRCC system turns on, and the MRCC main indication (white) turns on and the vehicle speed and the distance between the vehicles while in headway control can be set.



## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)

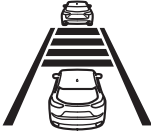
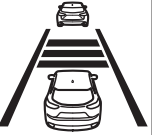
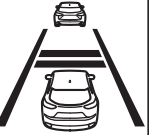
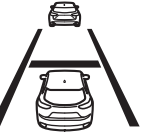




### How to Set the Speed

1. Adjust the vehicle speed to the desired setting using the accelerator pedal.
2. Headway control begins when the SET + or SET - switch is pressed. The set speed and the inter-vehicle distance display filled with white lines are displayed.

Travel status	During travel at constant speed	During travel under headway control
Indication on multi-information display		
Indication on active Active driving display		

### How to Set the Distance Between Vehicles During Headway Control

The distance-between-vehicles is set to a shorter distance by pressing the ▼ switch. The distance-between-vehicles is set to a longer distance by pressing the ▲ switch. The distance-between-vehicles can be set to 4 levels; Long, medium, short, and extremely short distance.

Distance-between-vehicles guideline (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Long (about 50 m (164 ft))	Medium (about 40 m (131 ft))	Short (about 30 m (98 ft))	Extremely short (about 25 m (82 ft))
Indication on multi-information display				
Indication on active driving display <sup>*1</sup>				

\*1 Displays a pop-up image in the active driving display only when the driver operates the switch.



# When Driving

## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)

### How to Change the Set Vehicle Speed

#### **To accelerate/decelerate using the SET switch**

When you press the SET + switch, the vehicle accelerates and when you press the SET - switch, it decelerates.

Short press	5 km/h (5 mph)
Long press	10 km/h (5 mph)

#### **To increase speed using accelerator pedal**

Depress the accelerator pedal and press and release the SET + switch or SET - switch at the desired speed. If the switch is not operated, the system returns to the set speed after you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.

#### **Turning off the system**

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch two times while the MRCC system is operating to switch off the system.

## Close Proximity Warning

If your vehicle rapidly closes in on the vehicle ahead because the vehicle applies the brakes suddenly while you are travelling in headway control, the warning sound activates and the brake warning is indicated in the display. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead. Additionally, always keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.

#### Multi-information Display

**BRAKE!**

#### Active Driving Display

**BRAKE!**



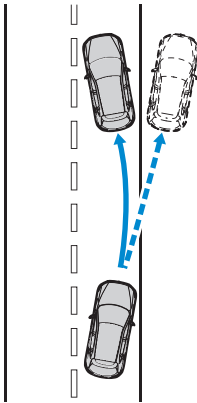


## Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

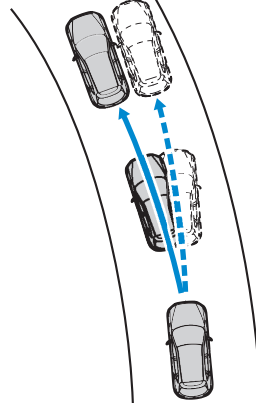
The LAS&LDWS alerts the driver that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane and it provides steering assistance to help the driver stay within the vehicle lanes. The steering wheel operation of the LAS&LDWS has “Late” and “Early” steering assist timing settings.

“Late” and “Early” timing can be changed (timing at which steering operation assist is provided) by changing the setting. Details are described in Setting Change (Personalisation Features) in the related text.

“Late” function



“Early” function



### **WARNING**

***Do not rely completely on the LAS&LDWS:***

- ***The LAS&LDWS is not an automatic driving system. In addition, the system is not designed to compensate for a driver's lack of caution, and over-reliance on the system could lead to an accident.***
  - ***The detection ability of the LAS&LDWS is limited. Always stay on course using the steering wheel and drive with care.***
- Other details are described in the related text.***

### **NOTE**

The LAS&LDWS may not be able to detect white (yellow) lane lines correctly and it may not operate normally.  
Other details are described in the related text.

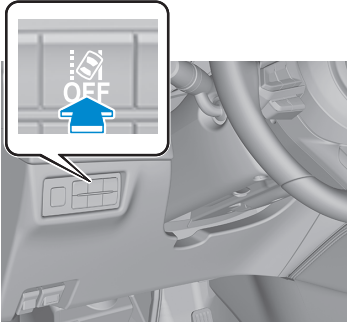


# When Driving

## Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

### System Operation

Make sure that the LAS&LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off. When the LAS&LDWS OFF indicator light is turned on, press the switch and make sure that the indicator light turns off.



When the ignition is switched ON, the system goes on standby. Drive the vehicle in the centre of the vehicle lane while the system is on standby. When all of the following conditions are met, and the system becomes operational.

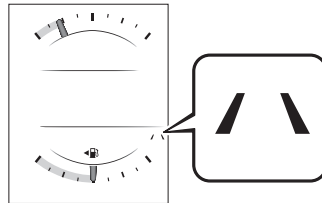
- The engine is running.
- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides.
- The driver is operating the steering wheel.
- The driving lane is neither narrow nor wide.

When the system becomes operational, the LAS & LDWS indication (white) is displayed on the multi-information display or active driving display.

**Active Driving Display**



**Multi-information Display**

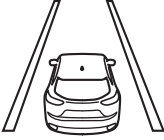





If the indication on the active driving display has been turned off using the personalisation features, the LAS & LDWS indication (white) is displayed on the multi-information display.

## Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

### Vehicle lane line display

When the LAS&LDWS becomes operational while on standby, the vehicle lane lines are displayed in the multi-information display and the active driving display.

System condition	Indication on display	
	Multi-information display	Active driving display
Stand-by		
Operational status		



## Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)/ Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

### **Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)**

The Advanced SCBS alerts the driver of a possible collision using the display and a warning sound when the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects a vehicle ahead or pedestrian and determines that a collision with the object is unavoidable while the vehicle is driven at a vehicle speed of about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph) if the object is a vehicle ahead and about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph) if the object is a pedestrian.

### **Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)**

The SCBS R is a system which is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (SCBS brake) when the system's ultrasonic sensors detect an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle while driving at a speed of about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph) and the system determines that a collision is unavoidable.

## **WARNING**

### **Do not rely completely on the system:**

*The system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*

*(Advanced SCBS)*

*The Advanced SCBS system operates in response to a vehicle ahead or a pedestrian. The system does not operate in response to obstructions such as a wall, 2-wheeled vehicles, or animals.*

*(SCBS R)*

*To assure the correct operation of the SCBS R, heed the following cautions.*

- *Do not apply a sticker to an ultrasonic sensor (rear) (including transparent stickers). Otherwise, the ultrasonic sensor (rear) may not be able to detect vehicles or obstructions which could result in an accident.*
- *Do not disassemble an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
- *If cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris is visible around an ultrasonic sensor (rear), stop using the SCBS R system immediately and have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. If the vehicle continues to be driven with cracks or scratch marks left around an ultrasonic sensor, the system may operate unnecessarily and cause an unexpected accident.*
- *Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for rear bumper replacement.*



## Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)/ Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

### NOTE

#### Advanced SCBS

The Advanced SCBS system will operate under the following conditions.

- The engine is running.
- The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning light (amber) does not illuminate.
- **(Object is vehicle ahead)**  
The vehicle speed is between about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph).
- **(Object is a pedestrian)**  
The vehicle speed is between about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph).
- The Advanced SCBS system is not turned off.

#### SCBS R

The SCBS R system will operate under the following conditions.

- The engine is running.
- The selector lever is in the R (reverse) position.
- “Reverse Smart City Brake Support Malfunction” is not displayed in the multi-information display.
- The vehicle speed is between about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph).
- The SCBS R is not turned off.
- The DSC is not malfunctioning.



## Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The SBS system alerts the driver of a possible collision using a display and warning sound if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determine that there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead while the vehicle is being driven at about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).

Furthermore, if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines that a collision is unavoidable, the automatic brake control is performed to reduce damage in the event of a collision.

In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (SBS brake assist)).

### **WARNING**

***Do not rely completely on the SBS system and always drive carefully:***

***The SBS is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision, not avoid an accident. The ability to detect an obstruction is limited depending on the obstruction, weather conditions, or traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is mistakenly operated it could result in an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.***



## Smart Brake Support (SBS)

### NOTE

The SBS system may not operate under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is accelerated rapidly and it comes close to a vehicle ahead.
- The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The steering wheel is being operated.
- The selector lever is being operated.
- The direction indicator is being used.
- When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off.
- When warnings and messages, such as a dirty windscreen, related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are being displayed in the multi-information display.

Although the objects which activate the system are four-wheeled vehicles, the radar sensor (front) could detect the following objects, determine them to be an obstruction, and operate the SBS system.

- Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve (including guardrails and snow banks).
- A vehicle appears in the opposite lane while cornering or rounding a curve.
- When crossing a narrow bridge.
- When passing under a low gate or through a tunnel or narrow gate.
- When entering an underground parking area.
- Metal objects, bumps, or protruding objects on the road.
- If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.
- When driving in areas where there is high grass or forage.
- Two-wheeled vehicles such as motorbikes or bicycles.
- Pedestrians or non-metallic objects such as standing trees.

## Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the display.

### Multi-information Display

**BRAKE!**

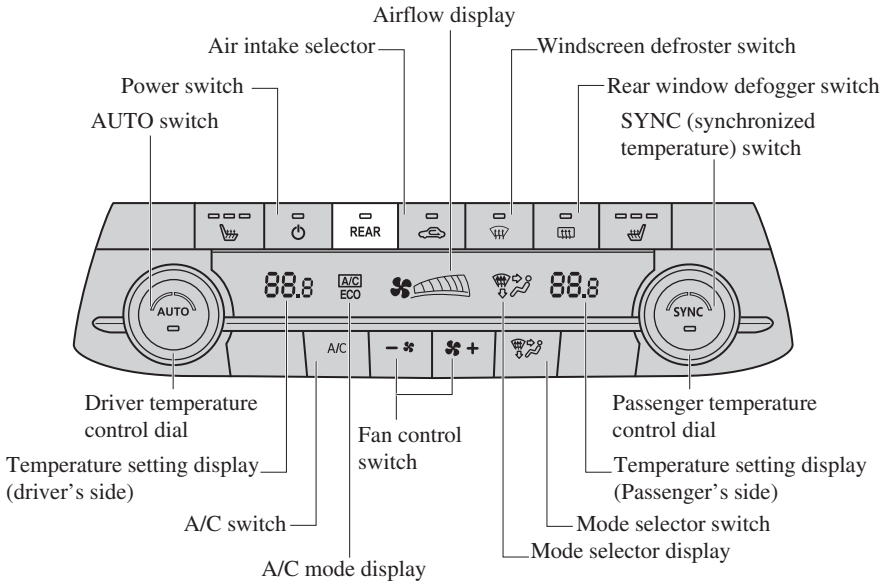
### Active Driving Display

**BRAKE!**



# Interior Features

## Air-Conditioning System (Fully Automatic Type)



### **Operation of Automatic Air Conditioner**

1. Press the AUTO switch. Selection of the airflow mode, air intake selector and amount of airflow will be automatically controlled.
2. Use the temperature control dial to select a desired temperature.

If you want to set the temperature on the front passenger's side separately from the driver's side, turn the front passenger temperature control dial to switch the mode automatically to the individual operation mode and set the temperature for the front passenger's side.

To turn off the system, press the power switch.





## Owner Maintenance Precautions

### Routine Service

We highly recommend that these items be inspected daily, or at least every week.

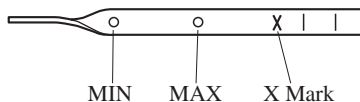
- Engine Oil Level
- Engine Coolant Level
- Brake Fluid Level
- Washer Fluid Level
- Battery Maintenance
- Tyre Inflation Pressure

## Inspecting Engine Oil Level (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

The diesel particulate filter collects and eliminates most of the particulate matter (PM) in the exhaust gas of the diesel engine for improved exhaust gas processing ability.

While the particulate matter (PM) collected in the diesel particulate filter is eliminated automatically, fuel may be mixed with the engine oil increasing the engine oil level. If the engine oil level exceeds the “X” mark on the dipstick, replace the engine oil.

If the engine oil level exceeds the “X” mark on the dipstick, replace the engine oil. When inspecting the engine oil level, pull out the dipstick straight without twisting. In addition, when inserting the dipstick, always insert it without twisting so that the “X” mark faces the front of the vehicle.




# Maintenance and Care

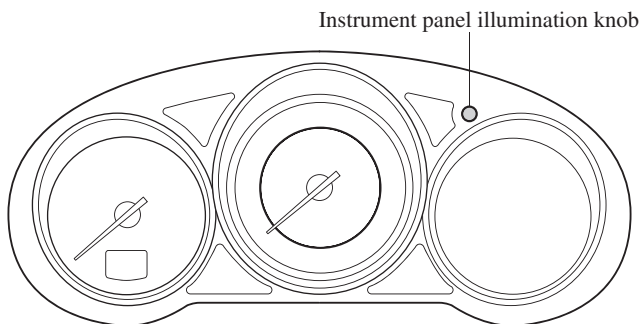
## Inspecting Engine Oil Level (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)


Whenever the engine oil is replaced, the vehicles engine control unit needs to be reset as soon as possible. Otherwise the wrench indicator light or engine oil warning light may turn on. To reset the engine control unit, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or refer to the vehicle engine control unit reset procedure.

### NOTE

The initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value can be performed using the instrument panel illumination knob in the instrument cluster as following:

1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Switch the ignition ON with the instrument panel illumination knob pressed and continue pressing the knob for about 5 seconds until the master warning light  flashes.



3. After the master warning light  flashes for several seconds, the initialization is completed.

## If Trouble Arises

- **Flat Tyre**

If you have a flat tyre, drive slowly to a level spot that is well off the road and out of the way of traffic.

- **Overheating**

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.
2. Check whether coolant or steam is escaping from the engine compartment.

**If steam is coming from the engine compartment:**

Do not go near the front of the vehicle. Stop the engine.

Wait until the steam dissipates, then open the bonnet and start the engine.

**If neither coolant nor steam is escaping:**

Open the bonnet and idle the engine until it cools.

- **Towing Description**

We recommend that towing be done only by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

- **Warning Lights and Warning Sounds**

If a warning light illuminates or flashes or a warning sound is heard, check for details concerning the warning light or sound in this guide. If the problem cannot be resolved, contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



# MEMO

# MEMO

# MEMO

# MEMO

# MEMO



# A Word to Mazda Owners

---

Thank you for choosing a Mazda. We at Mazda design and build vehicles with complete customer satisfaction in mind.

To help ensure enjoyable and trouble-free operation of your Mazda, read this manual carefully and follow its recommendations.

Regular servicing of your vehicle by an expert repairer helps maintain both its roadworthiness and its resale value. A world-wide network of Authorised Mazda Repairers can help you with their professional servicing expertise.

Their specially trained personnel are best qualified to service your Mazda vehicle properly and exactly. Also, they are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools and equipment specially developed for servicing Mazda vehicles. When maintenance or service is necessary we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

We assure you that all of us at Mazda have an ongoing interest in your motoring pleasure and in your full satisfaction with your Mazda product.

**Mazda Motor Corporation**  
**HIROSHIMA, JAPAN**

## **Important Notes About This Manual**

Keep this manual in the glove compartment as a handy reference for the safe and enjoyable use of your Mazda. Should you resell the vehicle, leave this manual with it for the next owner.

All specifications and descriptions are accurate at the time of printing. Because improvement is a constant goal at Mazda, we reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice and without obligation.

**Please be aware that this manual applies to all models, equipment and options. As a result, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.**

©2019 Mazda Motor Corporation  
May 2020 (Print2)

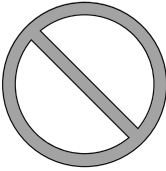
# How to Use This Manual

---

We want to help you get the most driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your owner's manual, when read from cover to cover, can do that in many ways.

Illustrations complement the words of the manual to best explain how to enjoy your Mazda. By reading your manual, you can find out about the features, important safety information, and driving under various road conditions.

The symbol below in this manual means “Do not do this” or “Do not let this happen”.



References to left hand and right hand are made as if facing in the same direction the vehicle faces. Although this manual explains a left-hand-drive model, it also applies to right-hand-drive models.

**Index:** A good place to start is the Index, an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

You'll find several WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTES in the manual.



*A WARNING indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.*



*A CAUTION indicates a situation in which bodily injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.*

## **NOTE**

*A NOTE provides information and sometimes suggests how to make better use of your vehicle.*

The following symbol, located on some parts of the vehicle, indicates that this manual contains information related to the part.

Please refer to the manual for a detailed explanation.



# Table of Contents

---

## **Pictorial Index**

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

**1**

---

## **Essential Safety Equipment**

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

**2**

---

## **Before Driving**

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

**3**

---

## **When Driving**

Information concerning safe driving and stopping.

**4**

---

## **Interior Features**

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

**5**

---

## **Maintenance and Care**

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

**6**

---

## **If Trouble Arises**

Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

**7**

---

## **Customer Information**

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

**8**

---

## **Specifications**

Technical information about your Mazda.

**9**

---

## **Index**

**10**



# 1

## Pictorial Index

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

### **Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model).....1-2**

- Interior Equipment (View A)..... 1-2
- Interior Equipment (View B)..... 1-3
- Interior Equipment (View C)..... 1-4
- Interior Equipment (View D)..... 1-5
- Interior Equipment (View E)..... 1-6

### **Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model).....1-7**

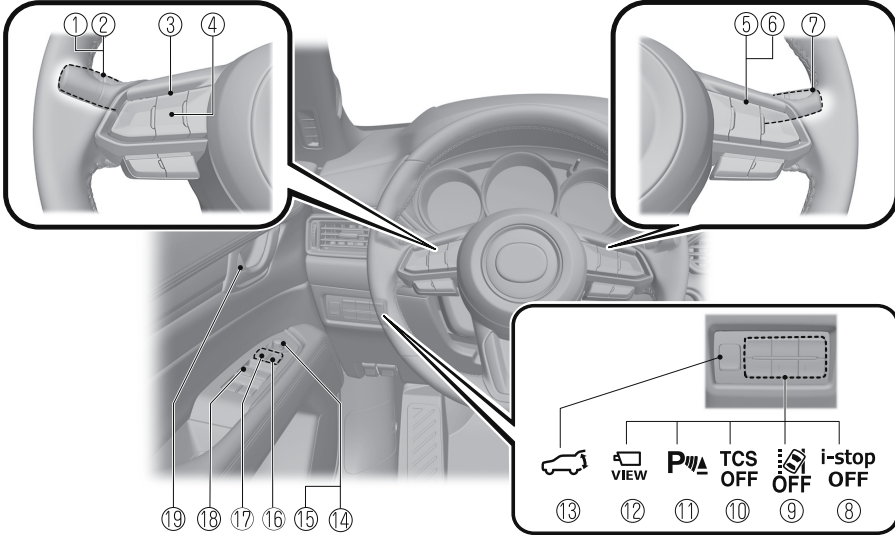
- Interior Equipment (View A)..... 1-7
- Interior Equipment (View B)..... 1-8
- Interior Equipment (View C)..... 1-9
- Interior Equipment (View D)..... 1-10
- Interior Equipment (View E)..... 1-11

### **Exterior Overview..... 1-12**

- Front..... 1-12
- Rear..... 1-13

# Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

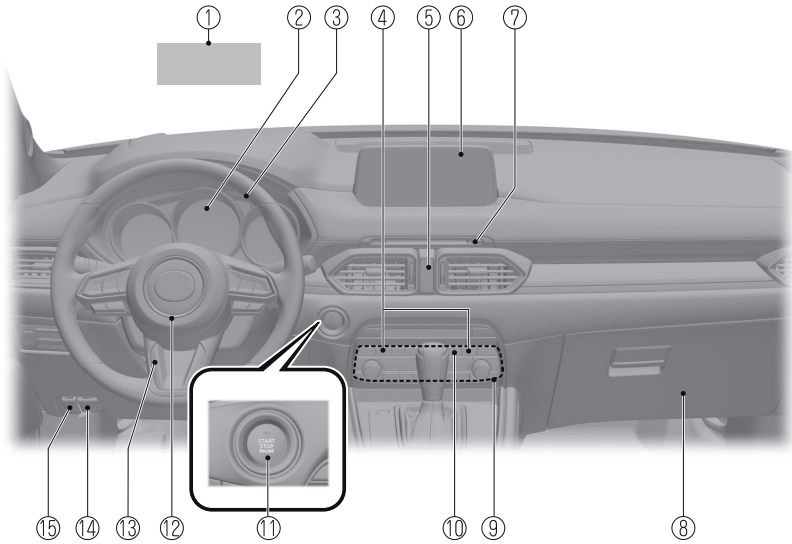
## Interior Equipment (View A)



① Lighting control.....	page 4-44
② Turn and lane-change signal.....	page 4-49
③ Audio control switches.....	page 5-16
④ INFO switch.....	page 4-20
⑤ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) switches.....	page 4-102
⑥ Cruise control switches.....	page 4-169
⑦ Wiper and washer lever.....	page 4-50
⑧ i-stop OFF switch.....	page 4-14
⑨ Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch.....	page 4-117
⑩ TCS OFF switch.....	page 4-68
⑪ Parking sensor switch.....	page 4-186
⑫ 360° View Monitor switch.....	page 4-135
⑬ Power liftgate switch.....	page 3-17
⑭ Outside mirror switch.....	page 3-28
⑮ Outside mirror folding switch.....	page 3-28
⑯ Door-lock switch.....	page 3-12
⑰ Power window lock switch.....	page 3-30
⑱ Power window switches.....	page 3-30
⑲ Door-lock knob.....	page 3-14

# Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

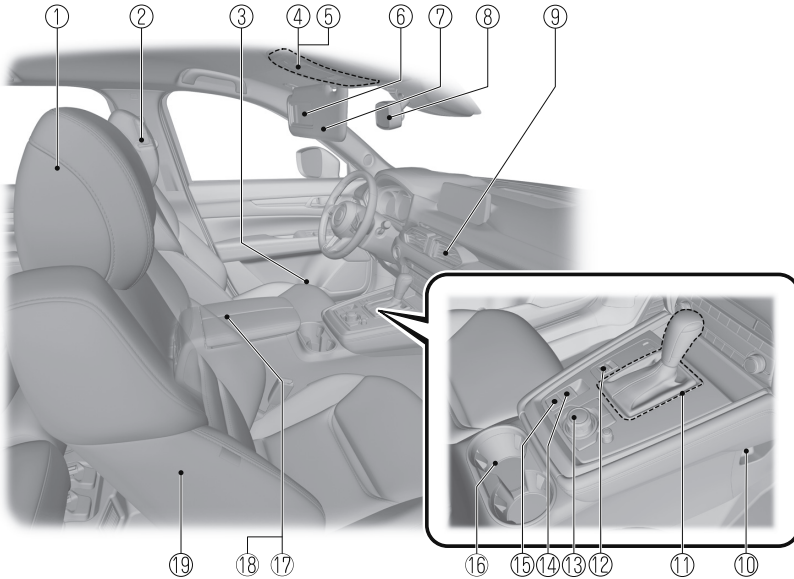
## Interior Equipment (View B)



① Active driving display.....	page 4-27
② Instrument cluster.....	page 4-18
③ Instrument panel illumination knob.....	page 4-19
④ Seat warmer switches.....	page 2-28
⑤ Hazard warning flasher switch.....	page 4-55
⑥ Audio.....	page 5-20
⑦ CD/DVD player.....	page 5-29
⑧ Glove compartment.....	page 5-100
⑨ Air-conditioning system.....	page 5-4
⑩ Rear window defogger switch.....	page 4-53
⑪ Push button start.....	page 4-4
⑫ Horn.....	page 4-54
⑬ Lock release lever.....	page 2-5
⑭ Bonnet release handle.....	page 6-11
⑮ Remote fuel-filler flap release.....	page 3-26

# Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

## Interior Equipment (View C)

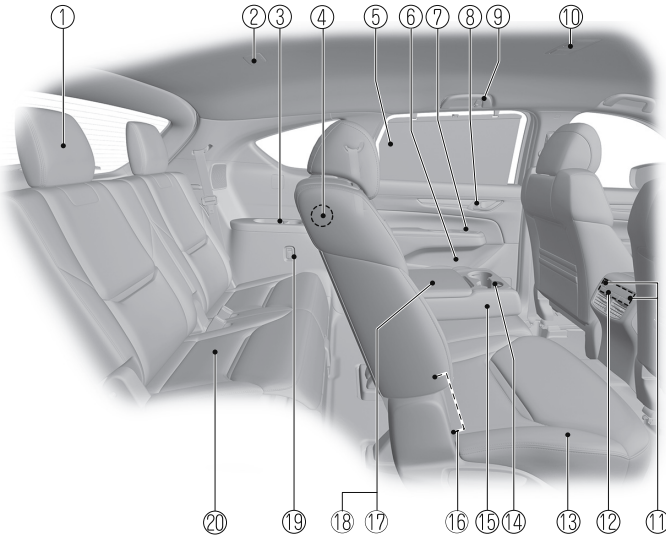


① Head restraint.....	page 2-25
② Seat belt.....	page 2-30
③ Bottle holder.....	page 5-99
④ Overhead lights.....	page 5-93
⑤ Overhead console.....	page 5-99
⑥ Vanity mirror.....	page 5-93
⑦ Sunvisor.....	page 5-93
⑧ Rearview mirror.....	page 3-29
⑨ Vent.....	page 5-5
⑩ Accessory socket.....	page 5-95
⑪ Selector lever.....	page 4-36
⑫ Drive selection switch.....	page 4-74
⑬ Commander switch.....	page 5-20
⑭ Electric parking brake (EPB) switch.....	page 4-56
⑮ AUTOHOLD switch.....	page 4-62
⑯ Cup holder.....	page 5-98
⑰ Centre console.....	page 5-100
⑱ External input terminal.....	page 5-17
⑲ Front seat.....	page 2-5



# Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

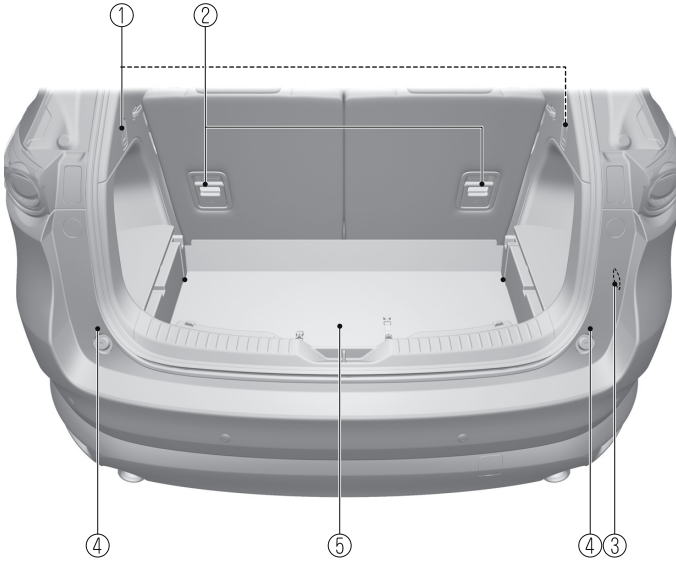
## Interior Equipment (View D)



① Head restraint.....	page 2-25
② Rear overhead light.....	page 5-93
③ Cup holder.....	page 5-98
④ Child safety lock.....	page 3-15
⑤ Sunshade.....	page 5-104
⑥ Bottle holder.....	page 5-99
⑦ Power window switch.....	page 3-30
⑧ Door-lock knob.....	page 3-14
⑨ Rear coat hook.....	page 5-104
⑩ Centre map lights.....	page 5-93
⑪ Seat warmer switches.....	page 2-28
⑫ Air-conditioning system.....	page 5-4
⑬ Second-row seat.....	page 2-15
⑭ Cup holder.....	page 5-98
⑮ Armrest.....	page 2-16
⑯ ISOFIX anchors.....	page 2-51
⑰ Armrest box.....	page 5-101
⑱ USB power outlet.....	page 5-96
⑲ Cargo securing loops.....	page 5-102
⑳ Third-row seat.....	page 2-23

# Interior Overview (Left-Hand Drive Model)

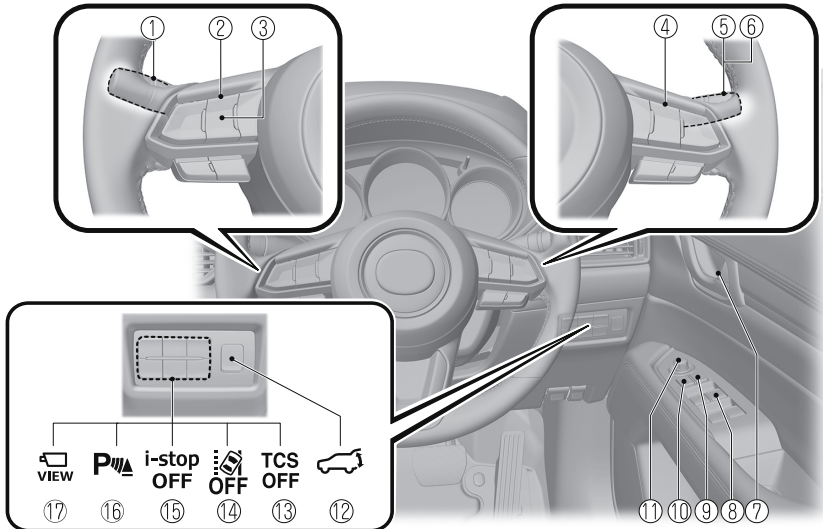
## Interior Equipment (View E)



- ① Shopping bag hook..... page 5-103
- ② Lever..... page 2-23
- ③ Accessory socket..... page 5-95
- ④ Cargo securing loops..... page 5-102
- ⑤ Cargo sub-compartment..... page 5-102

# Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

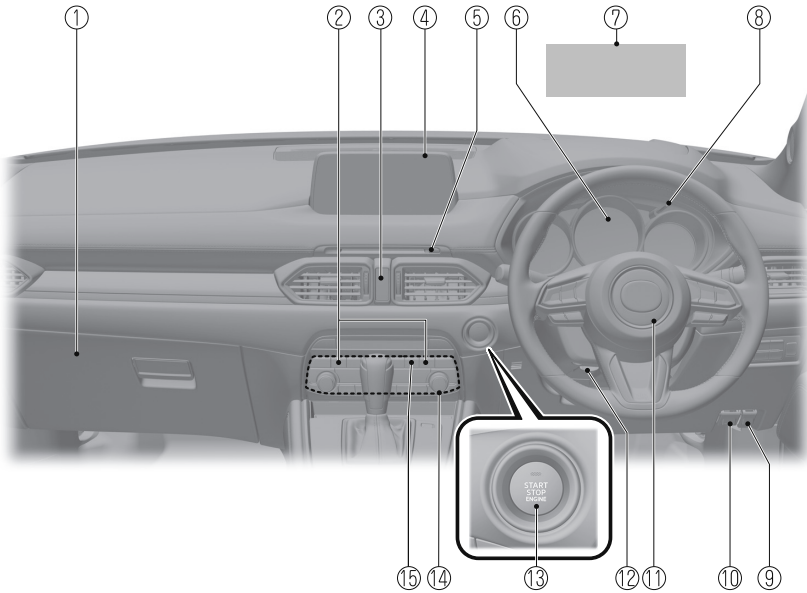
## Interior Equipment (View A)



① Wiper and washer lever.....	page 4-50
② Audio control switches.....	page 5-16
③ INFO switch.....	page 4-20
④ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) switches.....	page 4-102
⑤ Lighting control.....	page 4-44
⑥ Turn and lane-change signal.....	page 4-49
⑦ Door-lock knob.....	page 3-14
⑧ Power window switches.....	page 3-30
⑨ Power window lock switch.....	page 3-30
⑩ Outside mirror folding switch.....	page 3-28
⑪ Outside mirror switch.....	page 3-28
⑫ Power liftgate switch.....	page 3-17
⑬ TCS OFF Switch.....	page 4-68
⑭ Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch.....	page 4-117
⑮ i-stop OFF switch.....	page 4-14
⑯ Parking sensor switch.....	page 4-186
⑰ 360° View Monitor switch.....	page 4-135

# Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

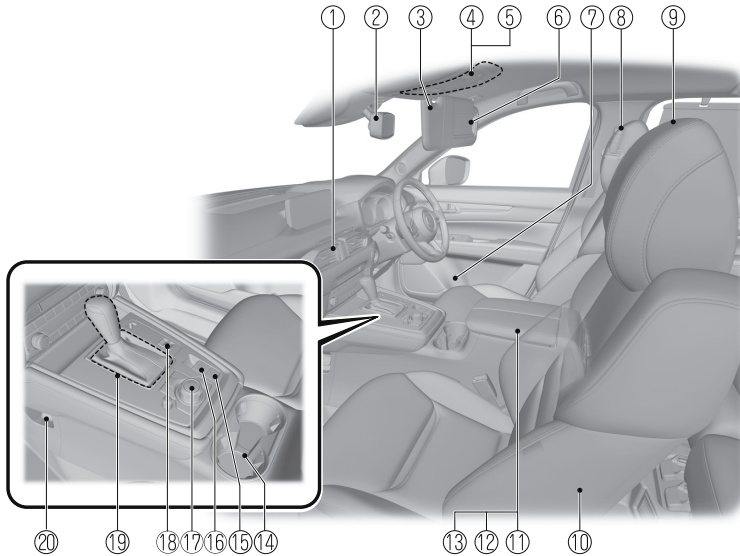
## Interior Equipment (View B)



① Glove compartment.....	page 5-100
② Seat warmer switches.....	page 2-28
③ Hazard warning flasher switch.....	page 4-55
④ Audio.....	page 5-20
⑤ CD/DVD player.....	page 5-29
⑥ Instrument cluster.....	page 4-18
⑦ Active driving display.....	page 4-27
⑧ Instrument panel illumination knob.....	page 4-19
⑨ Remote fuel-filler flap release.....	page 3-26
⑩ Bonnet release handle.....	page 6-11
⑪ Horn.....	page 4-54
⑫ Lock release lever.....	page 2-5
⑬ Push button start.....	page 4-4
⑭ Air-conditioning system.....	page 5-4
⑮ Rear window defogger switch.....	page 4-53

# Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

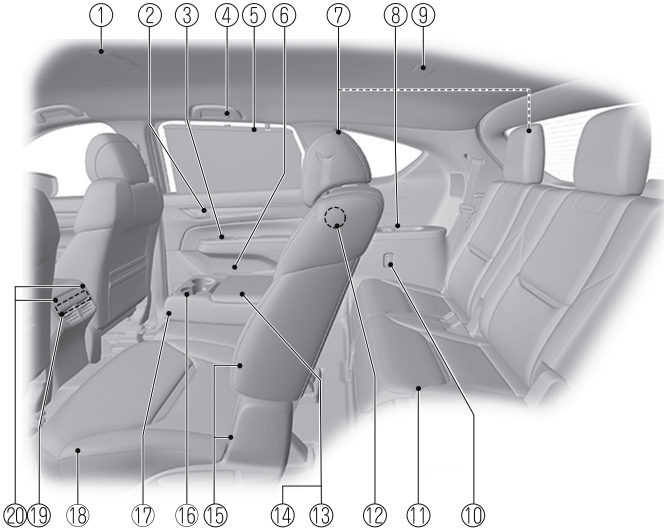
## Interior Equipment (View C)



① Vent.....	page 5-5
② Rearview mirror.....	page 3-29
③ Sunvisor.....	page 5-93
④ Front overhead lights.....	page 5-93
⑤ Overhead console.....	page 5-99
⑥ Vanity mirror.....	page 5-93
⑦ Bottle holder.....	page 5-99
⑧ Seat belt.....	page 2-30
⑨ Head restraint.....	page 2-25
⑩ Front seat.....	page 2-5
⑪ Centre console.....	page 5-100
⑫ USB port.....	page 5-17
⑬ Auxiliary jack.....	page 5-17
⑭ Cup holder.....	page 5-98
⑮ AUTOHOLD switch.....	page 4-62
⑯ Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch.....	page 4-56
⑰ Commander switch.....	page 5-20
⑱ Drive selection switch.....	page 4-74
⑲ Selector lever.....	page 4-36
⑳ Accessory socket.....	page 5-95

# Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

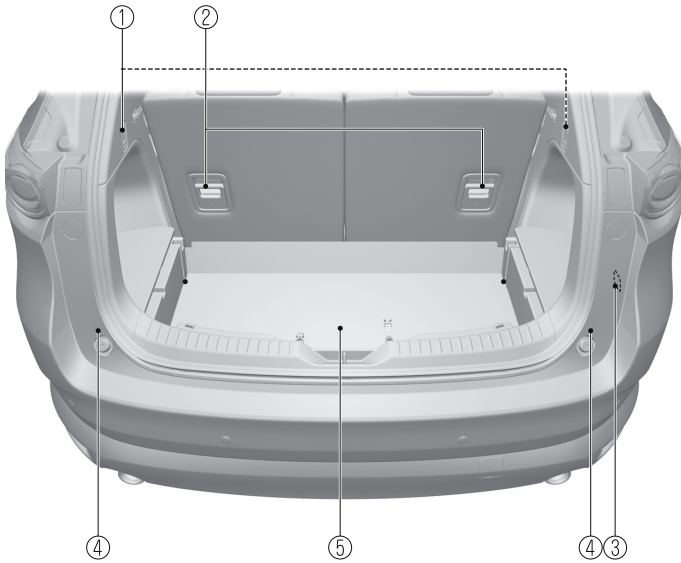
## Interior Equipment (View D)



① Centre map lights.....	page 5-93
② Door-lock knob.....	page 3-14
③ Power window switch.....	page 3-30
④ Rear coat hook.....	page 5-104
⑤ Sunshade.....	page 5-104
⑥ Bottle holder.....	page 5-99
⑦ Head restraint.....	page 2-25
⑧ Cup holder.....	page 5-98
⑨ Rear overhead light.....	page 5-93
⑩ Cargo securing loops.....	page 5-102
⑪ Third-row seat.....	page 2-23
⑫ Child safety lock.....	page 3-15
⑬ Armrest box.....	page 5-101
⑭ USB power outlet.....	page 5-96
⑮ ISOFIX anchors.....	page 2-51
⑯ Cup holder.....	page 5-98
⑰ Armrest.....	page 2-16
⑱ Second-row seat.....	page 2-15
⑲ Air-conditioning system.....	page 5-11
⑳ Seat warmer switches.....	page 2-28

# Interior Overview (Right-Hand Drive Model)

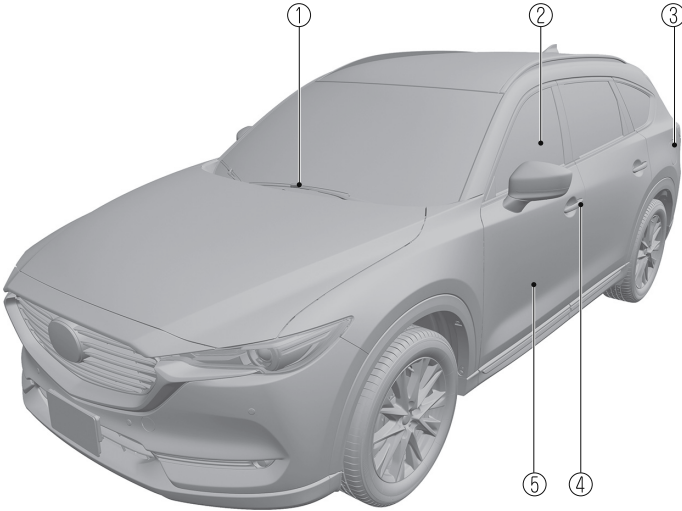
## Interior Equipment (View E)



- ① Shopping bag hook.....page 5-103
- ② Anchor brackets..... page 2-50
- ③ Accessory socket..... page 5-95
- ④ Cargo securing loops.....page 5-102
- ⑤ Cargo sub-compartment..... page 5-102

# Exterior Overview

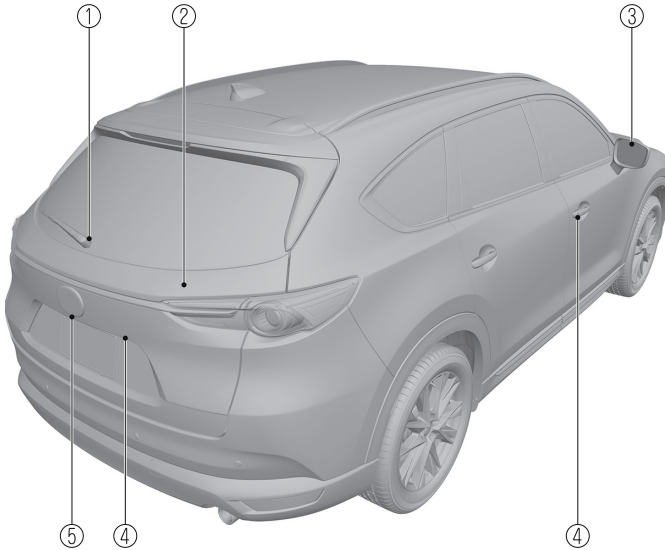
## Front



① Windscreen wiper blades.....	page 6-21
② Window.....	page 3-30
③ Fuel-filler flap.....	page 3-26
④ Request switch.....	page 3-10
⑤ Door.....	page 3-9



**Rear**



① Rear window wiper blade.....	page 6-24
② Liftgate.....	page 3-15
③ Outside mirror.....	page 3-28
④ Request switch.....	page 3-10
⑤ Electric liftgate opener.....	page 3-16

# MEMO

# 2

## Essential Safety Equipment

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

<b>Seats.....</b>	<b>2-2</b>	<b>Child Restraint.....</b>	<b>2-37</b>
Seat Precautions.....	2-2	Child-Restraint Precautions.....	2-37
Front Seat.....	2-5	Child-Restraint System	
Second-row Seat (6:4 Split		Installation.....	2-41
Adjustable-type Bench Seat		Child-Restraint System Suitability	
Type).....	2-15	for Various Seat Positions	
Second-row Seat (Captain Seat		Table.....	2-46
Type).....	2-19	Installing Child-Restraint	
Third-row Seat.....	2-23	Systems.....	2-50
Head Restraints.....	2-25		
		<b>SRS Air Bags.....</b>	<b>2-54</b>
<b>Seat Warmer.....</b>	<b>2-28</b>	Supplementary Restraint System	
Seat Warmer.....	2-28	(SRS) Precautions.....	2-54
		Supplementary Restraint System	
<b>Seat Belt Systems.....</b>	<b>2-30</b>	Components.....	2-59
Seat Belt Precautions.....	2-30	How the SRS Air Bags Work.....	2-60
Seat Belt.....	2-33	SRS Air Bag Deployment	
Seat Belt Warning Systems.....	2-34	Criteria.....	2-63
Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load		Limitations to SRS Air Bag.....	2-64
Limiting Systems.....	2-35	Constant Monitoring.....	2-66

## Seat Precautions

### **WARNING**

**Make sure the adjustable components of a seat are locked in place:**

*Adjustable seats and seatbacks that are not securely locked are dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the seat or seatback could move, causing injury. Make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward and rocking the seatback.*

**Never allow children to adjust a seat:**

*Allowing children to adjust a seat is dangerous as it could result in serious injury if a child's hands or feet become caught in the seat.*

**Do not drive with the seatback unlocked:**

*All of the seatbacks play an important role in your protection in a vehicle. Leaving the seatback unlocked is dangerous as it can allow passengers to be ejected or thrown around and baggage to strike occupants in a sudden stop or collision, resulting in severe injury. After adjusting the seatback at any time, even when there are no other passengers, rock the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.*

**Adjust a seat only when the vehicle is stopped:**

*If the seat is adjusted while the vehicle is being driven, the seating posture may become unstable and the seat could move unexpectedly resulting in injury.*

**Do not modify or replace the front seats:**

*Modifying or replacing the front seats such as replacing the upholstery or loosening any bolts is dangerous. The front seats contain air bag components essential to the supplementary restraint system. Such modifications could damage the supplementary restraint system and result in serious injury. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer if there is any need to remove or reinstall the front seats.*

**Do not drive with damaged front seats:**

*Driving with damaged front seats, such as seat cushions torn or damaged down to the urethane, is dangerous. A collision, even one not strong enough to inflate the air bags, could damage the front seats which contain essential air bag components. If there was a subsequent collision, an air bag may not deploy which could lead to injuries. Always have an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect the front seats, front seat belt pretensioners and air bags after a collision.*

**Do not drive with either front seats reclined:**

*Sitting in a reclined position while the vehicle is moving is dangerous because you do not get the full protection from seat belts. During sudden braking or a collision, you can slide under the lap belt and suffer serious internal injuries. For maximum protection, sit well back and upright.*

**Do not recline a second-row seatback when the third-row seat is occupied:**

*Reclining the second-row seatback when the third-row seat is occupied is dangerous. Because the clearance in the third-row seat is limited, occupants in the third-row seat could be hurt seriously on a reclined second-row seatback.*

**Do not place an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back:**

*Putting an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back is dangerous because you will be unable to maintain a safe driving posture and the seat belt cannot function at its full capacity in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.*

**Do not place objects under the seat:**

*The object could get stuck and cause the seat to not be fixed securely, and result in an accident.*

**Do not stack cargo higher than the seatbacks:**

*Stacking luggage or other cargo higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, objects can fly around and become projectiles that may hit and injure passengers.*

**Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:**

*Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.*

**Never allow a passenger to sit or stand on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving:**

*Driving with a passenger on the folded seatback is dangerous. Allowing a child to sit up on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving is particularly dangerous. In a sudden stop or even a minor collision, a child not in a proper seat or child-restraint system and seat belt could be thrown forward, back or even out of the vehicle resulting in serious injuries or death. The child in the baggage area could be thrown into other occupants and cause serious injury.*



- When operating a seat, be careful not to put your hands or fingers near the moving parts of the seat or on the side trim to prevent injury.

# Seats

---

- *When moving the seats, make sure there is no cargo in the surrounding area. If the cargo gets caught it could damage the cargo.*
- **(Manual Seat)**
  - When moving the seats forward and rearward or returning a rear-reclined seatback to its upright position, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.*
- *When inserting your hand under the seat to clean the cabin or pick up something you dropped under the seat, be careful not to hurt yourself. If you contact the moving parts of the seat rail or seat frame, it could result in injury.*

## **NOTE**

- *When returning a rear seat to its original position, place the seat belt in its normal position. Verify that the seat belt pulls out and retracts.*
- **(Power Seat)**
  - The seat-bottom power adjustment is operated by motors. Avoid extended operation because excessive use can damage the motors.*
  - *To prevent the battery from running down, avoid using the power adjustment when the engine is stopped. The adjuster uses a large amount of electrical power.*
  - *Do not use the switch to make more than one adjustment at a time.*

## Front Seat

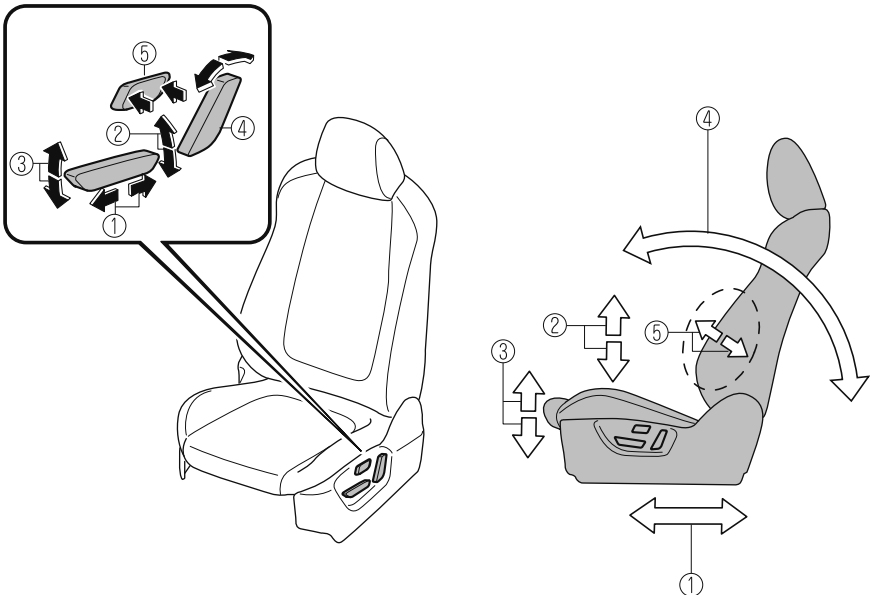
### ▼ Adjusting the Driver's Seat

Using the driving position set up procedure recommended by Mazda allows you to maintain a relaxed posture, drive the vehicle for longer periods without feeling tired, and make quick operations naturally.

Also, you can be assured of a clear view in the forward direction to help you drive more safely and comfortably.

The adjustments for the driving position recommended by Mazda are done using the following procedures.

1. Moving the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.
2. Adjusting the seatback angle.
3. Adjusting the seat position forward and back.
4. Adjusting the seat height.
5. Adjusting the steering wheel position.
6. Adjusting the head restraint position.



#### ① Seat Slide

To slide the seat, move the slide lifter switch on the outside of the seat to the front or back and hold it. Release the switch at the desired position.

## Seats

---

### ② Height Adjustment

To adjust the seat height, move the slide lifter switch up or down.

### ③ Height Adjustment for Front Edge of Seat Bottom

To adjust the front height of the seat bottom, raise or lower the front of the slide lifter switch.

### ④ Seat Recline

To change the seatback angle, press the front or rear side of the reclining switch. Release the switch at the desired position.

### ⑤ Lumbar Support Adjustment

To increase the seat firmness, press and hold the front part of the switch to the desired position, then release it.

Press the rear part of the switch to decrease firmness.

### Before making adjustments to the driving position recommended by Mazda

Before making adjustments, move the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.

### How to move the steering wheel to its default position



#### ***Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving:***

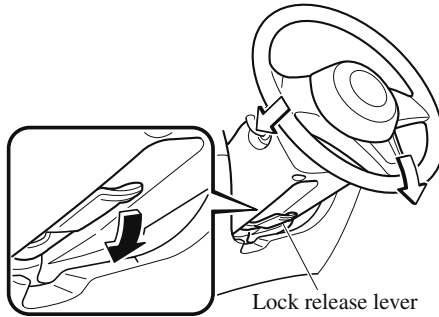
*Adjusting the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Moving it can very easily cause the driver to abruptly turn to the left or right. This can lead to loss of control or an accident.*

#### ***After adjusting the steering wheel position, make sure it is securely locked by trying to move it up and down:***

*Driving with the steering wheel not securely locked in position is dangerous. If the steering wheel moves unexpectedly while driving, you could lose control of the steering resulting in an accident.*



Lower the lever, move the steering wheel to the lowest position, and then push it down and all the way back.



### **How to move a driver's seat to its default position**

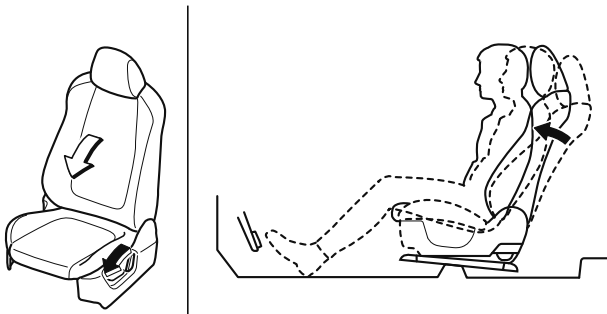
1. Slide the seat all the way back.
2. Lower the seat to its lowest height.
3. Sit squarely in the seat and rest your back against the seatback.

### **Seat adjustment procedure for the driving position recommended by Mazda**

#### **Adjusting the seatback angle (reclining)**

Adjust the seatback to the angle providing a comfortable seated posture.

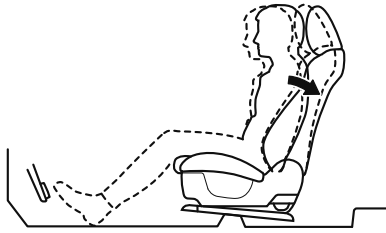
1. With your posture slightly slouched, move the seatback forward to the angle where your waist feels slightly cramped.



## Seats

---

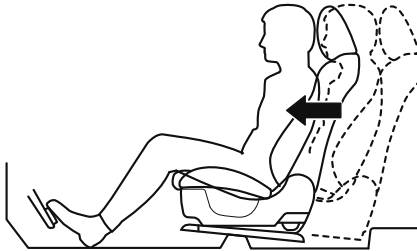
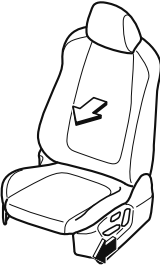
2. Move the seatback backward to a comfortable seated posture without any feeling of cramping in your waist.



### Adjusting the seat position forward and back (sliding)

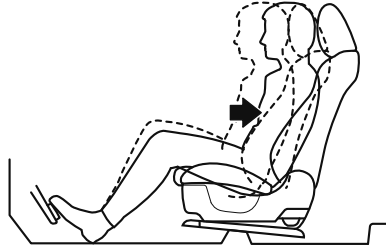
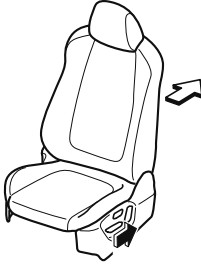
Adjust the seat to the position best for operating the accelerator and brake pedals.

1. Place your left foot on the footrest, your right foot between the accelerator and brake pedals, and position your heel to the position allowing easy switching between the pedals.
2. With your heel set on the floor, set your right foot on the brake pedal and move the seat forward as far as possible until you feel a slight cramping in your ankle.



3. With your right foot set on the brake pedal, move the seat back until you no longer feel cramping in your ankle.
4. With your heel set on the floor, make sure you can move your foot between the brake pedal and accelerator pedal smoothly.

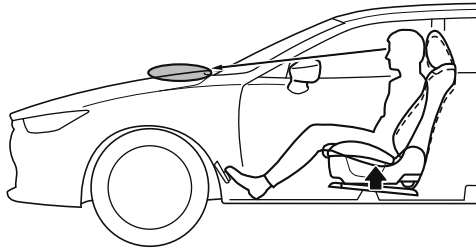
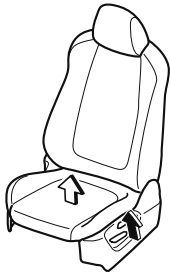
5. Depress the accelerator pedal completely with your heel set on the floor and make sure that your ankle does not feel over-stretched.



### **Adjusting the seat height**

Adjust the seat height to a position where you have a clear forward view and you can drive the vehicle easily.

1. With your back resting against the seatback, raise the seat to the height where you can see the rear edge area of the bonnet surface from the windscreen.



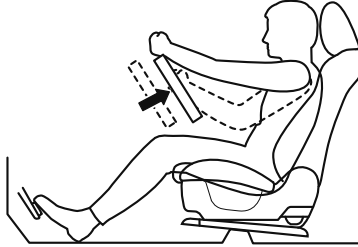
### **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Adjust the steering wheel to the position where it can be operated easily and the gauges can be viewed easily.

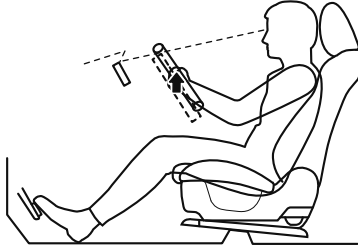
## Seats

---

1. With your back resting against the seatback, extend both arms, place them on the top of the steering wheel, and pull the steering wheel towards you to the position of your wrists.



2. Adjust the steering wheel height so that the gauges can be viewed easily.
3. Raise the lever to securely lock the steering wheel.



### Adjusting the head restraint position

To prevent shock to the head and neck, adjust the head restraints to their correct positions. Refer to Height Adjustment on page 2-25.

### ▼ Driving Position Memory

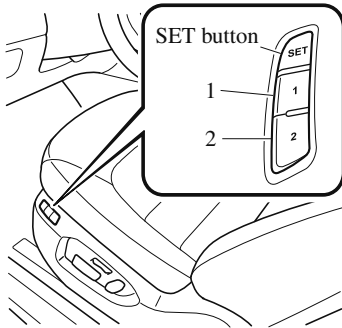
The desired driving position can be called up after programming the position.

The following driving positions can be programmed.

- Driver's seat position (seat slide, height adjustment, front edge of seat bottom, seat recline)  
Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
- Active driving display (display position, brightness level, display information)  
Refer to Active Driving Display on page 4-27.

## **CAUTION**

Do not place fingers or hands around the bottom of the seat while the seat memory function is operating. The seat moves automatically while the seat memory function is operating and fingers or hands could get pinched and injured.



A driving position can be programmed or operated using the buttons on the side of the seat or the key.

### **NOTE**

- Lumbar support adjustment cannot be programmed.
- A driving position can be programmed to the buttons on the side of the seat and the key in use for driving the vehicle.
- If the vehicle has been serviced and the battery leads disconnected, the programmed seat positions will have been erased. Re-programme the seat positions.

### **Programming**


1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
3. Start the engine.

4. Adjust the seat and the active driving display to the desired driving position.
5. Press the SET button on the seat until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
6. Perform one of the following settings within 5 seconds of completing step 5 above:

#### · **Programming using a button on the side of the seat**

Press the button you want to programme, either button 1 or 2, until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

#### · **Programming using the key**

Press the key  button until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

### **NOTE**

If a beep sound is heard 3 times, the operation is cancelled.

### **To move the driving position to a programmed position**

#### **(Using a button on the side of the seat)**



1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the programming button for the driving position you want to call up (button 1 or 2).
5. A beep sound is heard when the driving position adjustment is completed.

### **NOTE**


- If the driving position movement is not changed, only the beep sounds.
- A seat position can be called up even with the engine not running.
- The driving position adjustment is cancelled in the following cases:

## Seats

---

- Any of the seat adjustment switches is operated.
- The SET button is pressed.
- Programming button 1 or 2 is pressed.
- The key  button or  button is operated.
- The vehicle starts moving.
- The active driving display is adjusted.



### (Using a programmed key)

1. Unlock the doors by pressing a request switch or the key  button.
2. After unlocking the doors, the seat position adjustment begins within 40 seconds of opening the driver's door, and a beep sounds when the operation is finished.
3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
5. Start the engine.
6. The active driving display adjustment begins.

### **NOTE**


- If there is no driving position movement, a beep is not heard.

- The driving position adjustment is cancelled in the following cases:

- Any of the seat adjustment switches is operated.
- The SET button is pressed.
- Programming button 1 or 2 is pressed.
- The key  button or  button is operated.
- The vehicle starts moving.
- The active driving display is adjusted.

### **Erasing programmed driving positions**

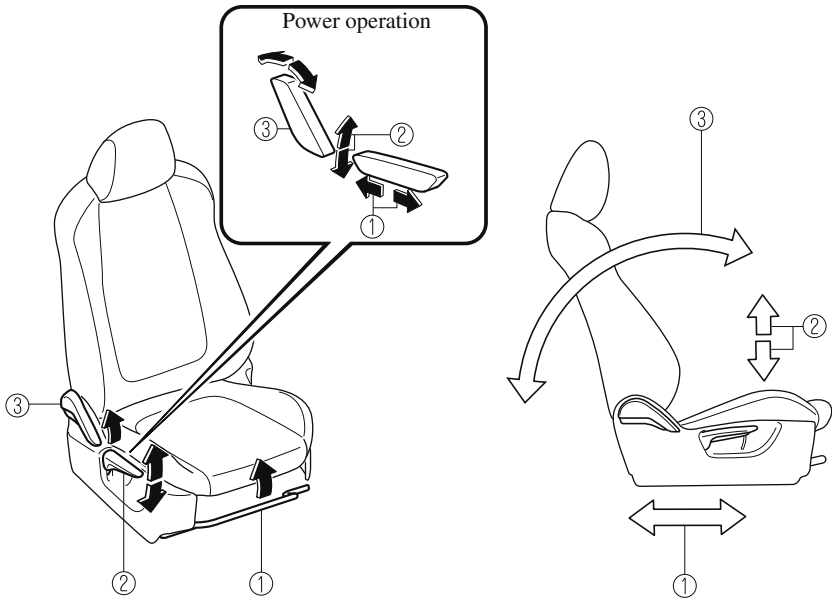
#### **(Erasing the driving positions programmed to the key)**

1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Press the SET button on the side of the seat until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
3. After the beep sounds, press the key  button within 5 seconds until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

### **NOTE**

- If a beep sound is heard 3 times, the operation is cancelled.

## ▼ Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat



### ① Seat Slide

(Manual Seat)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

(Power Seat)

To slide the seat, move the slide lifter switch on the outside of the seat to the front or back and hold it. Release the switch at the desired position.

### ② Height Adjustment

(Manual Seat)

To adjust the seat height, move the lever up or down.

(Power Seat)

To adjust the seat height, move the slide lifter switch up or down.

### ③ Seat Recline

(Manual Seat)

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

## Seats

---

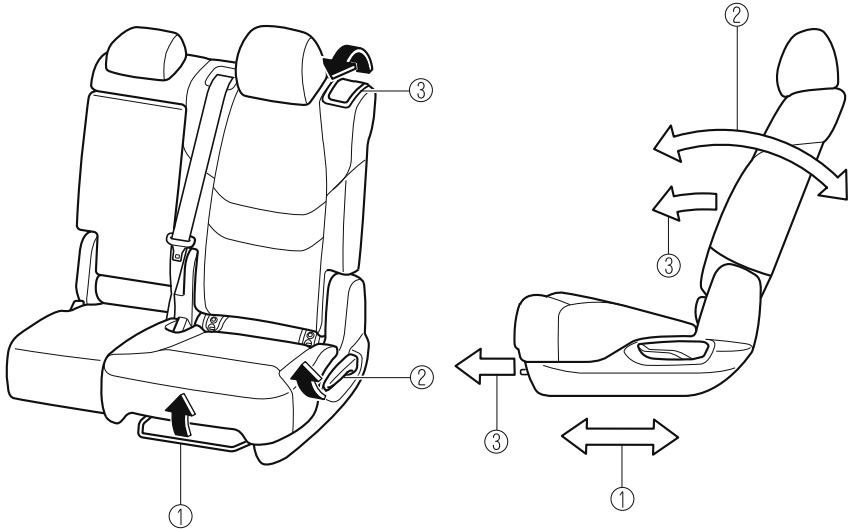
(Power Seat)

To change the seatback angle, press the front or rear side of the reclining switch. Release the switch at the desired position.



## Second-row Seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)

### ▼ Seat Operation



#### ① Seat Slide (Forward-back adjustment)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

#### ② Seat Recline

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

The lever can also be used when flattening down the seats.

Refer to How to Split Folding the Second-row Seats on page 2-17.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

#### ③ Third-row Seat Access

To access to the third-row seats, pull up the lever on the side of the head restraint to fold the seatback and slide the seat forward.

Refer to How to Third-row Seat Access on page 2-16.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

## Seats

### ▼ Armrest

The armrest in the centre of the second-row seatback can be used (no occupant in the centre seat) or placed upright.



### ! WARNING

**Never put your hands and fingers around the moving parts of the seat and armrest:**

Putting your hands and fingers around the moving parts of the seat and armrest is dangerous as they could get injured.

### ! CAUTION

- When storing the armrest, make sure that any leads connected to the USB power outlets in the armrest box are stored away in the armrest box. If the leads are not stored away in the armrest box, the leads and connection devices may become damaged when storing the armrest.
- Be careful not to apply excessive force to the armrest such as by sitting on it. Otherwise, it could be deformed or damaged.

### ▼ Third-row Seat Access

Occupants can get into and out of the third-row seats easily by sliding the second-row seats forward.

### ! WARNING

**Make sure there is nobody in the second-row seat area before operating the levers:**

Not checking the second-row seat area for persons before folding the seatbacks with the levers is dangerous. The second-row seat area is difficult to see from the rear of the vehicle. Operating the levers without checking could cause injury to a person when a seatback suddenly flips forward.

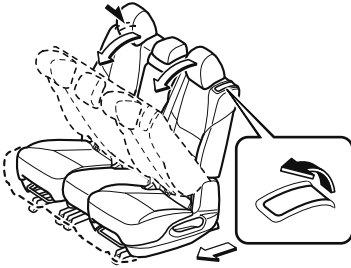
### ! CAUTION

Before moving the second-row seat, make sure that the head restraint is at the lowest position. If the second-row seat is folded forward while the head restraint is pulled up, there will not be enough space for getting in or out of the vehicle which could cause an occupant to trip and fall resulting in injury.

### Entering/exiting the third-row seat area

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.  
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.
2. Pull up the lever on the side of the head restraint to unlock the seat, fold

the seatback forward, and slide the seat forward.



#### **NOTE**

*The seats cannot be flattened down while the second-row seats are unlocked even if the lever on the side of the head restraint is operated and the reclining lever is operated. Before folding down the second-row seats, move the seatback forward once, slide the seat rearward, and lock the seat.*

#### **After getting in or out of the vehicle**

Move the seatback forward, slide the seat forward, and lock the seat.

#### **CAUTION**

*After entering/exiting the third-row seat area, return the second-row seatback to its upright position and lock it after sliding it rearward.*

*Make sure it is locked by attempting to lightly move it back and forth. Otherwise, it could move unexpectedly and cause injury.*

#### **▼ Split folding the Second-row Seats**

To create a flat luggage compartment space, fold the seatbacks forward.

#### **WARNING**

***Make sure the adjustable components of a second-row seat are locked after folding down the seatback:***

*A second-row seat that is not securely locked is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the second-row seat could move, causing injury.*

*After folding down the seatback of a second-row seat, make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward.*

#### **CAUTION**

*Check the position of a front seat before folding a second-row seatback.*

*Depending on the position of a front seat, it may not be possible to fold a second-row seatback all the way down because it may hit the seatback of the front seat which could scratch or damage the front seat or its pocket. Remove the head restraint on the second-row outboard seat if necessary.*

#### **NOTE**

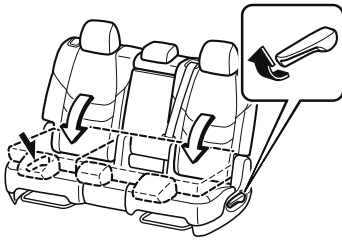
*The seats cannot be flattened down while the second-row seats are unlocked even if the lever on the side of the head restraint is operated and the reclining lever is operated. Before folding down the second-row seats, move the seatback forward once, slide the seat rearward, and lock the seat.*

# Seats

---

## Folding the seatbacks

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.  
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.
2. Raise the lever on the side of the second-row seat to fold down the seatback.

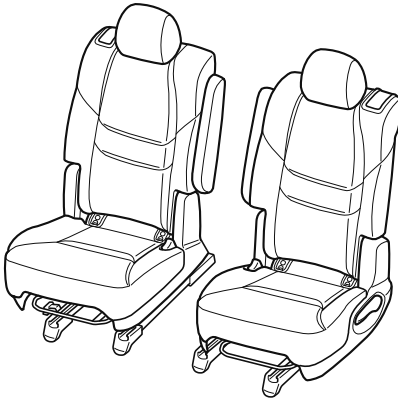


## To return the seatback to its upright position

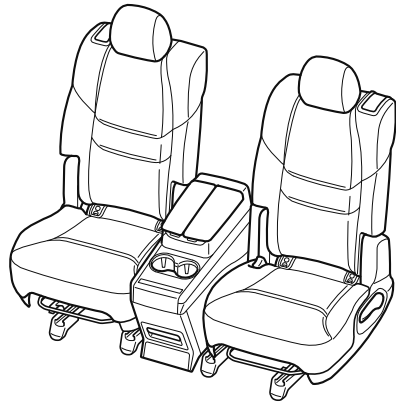
Press the seatback rearward and lock it in place. After returning the seatback to its upright position, make sure it is securely locked.

## Second-row Seat (Captain Seat Type)

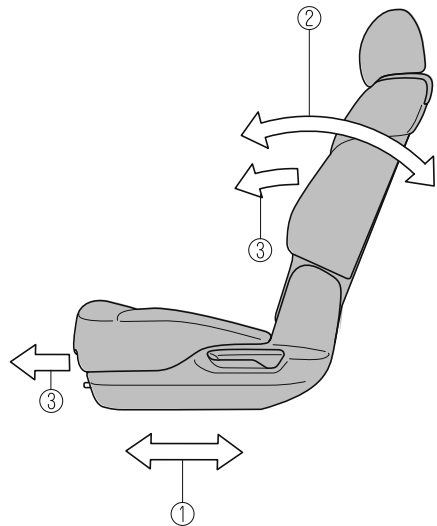
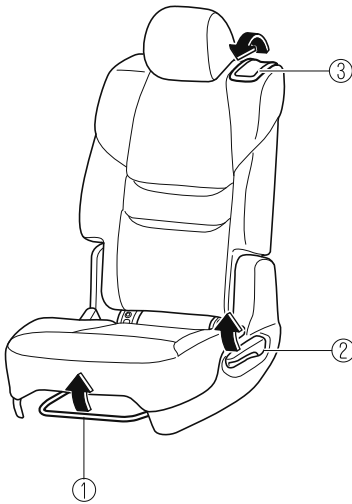
**Armrest type with angle adjustment function (centre walk-through)**



**Second-row seat console type**



### ▼ Seat Operation



#### ① Seat Slide (Forward-back adjustment)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

## Seats

---

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

### ② **Seat Recline**

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

The lever can also be used when flattening down the seats.

Refer to How to Split Folding the Second-row Seats on page 2-22.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

### ③ **Third-row Seat Access**

To access to the third-row seats, pull up the lever on the side of the head restraint to fold the seatback and slide the seat forward.

Refer to How to Third-row Seat Access on page 2-21.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

## ▼ **Armrest**

### Using the armrest

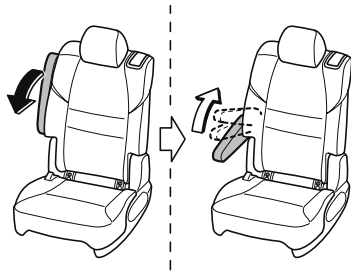
The armrest on the side of the second-row seatback can be used or placed upright.

### Adjusting the angle

The angle of the armrest can be adjusted according to the angle of the seatback.

To adjust the angle, lower the armrest to the lowest position, pull it up to the desired position, and then lock it. To adjust the angle again, store the armrest once and then lower the armrest to the lowest position again.

After adjustment, make sure that the armrest is securely locked by lightly pressing it down.



***Never position the shoulder portion of a seat belt over the armrest:***

*Positioning the shoulder portion of a second-row seat belt over the armrest is dangerous as it cannot provide adequate protection in a collision and could result in serious injuries.*

**Never put your hands and fingers around the moving parts of the seat and armrest:**

Putting your hands and fingers around the moving parts of the seat and armrest is dangerous as they could get injured.

**CAUTION**

Be careful not to apply excessive force to the armrest such as by sitting on it. Otherwise, it could be deformed or damaged.

▼ **Third-row Seat Access**

Occupants can get into and out of the third-row seats easily by sliding the second-row seats forward.

**WARNING**

**Make sure there is nobody in the second-row seat area before operating the levers:**

Not checking the second-row seat area for persons before folding the seatbacks with the levers is dangerous. The second-row seat area is difficult to see from the rear of the vehicle. Operating the levers without checking could cause injury to a person when a seatback suddenly flips forward.

**CAUTION**

Before moving the second-row seat, make sure that the head restraint is at the lowest position. If the second-row seat is folded forward while the head restraint is pulled up, there will not be enough space for getting in or out of the vehicle which could cause an occupant to trip and fall resulting in injury.

**NOTE**

Occupants can also get in and out of the third-row seat area by passing between the second-row seats with the armrest type having the angle adjustment function. Occupants can pass through easily by tilting the armrest forward.

**Entering/exiting the third-row seat area**

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.  
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.
2. Pull up the lever on the side of the head restraint to unlock the seat, fold the seatback forward, and slide the seat forward.



## Seats

---

### **NOTE**

*The seats cannot be flattened down while the second-row seats are unlocked even if the lever on the side of the head restraint is operated and the reclining lever is operated. Before folding down the second-row seats, move the seatback forward once, slide the seat rearward, and lock the seat.*

### **After getting in or out of the vehicle**

Move the seatback forward, slide the seat forward, and lock the seat.



*After entering/exiting the third-row seat area, return the second-row seatback to its upright position and lock it after sliding it rearward.*

*Make sure it is locked by attempting to lightly move it back and forth. Otherwise, it could move unexpectedly and cause injury.*

### **▼ Split folding the Second-row Seats**

To create a flat luggage compartment space, fold the seatbacks forward.



***Make sure the adjustable components of a second-row seat are locked after folding down the seatback:***

*A second-row seat that is not securely locked is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the second-row seat could move, causing injury.*

*After folding down the seatback of a second-row seat, make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward.*



*Check the position of a front seat before folding a second-row seatback. Depending on the position of a front seat, it may not be possible to fold a second-row seatback all the way down because it may hit the seatback of the front seat which could scratch or damage the front seat or its pocket. Remove the head restraint on the second-row outboard seat if necessary.*

### **NOTE**

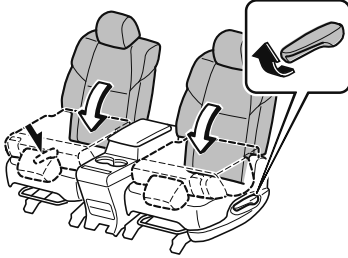
*The seats cannot be flattened down while the second-row seats are unlocked even if the lever on the side of the head restraint is operated and the reclining lever is operated. Before folding down the second-row seats, move the seatback forward once, slide the seat rearward, and lock the seat.*

### **Folding the seatbacks**

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.  
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.
2. **(Armrest type with angle adjustment function)**  
If the armrests are down, fold them back up.



3. Raise the lever on the side of the second-row seat to fold down the seatback.



### To return the seatback to its upright position

Press the seatback rearward and lock it in place. After returning the seatback to its upright position, make sure it is securely locked.

## Third-row Seat

### ▼ Third-row Seat Access

Occupants can get into and out of the third-row seat area by sliding the second-row seats forward. Refer to Third-row Seat Access on page 2-16, 2-21.

### ▼ Split folding the Third-row Seats

To create a luggage compartment space, fold the third-row seats forward.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

*Do not apply load to the head restraint with it in the upright position and the seatback folded down. Otherwise, it could cause damage to the head restraint.*

### **NOTE**

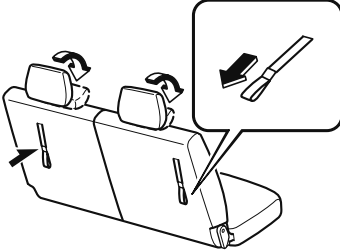
*When folding the seatbacks forward, fold them in two steps.*

### **Folding the seatbacks (With strap)**

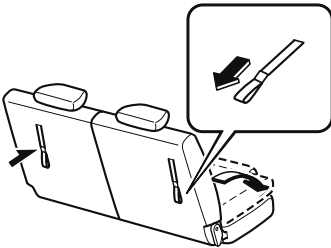
1. Secure the third-row seat seat belts into their holders.  
Refer to Unfastening the Seat Belt on page 2-33.
2. Slide the second-row seat all the way forward.

# Seats

3. Pull the strap to fold down the head restraint.



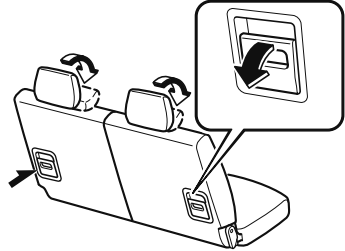
4. Pull the strap further to fold the third-row seat forward.



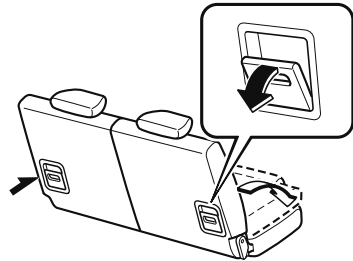
## Folding the seatbacks (With lever)

1. Secure the third-row seat seat belts into their holders.  
Refer to Unfastening the Seat Belt on page 2-33.
2. Slide the second-row seat all the way forward.

3. Lower the lever to fold down the head restraint.

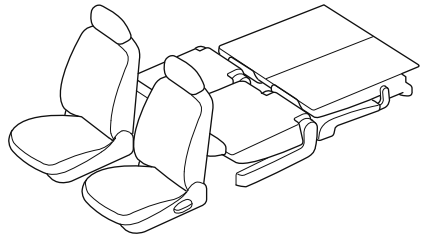


4. Lower the lever further to fold the third-row seat forward.



## **NOTE**

*To create a flat luggage compartment space from the rear of the vehicle to the back of the front seats, fold the second-row and third-row seats (page 2-17, 2-22).*



### To return third-row seat to its original position

1. Return the seatback to its original position by pulling the strap/lever on the back of the seatback.  
Make sure the seatback is secured by attempting to lightly move it forward and back.
2. Lift the head restraint upward to its upright position.

## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints on all outboard seats and the second-row centre seat. The head restraints are intended to help protect you and the passengers from neck injury.

### **WARNING**

***Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly adjusted. In addition, always raise the head restraints on all second-row seats when they are being used:***

*Driving with the head restraints adjusted too low or removed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.*

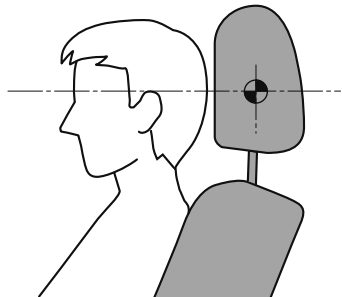
### **NOTE**

***(Third-row seat)***

*The head restraints are non-adjustable.*

### **▼ Height Adjustment**

Adjust the head restraint so that the centre is even with the top of the passenger's ears.

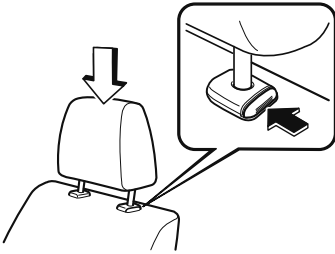


# Seats

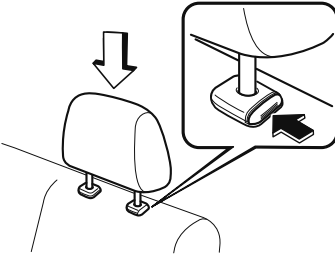
To raise a head restraint, pull it up to the desired position.

To lower the head restraint, press the stop-catch release, then push the head restraint down.

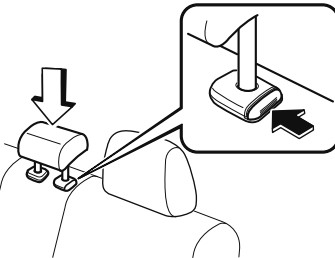
## Front outboard seat



## Second-row outboard seat



## Second-row centre seat



## ▼ Removal/Installation (Front outboard seat/Second-row seat)

To remove the head restraint, pull it up while pressing the stop-catch.

To install the head restraint, insert the legs into the holes while pressing the stop-catch.

## **! WARNING**

***Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly installed:***

*Driving with the head restraints not installed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.*

***After installing a head restraint, try lifting it to make sure that it does not pull out:***

*Driving with an unsecured head restraint is dangerous as the effectiveness of the head restraint will be compromised which could cause it to unexpectedly detach from the seat.*

## **! CAUTION**

➤ *When installing a head restraint, make sure that it is installed correctly with the front of the head restraint facing forward. If the head restraint is installed incorrectly, it could detach from the seat during a collision and result in injury.*

➤ The head restraints on each of the front and second-row seats are specialized to each seat. Do not switch around the head restraint positions. If a head restraint is not installed to its correct seat position, the effectiveness of the head restraint during a collision will be compromised which could cause injury.

### ▼ Foldable Head Restraints (Third-row Seat)

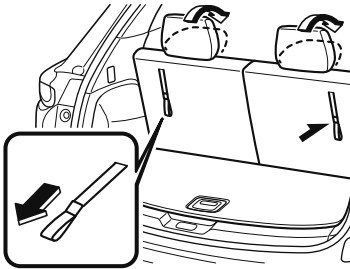
The third-row seats are equipped with foldable head restraints.

#### **NOTE**

The foldable head restraints cannot be adjusted or removed.

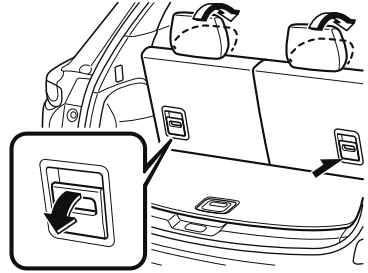
#### **(With strap)**

To fold the head restraint, pull the strap and fold the head restraint downward.



#### **(With lever)**

To fold the head restraint, lower the lever down.



To return the head restraint to its upright position, lift it upward.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Always drive with the head restraints in their upright positions when the third-row seats are occupied, and make sure they are securely locked in place:**

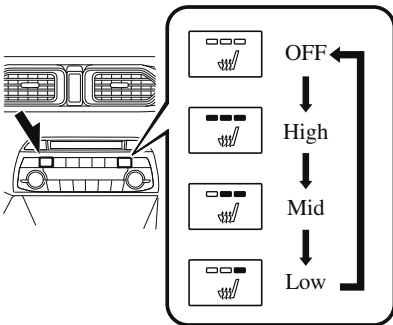
*Driving with the head restraints folded down is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.*

# Seat Warmer

## Seat Warmer

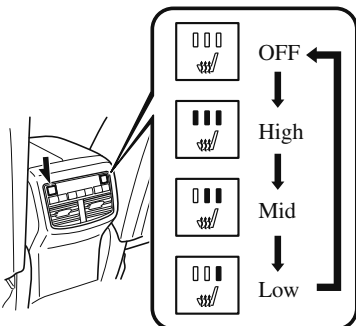
The front/second-row seats are electrically heated. The ignition must be switched ON. Press the seat warmer switch while the ignition is switched ON to operate the seat warmer. The indicator lights turn on to indicate that the seat warmer is operating. The mode changes as follows each time the seat warmer switch is pressed. When using the second-row seat warmer, fold the armrest forward. Refer to Armrest on page 2-16.

### Front

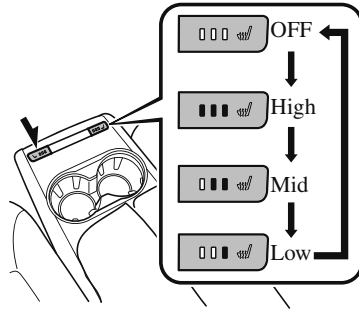


### Second-row seat\*

(6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



(Captain Seat Type)



## ⚠ WARNING

### **Be careful when using the seat warmer:**

*The heat from the seat warmer may be too hot for some people, as indicated as follows, and could cause a low-temperature burn.*

- *Infants, small children, elderly people, and physically challenged people*
- *People with delicate skin*
- *People who are excessively fatigued*
- *People who are intoxicated*
- *People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine*

### **Do not use the seat warmer with anything having high moisture-retention ability such as a blanket or cushion on the seat:**

*The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.*

### **Do not use the seat warmer even when taking a short nap in the vehicle:**

*The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.*

**Do not place heavy objects with sharp projections on the seat, or insert needles or pins into it:**

*This could cause the seat to become excessively heated and result in injury from a minor burn.*



➤ **(Second-row seat)**

*Before folding a second-row seatback, make sure that the second-row seat warmer switch is off. If a second-row seatback is folded while the second-row seat warmer is in operation, it may heat the seat excessively and damage the seat surface.*

➤ *Do not use organic solvents to clean the seat. It may damage the seat surface and the heater.*

**NOTE**

- *Use the seat warmer when the engine is running. Leaving the seat warmer on for long periods with the engine not running could cause the battery power to be depleted.*
- *When the engine is stopped while the seat warmers are operating and then the ignition is switched ON, the seat warmers will not turn back on automatically. To turn the seat warmers back on, press the switch. In addition, the second-row seat warmer operation stops automatically after the seat warmers have operated for about 90 minutes.*
- *The temperature of the seat warmer cannot be adjusted beyond High, Mid and Low because the seat warmer is controlled by a thermostat.*

## Seat Belt Precautions

Seat belts help to decrease the possibility of severe injury during accidents and sudden stops. Mazda recommends that the driver and all passengers always wear seat belts. All the seats have lap/shoulder belts. These belts also have retractors with inertia locks that keep them out of the way when not in use. The locks allow the belts to remain comfortable on users, but they will lock in position during a collision.

### **WARNING**

***Always wear your seat belt and make sure all occupants are properly restrained:***

*Not wearing a seat belt is extremely dangerous. During a collision, occupants not wearing seat belts could hit someone or things inside the vehicle or even be thrown out of the vehicle. They could be seriously injured or even killed. In the same collision, occupants wearing seat belts would be much safer.*

***Do not wear twisted seat belts:***

*Twisted seat belts are dangerous. In a collision, the full width of the belt is not available to absorb the impact. This puts more force on the bones beneath the belt, which could cause serious injury or death. So, if your seat belt is twisted, you must straighten the seat belt to remove any twists and to allow the full width of the belt to be used.*

***Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:***

*Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.*

***Do not operate a vehicle with a damaged seat belt:***

*Using a damaged seat belt is dangerous. An accident could damage the belt webbing of the seat belt in use. A damaged seat belt cannot provide adequate protection in a collision. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect all seat belt systems in use during an accident before they are used again.*

***Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:***

*Always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.*



**Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:**

*Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.*

**Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:**

*The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.*

*In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.*

**Instructions for Use of Seat Belt Assemblies:**

*Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.*

*Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.*

*Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.*

*It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.*

*Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.*

*Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.*

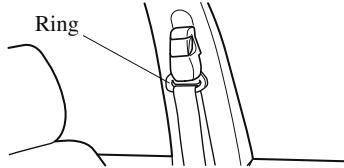
*No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.*

## Seat Belt Systems

---

### CAUTION

*Belt retraction may become difficult if the belts and rings are soiled, so try to keep them clean. For more details about cleaning the seat belts, refer to "Seat Belt Maintenance" (page 6-53).*



### ▼ Pregnant Women and Persons with Serious Medical Conditions

Pregnant women should always wear seat belts. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations.

The lap belt should be worn **SNUGLY AND AS LOW AS POSSIBLE OVER THE HIPS**. The shoulder belt should be worn across your shoulder properly, but never across the stomach area.

Persons with serious medical conditions also should wear seat belts. Check with your doctor for any special instructions regarding specific medical conditions.



### ▼ Emergency Locking Mode

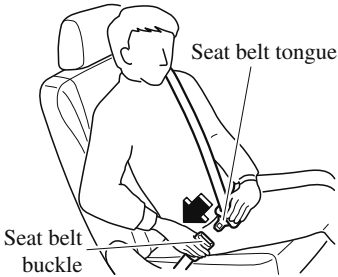
When the seat belt is fastened, it will always be in the emergency locking mode.

In the emergency locking mode, the belt remains comfortable on the occupant and the retractor will lock in position during a collision.

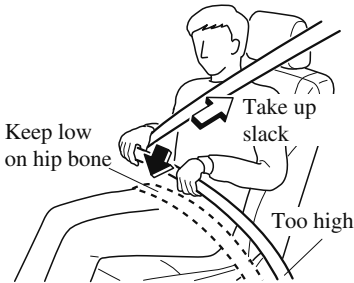
If the belt is locked and cannot be pulled out, retract the belt once, and then try pulling it out slowly. If this fails, pull the belt strongly 1 time and loosen, then pull it out again slowly.

## Seat Belt

### ▼ Fastening the Seat Belt

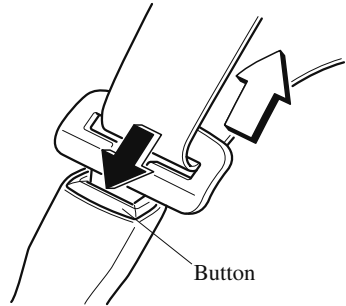


Position the lap belt as low as possible, not on the abdominal area, then adjust the shoulder belt so that it fits snugly against your body.



### ▼ Unfastening the Seat Belt

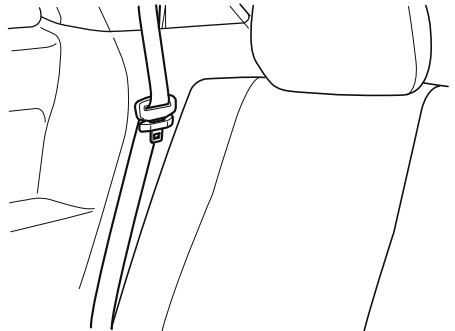
Depress the button on the seat belt buckle. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.



#### **NOTE**

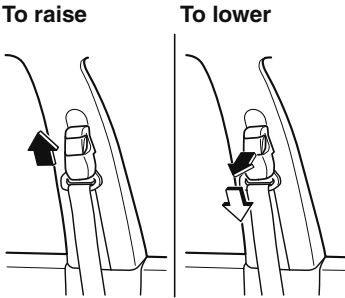
*If a belt does not fully retract, inspect it for kinks and twists. If it is still not retracting properly, have it inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

To secure the outboard-third row seat belts when not in use, insert the belts into their seat belt retainers.



# Seat Belt Systems

## ▼ Front Shoulder Belt Adjuster



Make sure the adjuster is locked.

## Seat Belt Warning Systems

If it detects that the occupant seat belt is unfastened, the warning light or beep alerts the occupant.

Refer to Taking Action on page 7-31.

Refer to Seat Belt Warning Beep on page 7-38.

### Seat belt indicator light (second-row seat/third-row seat) (green)

(Second-row seat)

6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type



Captain Seat Type



(Third-row seat)



The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and a second-row seat belt/third-row seat belt is fastened, and then it turns off after about 60 seconds have elapsed since the engine was started.

## Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems

For optimum protection, the front seat belts and second-row outboard seat belts are equipped with pretensioner and load limiting systems. For both these systems to work properly you must wear the seat belt properly.

### Pretensioners:

When a collision is detected, the pretensioners deploy simultaneously with the air bags.

For deployment details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-63).

The seat belt retractors remove slack quickly as the air bags are expanding. Any time the air bags and seat belt pretensioners have fired they must be replaced.

A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Refer to Taking Action on page 7-31. Refer to Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning BEEP on page 7-38.

### Load limiter:

The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce belt force on the occupant's chest. While the most severe load on a seat belt occurs in frontal collisions, the load limiter has an automatic mechanical function and can activate in any accident mode with sufficient occupant movement.

Even if the pretensioners have not fired, the load limiting function must be checked

by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



### ***Wear seat belts only as recommended in this owner's manual:***

*Incorrect positioning of the seat belts is dangerous. Without proper positioning, the pretensioner and load limiting systems cannot provide adequate protection in an accident and this could result in serious injury. For more details about wearing seat belts, refer to "Fastening the Seat Belt" (page 2-33).*

### ***Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:***

*Always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.*

### ***Do not modify the components or wiring, or use electronic testing devices on the pretensioner system:***

*Modifying the components or wiring of the pretensioner system, including the use of electronic testing devices is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable which would prevent it from activating in an accident. The occupants or repairers could be seriously injured.*

## Seat Belt Systems

---

### ***Properly dispose of the pretensioner system:***

*Improper disposal of the pretensioner system or a vehicle with non-deactivated pretensioners is dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer safely dispose of the pretensioner system or scrap a pretensioner system equipped vehicle.*

### **NOTE**

- The pretensioner system may not operate depending on the type of the collision. For details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-63).*
- Some smoke (non-toxic gas) will be released when the air bags and pretensioners deploy. This does not indicate a fire. This gas normally has no effect on occupants, however, those with sensitive skin may experience light skin irritation. If residue from the deployment of the air bags or the pretensioner system gets on the skin or in the eyes, wash it off as soon as possible.*

## Child-Restraint Precautions

Mazda strongly urges the use of child-restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

Mazda recommends use of a Mazda genuine child-restraint system or one that complies with the UN-R \*1 44 regulation. If you would like to purchase a Mazda genuine child-restraint system, please contact an Authorised Mazda Dealer.

Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children riding in your vehicle.

\*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

Whatever child-restraint system you consider, please pick the appropriate one for the age and size of the child, obey the law and follow the instructions that come with the individual child-restraint system.

A child who has outgrown child-restraint systems should sit in the rear and use seat belts.

The child-restraint system should be installed on the rear seat.

Statistics confirm that the rear seat is the best place for all children up to 12 years of age-the more so with a supplementary restraint system (air bags).

A rear-facing child-restraint system should **NEVER** be used in the front passenger seat with the air bag system activated. The front passenger's seat is also the least preferred seat for other child-restraint systems.

### **WARNING**

#### **Use the correct size child-restraint system:**

*For effective protection in vehicle accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child-restraint system depending on age and size. If not, the child could be seriously injured or even killed in an accident.*

#### **Follow the manufacturer's instructions and always keep the child-restraint system buckled down:**

*An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH ISOFIX anchors, and attach the corresponding tether anchor.*

# Child Restraint

---

**Always secure a child in a proper child-restraint system:**

Holding a child in your arms while the vehicle is moving is extremely dangerous. No matter how strong the person may be, he or she cannot hold onto a child in a sudden stop or collision and it could result in serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Even in a moderate accident, the child may be exposed to air bag forces that could result in serious injury or death to the child, or the child may be slammed into an adult, causing injury to both child and adult.

**Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:**

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Vehicles with a front passenger air bag have the following warning label. The warning label reminds you not to put a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat at any time.



Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.





**Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:**

*In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.*



**Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over or against the side window of a vehicle with side and curtain air bags:**

*It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over or against the side window, the area of the front passenger seat, the front and rear window pillars and the roof edge along both sides from which the side and curtain air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side or curtain air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over or against the front door could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. With the front air bag and the additional side air bag that comes out of the front seat, the rear seat is always a better location for children. Take special care not to allow a child to lean over or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.*

**Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:**

*Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.*

**Use the tether and tether anchor only for a child-restraint system:**

*Child-restraint system anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly installed child-restraint systems. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

## Child Restraint

---

***Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (except when installing a booster seat):***

*Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.*



*A seat belt or child-restraint system can become very hot in a closed vehicle during warm weather. To avoid burning yourself or a child, check them before you or your child touches them.*

***NOTE***

*Your Mazda is equipped with ISOFIX anchors for attachment of ISOFIX child-restraint systems on the second-row seats. When using these anchors to secure a child-restraint system, refer to “Using ISOFIX Anchor” (page 2-51).*

## Child-Restraint System Installation

### ▼ Categories of Child-Restraint Systems

**NOTE**

When purchasing, ask the manufacturer of the child-restraint system which type of child-restraint system is appropriate for your child and vehicle.

**(Countries conforming to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation)**

Child-restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the UN-R 44 regulation.

Group	Age	Weight	Size Classification/ Fixture (CRF)
0	Up to about 9 months old	Up to 10 kg (up to 22 lb)	ISO/L1
			ISO/L2
			ISO/R1
0+	Up to about 2 years old	Up to 13 kg (up to 29 lb)	ISO/R1
			ISO/R2
			ISO/R3
1	About 8 months to 4 years old	9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	ISO/R2
			ISO/R3
			ISO/F2
			ISO/F2X
2	About 3 to 7 years old	15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)	ISO/F3
			—
3	About 6 to 12 years old	22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)	—

**(Other countries)**

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

### ▼ Child-Restraint System Types

**(Countries conforming to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation)**

In this owner's manual, explanation of child-restraint systems secured with seat belts is provided for the following 3 types of popular child-restraint systems: baby seat, child seat, junior seat.

**NOTE**

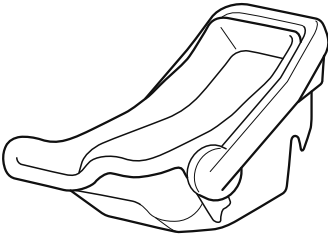
· Installation position is determined by the type of child-restraint system. Always read the manufacturer's instructions and this owner's manual carefully.

# Child Restraint

· Due to variations in the design of child-restraint systems, vehicle seats and seat belts, all child-restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child-restraint system, it should be tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child-restraint system does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will.

## Baby seat

Equal to Group 0 and 0+ of the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.



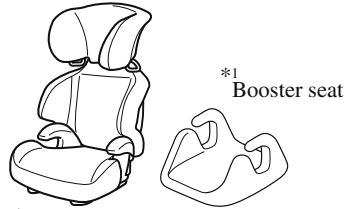
## Child seat

Equal to Group 1 of the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.



## Junior seat

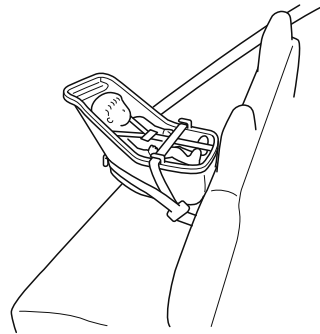
Equal to Group 2 and 3 of the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.



\*1  
When using a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed.

## ▼ Baby Seat Installation Position

A baby seat is used in the rear-facing position only.



Refer to the table, "Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions" for baby seat installation position (page 2-46).

**⚠ WARNING**

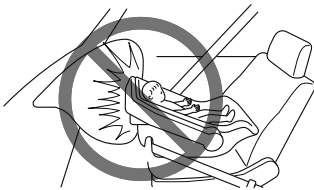
**Always install a baby seat in the correct seat position:**

*Installing a baby seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A baby seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.*

**Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat protected by an air bag:**

*NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.*

*The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed.*



**▼ Child Seat Installation Position**

A child seat is used in front-facing and rear-facing positions depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions in accordance with the appropriate age and

size of the child as well as the directions for installing the child-restraint system. Refer to the table, “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” for child seat installation position (page 2-46).

**Rear-facing type**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Always install a rear-facing child seat in the correct seat position:**

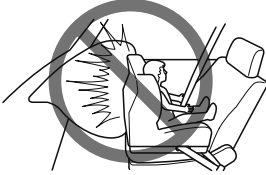
*Installing a rear-facing child seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A rear-facing child seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.*

**Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat protected by an air bag:**

*NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.*

# Child Restraint

*The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed.*



## Front-facing type



### **Never install a front-facing child seat in the wrong seat position:**

*Installing a front-facing child seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A front-facing child seat installed in the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.*

**Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:**

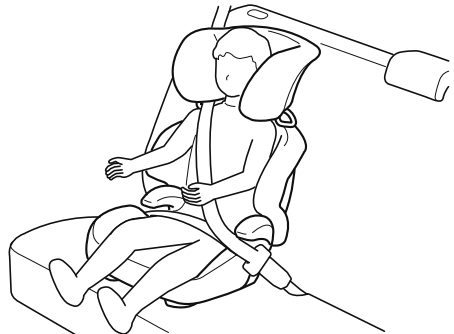
*In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.*



## ▼ Junior Seat Installation Position

A junior seat is used in the front-facing position only.

We recommend the use of the junior seat with backrest to allow simple adjustment of the shoulder belt position and to give your child the best protection.



Refer to the table, “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” for junior seat installation position (page 2-46).

**⚠ WARNING**

***Always install a junior seat in the correct seat position:***

*Installing a junior seat without first consulting the table “Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions” is dangerous. A junior seat installed on the wrong seat position cannot be properly secured. In a collision, the child could hit something or someone in the vehicle and be seriously injured or even killed.*

***Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:***

*In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.*



### Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions Table

Provided information in the table shows your child-restraint system suitability for various seating position. For installation suitability of other manufacturer child-restraint system, carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child-restraint system.

When installing a child-restraint system, the following points must be observed:

· **(Front passenger seat/Second-row seat)**

Always remove the head restraint before installing a child-restraint system. However, when installing a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed. In addition, always use a tether strap and attach it securely. Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.

- When installing a child-restraint system to the seat, adjust the seat slide position as far back as possible. Adjust the front passenger seat bottom to the highest position so that the seat belt can securely fasten the child-restraint system.

Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-13.

Refer to Seat Operation (Second-row Seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)) on page 2-15.

Refer to Seat Operation (Second-row Seat (Captain Seat Type)) on page 2-19.

- When it is difficult to install a child-restraint system to the front passenger seat/second-row seat, or the seat belt cannot be secured to the child-restraint system, perform the following operations to adjust the seat holding the child-restraint system so that the seat belt can be secured completely to it.

- Move the seat forward or back.
- Move the seatback forward or back.
- Move the seat upward or downward.

**(Second-row seat)**

- When installing a child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, remove the head restraint.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.

- When installing a child-restraint system using the ISOFIX anchors, if the connectors of the child-restraint system do not reach the lower anchorage and the child-restraint system cannot be installed, slightly tilt the seatback of the seat holding the child-restraint system rearward. If the seatback of a second-row seat cannot be reclined due to interference with luggage on the rear seat or passengers, slide the seat forward once and then recline the seatback.



**(Second-row seat/Third-row seat)**

- If the tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, use an extension strap.
- When installing a child-restraint system to the second-row seat or third-row seat, adjust the seat position of the front seat so that the child-restraint system does not contact the front seat.  
Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.  
Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-13.  
Refer to Seat Operation (Second-row Seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)) on page 2-15.  
Refer to Seat Operation (Second-row Seat (Captain Seat Type)) on page 2-19.
- When installing a child-restraint system to the rear seat, refer to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions and the Using ISOFIX Anchor on page 2-51.
- An i-Size child-restraint system refers to a child-restraint system which has acquired i-Size category certification for the UN-R 129 regulation.

Seating position	Passenger		Second-row seat (Left)	Second-row seat (Centre)	Second-row seat (Right)	Third-row seat (Left)	Third-row seat (Right)
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated					
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes (UF)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes (i-U)	No	Yes (i-U)	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R2)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R2X)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	No	No

# Child Restraint

---

Seating position	Passenger		Second-row seat (Left)	Second-row seat (Centre)	Second-row seat (Right)	Third-row seat (Left)	Third-row seat (Right)
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated					
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R3)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	No	No
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F3)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable lateral facing fixture (L1)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable lateral facing fixture (L2)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B3)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Non i-size compatible with a support leg (Yes/No)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Seating position	Passenger		Second-row seat (Left)	Second-row seat (Centre)	Second-row seat (Right)	Third-row seat (Left)	Third-row seat (Right)
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated					
Lower ISO-FIX anchorages but without Top Tether (Yes/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No

U = Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF = Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

L = Suitable for particular child restraints given on attached list. These restraints may be of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories. Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed to your Mazda, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

i-U = Suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing.

i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems only.

Yes = Child-restraint system can be secured on the seat.

No = Child-restraint system cannot be secured on the seat, or there is no fixture.

X = Child-restraint system cannot be installed.

# Child Restraint

## Installing Child-Restraint Systems

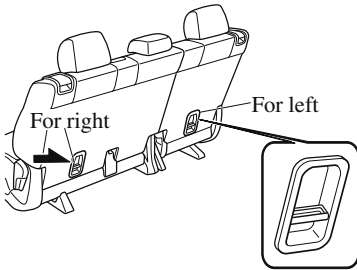
### ▼ Anchor Bracket (Second-row seat)

Anchor brackets for securing child-restraint systems are equipped in the vehicle. Locate each anchor position using the illustration.

To install a child-restraint system, remove the head restraint (except third-row seat). Always follow the instruction manual accompanying the child-restraint system.

### Anchor bracket location

Use the indicated anchor bracket locations when installing a child-restraint system equipped with a tether.



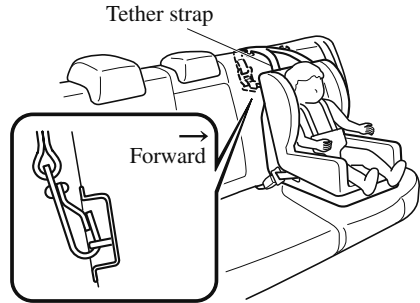
### ! WARNING

### Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

### Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (Second-row seat):

Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.



### Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system (Second-row seat):

Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.

### ▼ Using the Seat Belt

When installing a child-restraint system, follow the installation instructions included with the product.

In addition, remove the head restraint.

However, when installing a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed.

▼ **Using ISOFIX Anchor (Second-row seat)**



**Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the use of the child-restraint system:**

*An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions.*

**Make sure the child-restraint system is properly secured:**

*A child-restraint system that is not secured is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, it can become a projectile and hit someone, causing serious injury. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle, put it in the luggage compartment or at least make sure it is securely fastened to the ISOFIX anchors.*

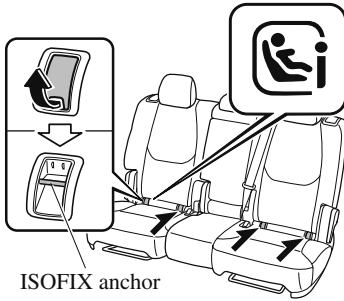
**Make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchor-secured child-restraint system:**

*Not following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing the child-restraint system is dangerous. If seat belts or a foreign object prevent the child-restraint system from being securely attached to the ISOFIX anchors and the child-restraint system is installed improperly, the child-restraint system could move in a sudden stop or collision causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. When installing the child-restraint system, make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchors. Always follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.*

1. First, adjust the front seat to allow clearance between the child-restraint system and the front seat.  
Refer to *Adjusting the Driver's Seat* on page 2-5.  
Refer to *Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat* on page 2-13.
2. Adjust the angle of the second-row seatback so that there is no gap between the child-restraint system and the second-row seatback.
3. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.

# Child Restraint

4. Remove the cover of the child-restraint system's ISOFIX anchors to verify the locations of the ISOFIX anchors.



### NOTE

- The ISOFIX anchors marking on the cover indicates the position of the ISOFIX anchors for the attachment of a child-restraint system.
  - Store the removed cover so that it does not get lost.
5. Remove the head restraint. However, when installing a backless booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the backless booster seat is installed. Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.
  6. Secure the child-restraint system using the ISOFIX anchor, following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instruction.
  7. If your child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, that probably means it is very important to properly secure the tether for child safety. Please carefully follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing tethers (page 2-50).

## ⚠ WARNING

*WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.*

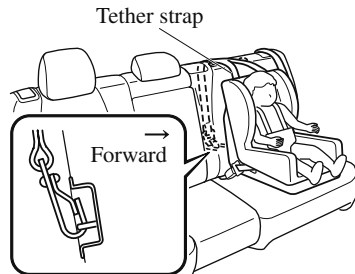
## ⚠ WARNING

**Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:**

*Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.*

**Always remove the head restraint and set the tether strap (except when installing a booster seat):**

*Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.*



***Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system:***

*Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.*

*Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-25.*

### Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions

The front and side supplementary restraint systems (SRS) include different types of air bags. **Please verify the different types of air bags which are equipped on your vehicle by locating the “SRS AIRBAG” location indicators.** These indicators are visible in the area where the air bags are installed.

The air bags are installed in the following locations:

- The steering wheel hub (driver air bag)
- The front passenger instrument panel (front passenger air bag)
- The outboard sides of the front seatbacks (side air bags)
- The front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides (curtain air bags)

The air bag supplementary restraint systems are designed to provide supplementary protection in certain situations so seat belts are always important in the following ways:

Without seat belt usage, the air bags cannot provide adequate protection during an accident. Seat belt usage is necessary to:

- Keep the occupant from being thrown into an inflating air bag.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries during an accident that is not designed for air bag inflation, such as roll-over or rear impact.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries in frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are not severe enough to activate the air bags.
- Reduce the possibility of being thrown from your vehicle.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries to lower body and legs during an accident because the air bags provide no protection to these parts of the body.
- Hold the driver in a position which allows better control of the vehicle.

A child who is too small to use a seat belt must be properly secured using a child-restraint system (page 2-37).

Carefully consider which child-restraint system is necessary for your child and follow the installation directions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.



**⚠ WARNING*****Seat belts must be worn in air bag equipped vehicles:***

*Depending only on the air bags for protection during an accident is dangerous. Alone, air bags may not prevent serious injuries. The appropriate air bags can be expected to inflate only in the first accident, such as frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are at least moderate. Vehicle occupants should always wear seat belts.*

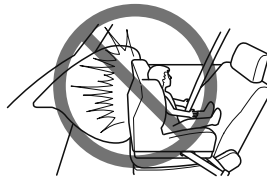
***Children should not ride in the front passenger seat:***

*Placing a child, 12 years or under, in the front seat is dangerous. The child could be hit by a deploying air bag and be seriously injured or even killed. A sleeping child is more likely to lean against the door and be hit by the side air bag in moderate collision to the front-passenger side of the vehicle. Whenever possible, always secure a child 12 years and under on the rear seats with an appropriate child-restraint system for the child's age and size.*

***Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:***

*NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.*

*Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.*

***Do not sit too close to the driver and front passenger air bags:***

*Sitting too close to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing hands or feet on them is extremely dangerous. The driver and front passenger air bags inflate with great force and speed. Serious injuries could occur if someone is too close. The driver should always hold onto only the rim of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should keep both feet on the floor. Front seat occupants should adjust their seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.*

## SRS Air Bags

---

**Sit in the centre of the seat and wear seat belts properly:**

*Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them, or sleeping up against the door or hanging out the windows is extremely dangerous. The side and curtain air bags inflate with great force and speed directly expanding along the door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door or leaning against a window, or if rear seat occupants grab the sides of the front seatbacks. Give the side and curtain air bags room to work by sitting in the centre of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.*

**Do not attach objects on or around the area where driver and front passenger air bags deploy:**

*Attaching an object to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing something in front of them is dangerous. In an accident, an object could interfere with air bag inflation and injure the occupants.*

**Do not attach objects on or around the area where a side air bag deploys:**

*Attaching objects to the front seat in such a way as to cover the outboard side of the seat in any way is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the side air bag, which inflates from the outboard side of the front seats, impeding the added protection of the side air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.*

*Do not hang net bags, map pouches or backpacks with side straps on the front seats. Never use seat covers on the front seats. Always keep the side air bag modules in your front seats free to deploy in the event of a side collision.*

**Do not attach objects on or around the area where a curtain air bag deploys:**

*Attaching objects to the areas where the curtain air bag activates such as on the windscreen glass, side door glass, front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge and assist grips is dangerous. In an accident the object could interfere with the curtain air bag, which inflates from the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, impeding the added protection of the curtain air bag system or redirecting the air bag in a way that is dangerous. Furthermore, the bag could be cut open releasing the gas.*

*Do not place hangers or any other objects on the assist grips. When hanging clothes, hang them on the coat hook directly. Always keep the curtain air bag modules free to deploy in the event of a side collision.*

**Do not touch the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated:**

*Touching the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated is dangerous. Immediately after inflation, they are very hot. You could get burned.*

**Never install any front-end equipment to your vehicle:**

Installation of front-end equipment, such as frontal protection bar (kangaroo bar, bull bar, push bar, or other similar devices), snowplow, or winches, is dangerous. The air bag crash sensor system could be affected. This could cause air bags to inflate unexpectedly, or it could prevent the air bags from inflating during an accident. Front occupants could be seriously injured.

**Do not modify the suspension:**

Modifying the vehicle suspension is dangerous. If the vehicle's height or the suspension is modified, the vehicle will be unable to accurately detect a collision resulting in incorrect or unexpected air bag deployment and the possibility of serious injuries.

**Do not modify a front door or leave any damage unrepaired. Always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer inspect a damaged front door:**

Modifying a front door or leaving any damage unrepaired is dangerous. Each front door has a side crash sensor as a component of the supplementary restraint system. If holes are drilled in a front door, a door speaker is left removed, or a damaged door is left unrepaired, the sensor could be adversely affected causing it to not detect the pressure of an impact correctly during a side collision. If a sensor does not detect a side impact correctly, the side and curtain air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner may not operate normally which could result in serious injury to occupants.

**Do not modify the supplementary restraint system:**

Modifying the components or wiring of the supplementary restraint system is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable. Do not make any modifications to the supplementary restraint system. This includes installing trim, badges, or anything else over the air bag modules. It also includes installing extra electrical equipment on or near system components or wiring. An expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer can provide the special care needed in the removal and installation of front seats. It is important to protect the air bag wiring and connections to assure that the bags do not accidentally deploy, and that the driver seat slide position sensor is not damaged and the seats retain an undamaged air bag connection.

**Do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats:**

Placing luggage or other objects under the front seats is dangerous. The components essential to the supplementary restraint system could be damaged, and in the event of a side collision, the appropriate air bags may not deploy, which could result in death or serious injury. To prevent damage to the components essential to the supplementary restraint system, do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats.

# SRS Air Bags

---

**Do not operate a vehicle with damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components:**

Expend or damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy or damage them. Only a trained expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer can fully evaluate these systems to see that they will work in any subsequent accident. Driving with an expended or damaged air bag or pretensioner unit will not afford you the necessary protection in the event of any subsequent accident which could result in serious injury or death.

**Do not remove interior air bag parts:**

Removing any components such as the front seats, front instrument panel, the steering wheel or parts on the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, containing air bag parts or sensors is dangerous. These parts contain essential air bag components. The air bag could accidentally activate and cause serious injuries. Always have an Authorised Mazda Repairer remove these parts.

**Properly dispose of the air bag system:**

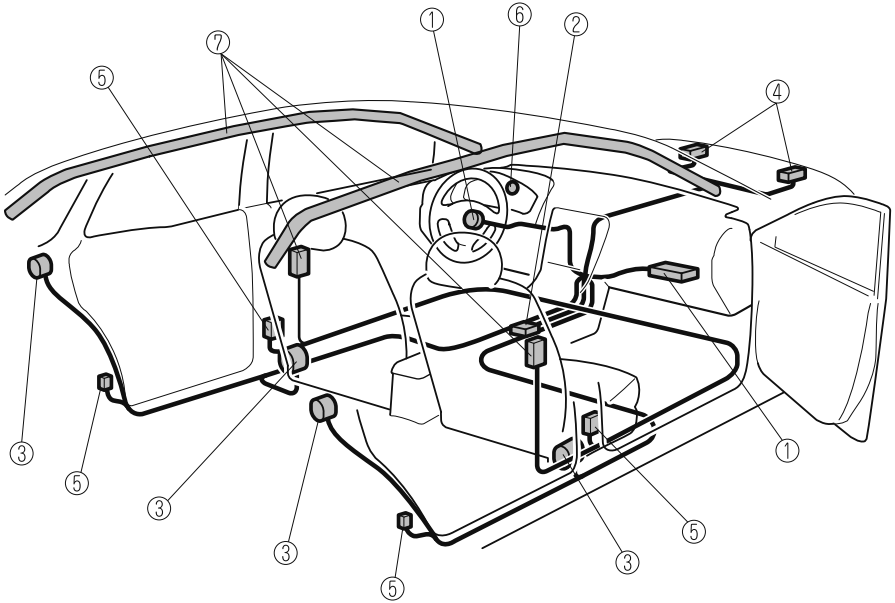
Improper disposal of an air bag or a vehicle with live air bags in it can be extremely dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer safely dispose of the air bag system or scrap an air bag equipped vehicle.

**NOTE**

- When an air bag deploys, a loud inflation noise can be heard and some smoke will be released. Neither is likely to cause injury, however, the texture of the air bags may cause light skin injuries on body parts not covered with clothing through friction.
- Should you sell your Mazda, we urge you to tell the new owner of its air bag systems and that familiarization with all instructions about them, from the Owner's Manual, is important.
- This highly-visible label warns against the use of a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.



## Supplementary Restraint System Components



- ① Driver/Front passenger inflators and air bags
- ② Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- ③ Seat belt pretensioners (page 2-35)
- ④ Front air bag sensors
- ⑤ Side crash sensors
- ⑥ Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light (page 4-29)
- ⑦ Side and curtain inflators and air bags

## How the SRS Air Bags Work

Your Mazda is equipped with the following types of SRS air bags. SRS air bags are designed to work together with the seat belts to help to reduce injuries during an accident. The SRS air bags are designed to provide further protection for passengers in addition to the seat belt functions. Be sure to wear seat belts properly.

### ▼ Seat Belt Pretensioners

The pretensioners operate differently depending on what types of air bags are equipped. For more details about seat belt pretensioner operation, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-63).

#### Front

The front seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions. In addition, during a side collision, the pretensioner operates.

#### Second-row Outboard

The second-row outboard seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions.

### ▼ Driver Air Bag

The driver's air bag is mounted in the steering wheel.

When air bag crash sensors detect a frontal impact of greater than moderate force, the driver's air bag inflates quickly helping to reduce injury mainly to the driver's head or chest caused by directly hitting the steering wheel.

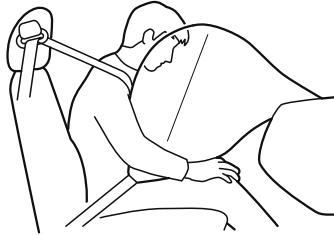
For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-63).



### ▼ Front Passenger Air Bag

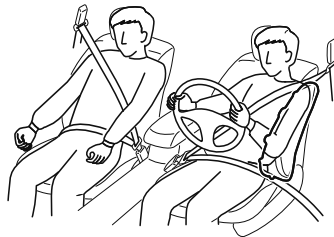
The front passenger air bag is mounted in the front passenger instrument panel.

The inflation mechanism for the front passenger air bag is the same as the driver's air bag. For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-63).



### ▼ Side Air Bags

The side air bags are mounted in the outboard sides of the front seatbacks. When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the system inflates the side air bag only on the side in which the vehicle was hit. The side air bag inflates quickly to reduce injury to the driver or front passenger's chest caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window. For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-63).



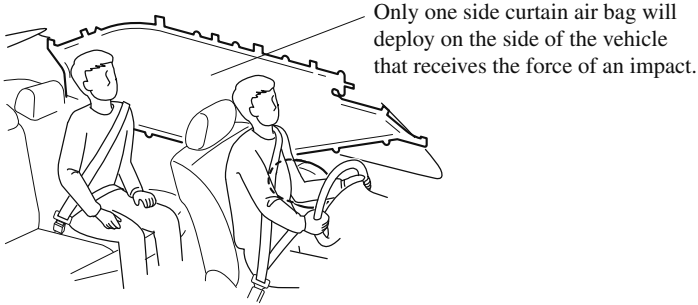
### ▼ Curtain Air Bags

The curtain air bags are mounted in the front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides. When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the curtain air bag inflates quickly and helps to reduce injury mainly to the rear outboard passenger's head caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window.

# SRS Air Bags

---

For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-63).



## ▼ Warning Light/Beep

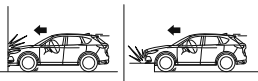
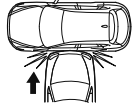

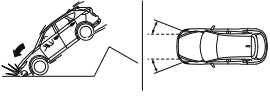
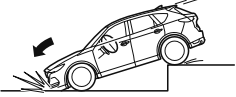
A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-29. Refer to Warning Sound is Activated on page 7-38.



## SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria

This chart indicates the applicable SRS equipment that will deploy depending on the type of collision.

(The illustrations are the representative cases of collisions.)

	Types of collision		
	A severe frontal/near frontal collision	A severe side collision*1	A rear collision
SRS equip- ment			
			
			
Front seat belt pretensioner	X	X	No air bag and seat belt pretensioner will be activated in a rear collision.
Rear seat belt pretensioner	X		
Driver air bag	X		
Front passenger air bag	X		
Side air bag		X (impact side only)	
Curtain air bag		X (impact side only)	

X : The SRS air bag equipment is designed to deploy in a collision.

\*1 In a side collision, the seat belt pretensioners and the side/curtain air bags deploy.

**NOTE**

*In a frontal offset collision, the equipped air bags and pretensioners may all deploy depending on the direction, angle, and rate of impact.*

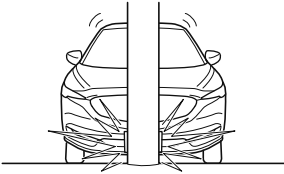
## Limitations to SRS Air Bag

In severe collisions such as those described previously in "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria", the applicable SRS air bag equipment will deploy. However, in some accidents, the equipment may not deploy depending on the type of collision and its severity.

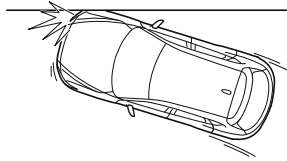
### Limitations to front/near front collision detection:

The following illustrations are examples of front/near front collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

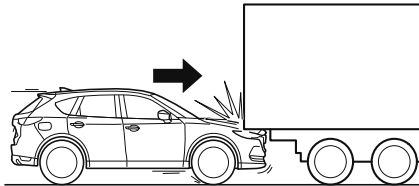
Impacts involving trees or poles



Frontal offset impact to the vehicle



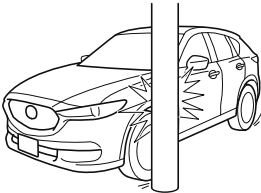
Rear-ending or running under a truck's tail gate



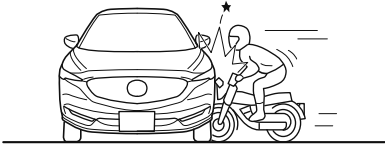
**Limitations to side collision detection:**

The following illustrations are examples of side collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

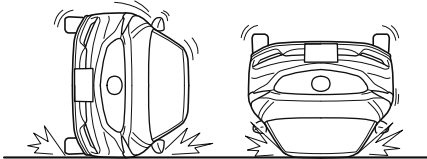
Side impacts involving trees or poles



Side impacts with two-wheeled vehicles



Roll-over



## **SRS Air Bags**

---

### **Constant Monitoring**

The following components of the air bag systems are monitored by a diagnostic system:

- Front air bag sensors
- Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- Side crash sensors
- Air bag modules
- Seat belt pretensioners
- Air bag/Seat belt pretensioner system warning light
- Related wiring

The diagnostic module continuously monitors the system's readiness. This begins when the ignition is switched ON and continues while the vehicle is being driven.

# 3

## Before Driving

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

<b>Keys.....</b>	<b>3-2</b>	<b>Security System.....</b>	<b>3-33</b>
Keys.....	3-2	Modification and Add-On	
Keyless Entry System.....	3-3	Equipment.....	3-33
<b>Advanced Keyless Entry</b>		Immobilizer System.....	3-33
<b>System.....</b>	<b>3-7</b>	Theft-Deterrent System.....	3-35
Advanced Keyless Entry		<b>Driving Tips.....</b>	<b>3-37</b>
System.....	3-7	Running-In.....	3-37
Operational Range.....	3-8	Saving Fuel and Protection of the	
<b>Doors and Locks.....</b>	<b>3-9</b>	Environment.....	3-37
Door Locks.....	3-9	Hazardous Driving.....	3-38
Liftgate.....	3-15	Floor Mat.....	3-39
<b>Fuel and Emission.....</b>	<b>3-22</b>	Rocking the Vehicle.....	3-40
Fuel and Engine Exhaust		Winter Driving.....	3-40
Precautions.....	3-22	Driving In Flooded Area.....	3-42
Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap.....	3-26	Turbocharger Information	
<b>Mirrors.....</b>	<b>3-28</b>	(SKYACTIV-D 2.2).....	3-43
Mirrors.....	3-28	<b>Towing.....</b>	<b>3-44</b>
<b>Windows.....</b>	<b>3-30</b>	Towing Caravans and	
Power Windows.....	3-30	Trailers.....	3-44

# Keys

## Keys

### **! WARNING**

**Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:**

Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed. Children may find these keys to be an interesting toy to play with and could cause the power windows or other controls to operate, or even make the vehicle move.

### **! CAUTION**

- Because the key (transmitter) uses low-intensity radio waves, it may not function correctly under the following conditions:
  - The key is carried with communication devices such as cellular phones.
  - The key contacts or is covered by a metal object.
  - The key is near electronic devices such as personal computers.
  - Non-Mazda genuine electronic equipment is installed in the vehicle.
  - There is equipment which discharges radio waves near the vehicle.
- The key (transmitter) may consume battery power excessively if it receives high-intensity radio waves. Do not place the key near electronic devices such as televisions or personal computers.
- To avoid damage to the key (transmitter), DO NOT:

- Drop the key.
- Get the key wet.
- Disassemble the key.
- Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.
- Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.
- Place heavy objects on the key.
- Put the key in an ultrasonic cleaner.
- Put any magnetized objects close to the key.

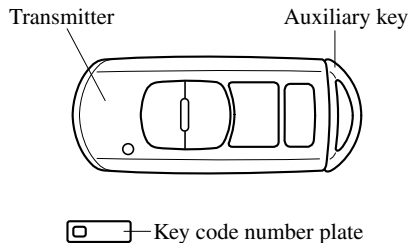
A code number is stamped on the plate attached to the key set; detach this plate and store it in a safe place (not in the vehicle) for use if you need to make a replacement key (auxiliary key).

Also write down the code number and keep it in a separate safe and convenient place, but not in the vehicle.

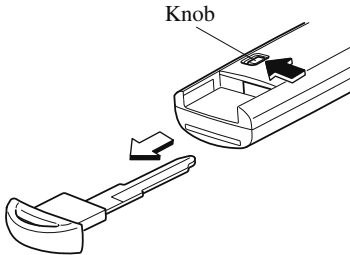
If your key (auxiliary key) is lost, consult your Authorised Mazda Repairer and have your code number ready.

### **NOTE**

*The driver must carry the key to ensure the system functions properly.*



To use the auxiliary key, pull out the auxiliary key from the transmitter while pressing the knob.



## Keyless Entry System

This system uses the key buttons to remotely lock and unlock the doors and the liftgate, and opens/closes the liftgate. The system can start the engine without having to take the key out of your purse or pocket.

Operating the theft-deterrent system is also possible.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning indications or beeps.

Check the displayed message for more information and, if necessary, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer, according to the indication.

- KEY Warning Indication  
Refer to Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.  
Refer to Taking Action on page 7-31.
- Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep  
Refer to Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep on page 7-39.
- Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep  
Refer to Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep on page 7-39.

If you have a problem with the key, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

If your key is lost or stolen, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible for a replacement and to make the lost or stolen key inoperative.

# Keys

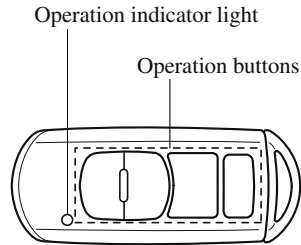
## **CAUTION**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### NOTE

- The keyless entry system operation may vary due to local conditions.
- The keyless entry system is fully operational (door/liftgate lock/unlock) when the ignition is switched off. The system does not operate if the ignition is switched to any position other than off.
- If the key does not operate when pressing a button or the operational range becomes too small, the battery may be weak. To install a new battery, refer to Key Battery Replacement (page 6-29).
- Battery life is about 1 year. Replace the battery with a new one if the messages are displayed in the instrument cluster. Replacing the battery about once a year is recommended because the KEY warning indication may not illuminate or flash depending on the rate of battery depletion.
- Additional keys can be obtained at an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Up to 6 keys can be used with the keyless functions per vehicle. Bring all keys to an Authorised Mazda Repairer when additional keys are required.

### ▼ Transmitter



### NOTE

- The headlights turn on/off by operating the transmitter. Refer to Leaving Home Light on page 4-47.
- The hazard warning lights flash when the theft-deterrent system is armed or turned off. Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-35.
- A beep sound can be heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate are locked/unlocked using the key. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off. The volume of the beep sound can also be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

Use the following procedure to change the setting.

1. Switch the ignition off and close all of the doors and the liftgate.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Within 30 seconds of opening the driver's door, press and hold the LOCK button on the key for 5 seconds or longer.



The beep sound activates at the currently set volume. The setting changes each time the LOCK button on the key is pressed and the beep sound activates at the set volume. (If the beep sound has been set to not activate, it will not activate.)

4. The setting change is completed by doing any one of the following:
  - Switching the ignition to ACC or ON.
  - Closing the driver's door.
  - Opening the liftgate.
  - Not operating the key for ten seconds.
  - Pressing any button except the LOCK button on the key.
  - Pressing a request switch.

The operation indicator light flashes when the buttons are pressed.

### **Lock button**

To lock the doors and the liftgate, press the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash once.

A beep sound will be heard once.



### **NOTE**

- The doors and the liftgate cannot be locked by pressing the lock button while any other door or the liftgate is open. The hazard warning lights will also not flash.
- Make sure all doors and the liftgate are locked after pressing the button.

- When the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the key while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.

### **Unlock button**

To unlock the doors and the liftgate, press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

A beep sound will be heard twice.



### **NOTE**

#### **· (Auto re-lock function)**

After unlocking with the key, all doors and the liftgate will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds. The hazard warning lights will flash.

The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

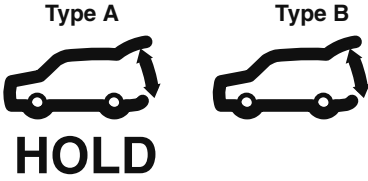
- A door or the liftgate is opened.
- The ignition is switched to any position other than off.
- When the doors are unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the key while the theft-deterrent system is turned off, the hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that the system is turned off.

### **Power liftgate button\***

To open/close the liftgate, press the power liftgate button for one second or longer with the liftgate in the fully closed/open position.

# Keys

The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes after the beep sounds.



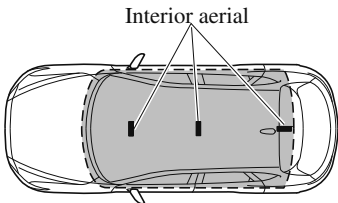
## ▼ Operational Range

The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

## Starting the Engine

### **NOTE**

- Starting the engine may be possible even if the key is outside of the vehicle and extremely close to a door and window, however, always start the engine from the driver's seat.
- If the vehicle is started and the key is not in the vehicle, the vehicle will not restart after it is shut off and the ignition is switched to off.
- The luggage compartment is out of the assured operational range, however, if the key (transmitter) is operable the engine will start.



● Operational range

### **NOTE**

The engine may not start if the key is placed in the following areas:

- Around the instrument panel
- In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console

## ▼ Key Suspend Function

If a key is left in the vehicle, the functions of the key left in the vehicle are temporarily suspended to prevent theft of the vehicle.

To restore the functions, press the unlock button on the functions-suspended key in the vehicle.

# Advanced Keyless Entry System

## Advanced Keyless Entry System

### WARNING

#### **Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:**

Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.

The advanced keyless function allows you to lock/unlock the door and the liftgate, or open the liftgate while carrying the key.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning beeps.

- Request switch Inoperable Warning Beep  
Refer to Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep on page 7-39.
- Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep  
Refer to Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep on page 7-39.
- Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep  
Refer to Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep on page 7-39.

#### **NOTE**

*The advanced keyless entry system functions can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details. If the advanced keyless entry system has been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead. Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-8.*

# Advanced Keyless Entry System

## Operational Range

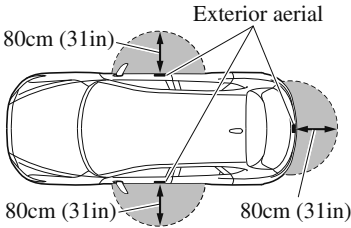
The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

### NOTE

When the battery power is low, or in places where there are high-intensity radio waves or noise, the operational range may become narrower or the system may not operate. For determining battery replacement, Refer to Keyless Entry System on page 3-3.

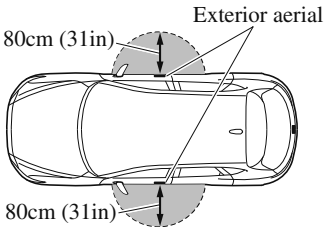
### ▼ Locking, Unlocking the Doors and the Liftgate

#### Lock



Operational range

#### Unlock

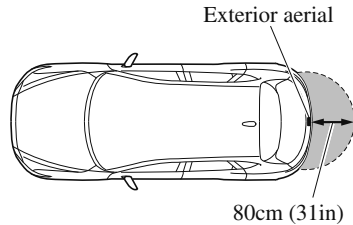


Operational range

### NOTE

- The system may not operate if you are too close to the windows or door handles, or liftgate.
- If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.
  - Around the instrument panel
  - In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console
  - Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone

### ▼ Opening the Liftgate



Operational range

## Door Locks

### WARNING

**Always take all children and pets with you or leave a responsible person with them:**

Leaving a child or a pet unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. In hot weather, temperatures inside a vehicle can become high enough to cause brain damage or even death.

**Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:**

Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed.

**Keep all doors locked when driving:**

Unlocked doors in a moving vehicle are dangerous. Passengers can fall out if a door is accidentally opened and can more easily be thrown out in an accident.

**Always close all the windows, lock the doors and the liftgate and take the key with you when leaving your vehicle unattended:**

Leaving your vehicle unlocked is dangerous as children could lock themselves in a hot vehicle, which could result in death. Also, a vehicle left unlocked becomes an easy target for thieves and intruders.

**After closing the doors and the liftgate, always verify that they are securely closed:**

Doors and the liftgate not securely closed are dangerous, if the vehicle is driven with a door and the liftgate not securely closed, the door and the liftgate could open unexpectedly resulting in an accident.

**Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before opening a door and the liftgate:**

Suddenly opening a door and the liftgate is dangerous. A passing vehicle or a pedestrian could be hit and cause an accident.

### CAUTION

➤ Always confirm the conditions around the vehicle before opening/closing the doors and the liftgate and use caution during strong winds or when parked on an incline. Not being aware of the conditions around the vehicle is dangerous because fingers could get caught in the door and the liftgate or a passing pedestrian could be hit, resulting in an unexpected accident or injury.

### NOTE

- Always stop the engine and lock the doors. In addition, to prevent theft of valuables, do not leave them inside the cabin.
- If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.
  - Around the instrument panel
  - In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console

## Doors and Locks

- Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone
- The vehicle lock-out prevention feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.

All doors and the liftgate will automatically unlock if they are locked using the power door locks with any door or the liftgate open.

- **(Door unlock (control) system with collision detection)**

This system automatically unlocks the doors and the liftgate in the event the vehicle is involved in an accident to allow passengers to get out of the vehicle immediately and prevent being trapped inside. While the ignition is switched ON and in the event the vehicle receives an impact strong enough to inflate the air bags, all the doors and the liftgate are automatically unlocked after about 6 seconds have elapsed from the time of the accident.

The doors and the liftgate may not unlock depending on how an impact is applied, the force of the impact, and other conditions of the accident.

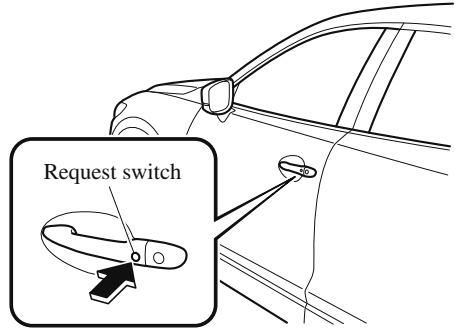
If door-related systems or the battery is malfunctioning, the doors and the liftgate will not unlock.

### ▼ Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch

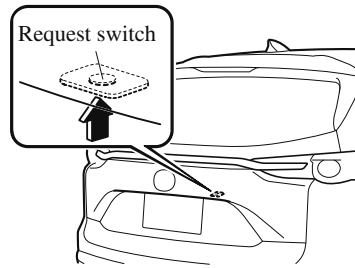
All doors and the liftgate can be locked/unlocked by pressing the request switch on the front doors while the key is being carried.

The request switch on the liftgate can only be used to lock all doors and the liftgate.

### Front doors



### Liftgate (Lock only)



### To lock

To lock the doors and the liftgate, press the request switch and the hazard warning lights will flash once.

A beep sound will be heard once.

### To unlock

To unlock the doors and the liftgate, press the request switch on a front door and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

A beep sound will be heard twice.

### **NOTE**

- Confirm that all doors and the liftgate are securely locked.

For the liftgate, move it without pressing the electric liftgate opener to verify that the liftgate has not been left ajar.

- All doors and the liftgate cannot be locked when any door or the liftgate is open.
- It may require a few seconds for the doors to unlock after the request switch is pressed.
- A beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate are locked/unlocked using the request switch. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.

The volume of the beep sound can also be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

Use the following procedure to change the setting.

1. Switch the ignition off and close all of the doors and the liftgate.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Within 30 seconds of opening the driver's door, press and hold the LOCK button on the key for 5 seconds or longer.

The beep sound activates at the currently set volume. The setting changes each time the LOCK button on the key is pressed and the beep sound activates at the set volume. (If the beep sound has been set to not activate, it will not activate.)

4. The setting change is completed by doing any one of the following:
  - Switching the ignition to ACC or ON.
  - Closing the driver's door.
  - Opening the liftgate.
  - Not operating the key for ten seconds.
  - Pressing any button except the LOCK button on the key.
  - Pressing a request switch.

- The hazard warning lights flash when the theft-deterrent system is armed or turned off.  
Refer to Theft-Deterrent System on page 3-35.

- The setting can be changed so that the doors and the liftgate are locked automatically without pressing the request switch.  
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

**(Walk-away auto lock function)**

A beep sound is heard when all doors and the liftgate are closed while the advanced key is being carried. All doors and the liftgate are locked automatically after about three seconds when the advanced key is out of the operational range. Also, the hazard warning lights flash once. (Even if the driver is in the operational range, all doors and the liftgate are locked automatically after about 30 seconds.) If you are out of the operational range before the doors and the liftgate are completely closed or another key is left in the vehicle, the walk-away auto lock function will not work. Always make sure that all doors and the liftgate are closed and locked before leaving the vehicle. The walk-away auto lock function does not close the power windows.

- **(Auto re-lock function)**  
After unlocking with the request switch, all doors and the liftgate will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds. The hazard warning lights will flash.  
The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed.

## Doors and Locks

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

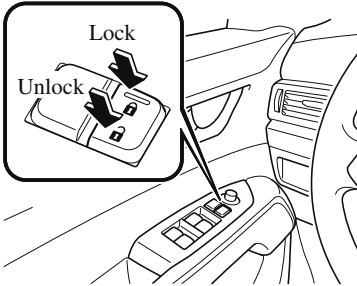
- Opening a door or the liftgate.
- Switching the ignition to any position other than off.

### ▼ Locking, Unlocking with Transmitter

All doors and the liftgate can be locked/unlocked by operating the keyless entry system transmitter, refer to Keyless Entry System (page 3-3).

### ▼ Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Switch

All doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the lock side is pressed with all doors and the liftgate closed. They all unlock when the unlock side is pressed.



#### **NOTE**

The doors and the liftgate cannot be locked while any other door or the liftgate is open.

### ▼ Auto Lock/Unlock Function



#### **Do not pull the inner handle on a front door:**

Pulling the inner handle on a front door while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Passengers can fall out of the vehicle if the door opens accidentally, which could result in death or serious injury.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), all doors and the liftgate lock automatically.
- When the ignition is switched off, all doors and the liftgate unlock automatically.

These functions can also be disabled so that they do not operate.

#### **Auto lock/unlock function setting change using door-lock switch**

The doors and the liftgate can be set to lock or unlock automatically by selecting any one of the functions from the following table and using the door-lock switch on the interior door panel.

#### **NOTE**

- Function number 3 in the following table is the factory setting for your vehicle.
- There are only a total of six auto lock/unlock settings available. Be sure to press the unlock side of the door-lock switch the correct number of times according to the selected function number. If the switch is mistakenly pressed seven times, the procedure will be cancelled. If this occurs, start the procedure from the beginning.



# Doors and Locks

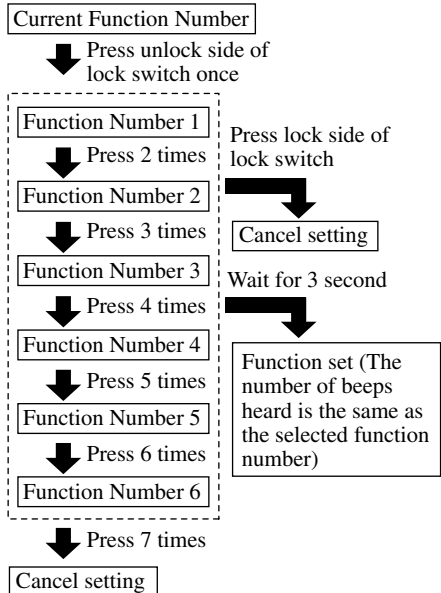
Function number	Function*1
1	The auto door-lock function is disabled.
2	All the doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the vehicle speed is about 20 km/h (12 mph) or more.
3 (Factory Setting)	All the doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the vehicle speed is about 20 km/h (12 mph) or more. All the doors and the liftgate unlock when the ignition is switched from ON to Off.
4	When the ignition is switched ON and the selector lever is shifted from park (P) to any other gear position, all the doors and the liftgate lock automatically.
5	When the ignition is switched ON and the selector lever is shifted from park (P) to any other gear position, all the doors and the liftgate lock automatically. When the selector lever is shifted to park (P) while the ignition is switched ON, all the doors and the liftgate unlock automatically.
6	All the doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the vehicle speed is about 20 km/h (12 mph) or more. When the selector lever is shifted to park (P) while the ignition is switched ON, all the doors and the liftgate unlock automatically.

\*1 Other settings for the auto door lock function are available at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. For details consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

Settings can be changed using the following procedure.

1. Safely park the vehicle. All doors and the liftgate must remain closed.
2. Switch the ignition ON.

3. Press and hold the lock side of the door-lock switch within 20 seconds of switching the ignition ON, and make sure a beep sound is heard about eight seconds afterwards.
4. Refer to the auto lock/unlock function setting table, determine the function number for the desired setting. Press the unlock side of the door-lock switch the same number of times as the selected function number (Ex. If you select function 2, press the unlock side of the switch only 2 times).
5. Three seconds after the function setting has been changed, a beep sound will beep in the amount of the selected function number. (Ex. Function number 3 = 3 beep sounds)



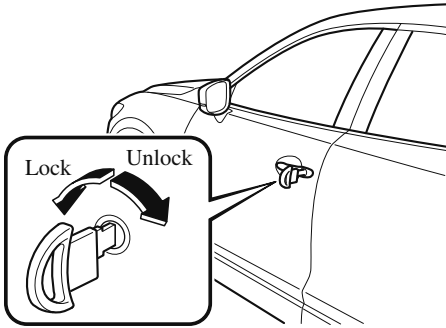
# Doors and Locks

## NOTE

- The doors and the liftgate cannot be locked or unlocked while the setting function is being performed.
- The procedure can be cancelled by pressing the lock side of the door-lock switch.

### ▼ Locking, Unlocking with Auxiliary Key

All doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the driver's door is locked using the auxiliary key. They all unlock when the driver's door is unlocked using the auxiliary key. Turn the auxiliary key toward the front to lock, toward the back to unlock.

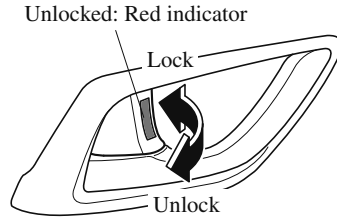


### ▼ Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Knob

#### Operation from inside

To lock any door from the inside, press the door-lock knob.  
To unlock, pull it outward.

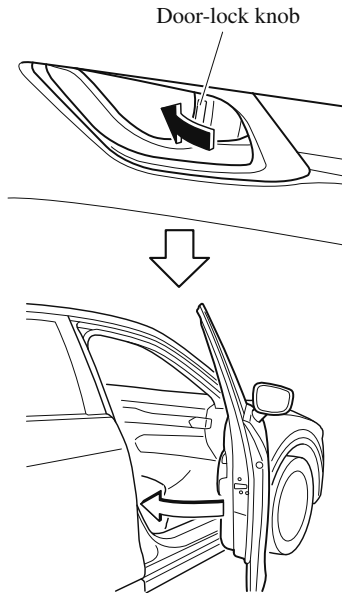
This does not operate the other door locks.



#### Operation from outside

To lock the rear and front passenger doors with the door-lock knob from the outside, press the door-lock knob to the lock position and close the door (holding the door handle in the open position is not required).

This does not operate the other door locks.



## NOTE

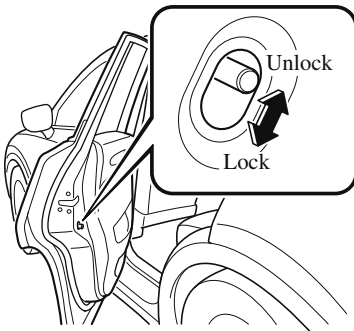
When locking the door this way:

- Be careful not to leave the key inside the vehicle.
- The driver's door lock knob cannot be used while the driver's door is open.

### ▼ Rear Door Child Safety Locks

These locks are intended to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors. Use them on both rear doors whenever a child rides in the rear seat of the vehicle.

If you slide the child safety lock to the lock position before closing that door, the door cannot be opened from the inside. The door can only be opened by pulling the outside handle.



## Liftgate

### ⚠ WARNING

#### **Never allow a person to ride in the luggage compartment:**

Allowing a person to ride in the luggage compartment is dangerous. The person in the luggage compartment could be seriously injured or killed during sudden braking or a collision.

#### **Do not drive with the liftgate open:**

Exhaust gas in the cabin of a vehicle is dangerous. An open liftgate in a moving vehicle will cause exhaust gas to be drawn into the cabin. This gas contains CO (carbon monoxide), which is colourless, odourless, and highly poisonous, and it can cause loss of consciousness and death. Moreover, an open liftgate could cause occupants to fall out in an accident.

#### **Do not stack or leave loaded luggage unsecured in the luggage compartment:**

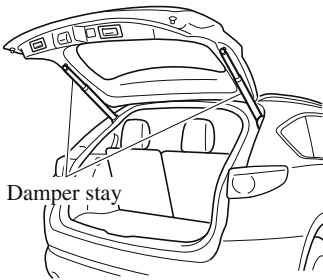
Otherwise, the luggage may move or collapse, resulting in injury or an accident. In addition, do not load luggage higher than the seatbacks. It may affect the side or rear field of view.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Before opening the liftgate, remove any snow and ice accumulation on it. Otherwise, the liftgate could close under the weight of the snow and ice resulting in injury.

## Doors and Locks

- Be careful when opening/closing the liftgate during strong winds. If a strong gust blows against the liftgate, it could close suddenly resulting in injury.
- Fully open the liftgate and make sure that it stays open. If the liftgate is only opened partially, it could slam shut by vibration or wind gusts resulting in injury.
- When loading or unloading luggage in the luggage compartment, turn off the engine. Otherwise, you could get burned by the heat of the exhaust gas.
- Be careful not to apply excessive force to the damper stay on the liftgate such as by putting your hand on the stay. Otherwise, the damper stay may bend and affect the liftgate operation.



- Do not modify or replace the liftgate damper stay. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if a liftgate damper stay is deformed or damaged for reasons such as a collision or if there is some other problem.

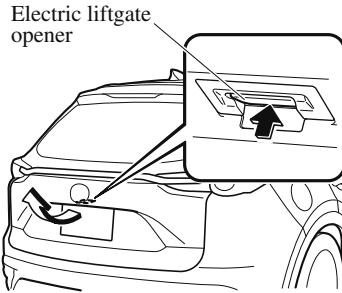
### ▼ Opening and Closing the Liftgate

#### Opening the liftgate with Electric liftgate opener

Unlock the doors and liftgate, then press the electric liftgate opener on the liftgate

and raise the liftgate when the latch releases.

For the power liftgate operation, refer to Power Liftgate on page 3-17.



#### **NOTE**

- A locked liftgate can also be opened while the key is being carried.
- When opening the liftgate with the doors and the liftgate locked, it may require a few seconds for the liftgate latch to release after the electric liftgate opener is pressed.
- The liftgate can be closed when the doors are locked with the key left in the vehicle. However, to prevent locking the key in the vehicle, the liftgate can be opened by pressing the electric liftgate opener. If the liftgate cannot be opened despite doing this procedure, first push the liftgate completely closed, then press the electric liftgate opener to fully open the liftgate.
- When the liftgate latch is released by pressing the electric liftgate opener, the liftgate raises slightly. If the liftgate is not operated for a certain period of time, the liftgate cannot be raised.  
**To open**  
Press the electric liftgate opener again.

**To close**

To close the liftgate from its slightly raised position, open it first by pressing the electric liftgate opener, then close it after waiting at least 1 second.

- If the liftgate is not fully closed, the driver is notified by a warning indicated in the instrument cluster.
- If the vehicle battery is dead or there is a malfunction in the electrical system and the liftgate cannot be unlocked, the liftgate can be opened by performing the emergency procedure.  
Refer to *When Liftgate Cannot be Opened* on page 7-42.

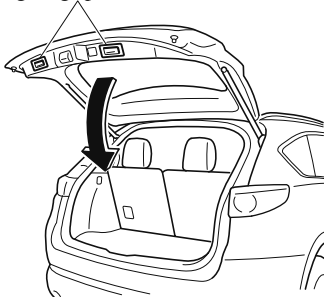
**Closing the liftgate**

Lower the liftgate slowly using the liftgate grip recess, then push the liftgate closed using both hands.

Do not slam it. Pull up on the liftgate to make sure it is secure.

For the power liftgate operation, refer to Power Liftgate on page 3-17.

Liftgate grip recess

**NOTE**

Confirm that the liftgate is securely closed. The liftgate, move it without pressing the electric liftgate opener to verify that the liftgate has not been left ajar.

**▼ Power Liftgate\***

The power liftgate opens/closes electrically by operating the switches in the vehicle or the buttons on the keyless entry system transmitter.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Be sure to watch the power liftgate as it opens or closes, and make sure that it closes completely:**

Opening or closing the power liftgate while not watching it move is dangerous. Because of unseen obstacles and the jam-safe feature, a liftgate may not close completely and, if left unnoticed, could result in serious injury or death if an occupant were to fall out of the vehicle. Always be sure that the area around the liftgate is clear before activating it.

**Always confirm the safety of the area around the power liftgate before operating it electrically.**

Not checking the area around the liftgate for people before operating it using the power liftgate switch or the button on the keyless entry system is dangerous. A person could become caught between the liftgate and an obstruction while it is opening electrically or between the liftgate and vehicle while it is closing electrically, resulting in an accident and serious injury.

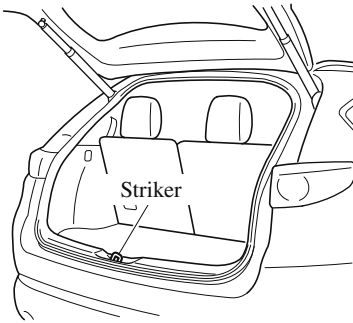
## Doors and Locks

### **Never allow children to operate the power liftgate system:**

Allowing children to operate the power liftgate switch and the keyless entry system is dangerous. Children are not aware of the dangers of people getting fingers and hands caught in a moving liftgate. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in a closing door, it could result in death or serious injury.



- When closing the power liftgate, make sure there are no foreign objects around the striker. If foreign objects are obstructing the striker, the liftgate may not close properly.



- Do not install accessories to the power liftgate other than specified accessories. Otherwise, it cannot be opened/closed automatically and could result in a malfunction.
- Be careful when switching the power liftgate from electrical to manual operation. The power liftgate may open/close unexpectedly depending on its position which could result in injury.

### **NOTE**

- Do not apply unnecessary force to the power liftgate when it is opening/closing electrically. Unnecessary force on the liftgate may cause it to reverse direction of movement automatically. Also, it could result in a malfunction.
- The power liftgate may not open/close electrically if the vehicle is parked on an incline, or there is strong wind, or the liftgate is laden with snow.
- If a power liftgate system fuse has blown, the liftgate cannot be opened using the power liftgate switch or the electric liftgate opener. Use the emergency lever to open the liftgate.
- Fully close the power liftgate before disconnecting the vehicle battery. If the battery is disconnected with the liftgate open, it cannot be opened or closed automatically after the battery is reconnected. If this happens, fully close the liftgate manually to restore the auto full open/close function.
- If the system detects weight such as that caused by a snow-laden liftgate when it is opened electrically, after the beep activates three times, the liftgate stops after reversing.
- If the power liftgate is snow-laden, remove the snow before operating the liftgate.

### **Operation using the transmitter**

Press the power liftgate button for one second or longer. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes after the beep sounds.

Refer to Transmitter on page 3-4.

**NOTE**

- When the ignition is switched ON, the transmitter does not operate.
- When opening the liftgate by pressing the power liftgate button on the transmitter, the liftgate can be opened even when it is locked.
- If the power liftgate button on the transmitter is pressed while the liftgate is opening/closing electrically, the beep is activated and the liftgate stops. When pressing the power liftgate button again, the liftgate moves in the reverse direction.

**Operation using each switch****Operation conditions****Opening the liftgate**

If the vehicle has satisfied all the following operation conditions, the power liftgate can be opened using the power function.

- All doors and the liftgate are unlocked.
- The ignition is switched OFF, or the selector lever is in P with the ignition switched ON.

**Closing the liftgate**

- The ignition is switched OFF, or the selector lever is in P with the ignition switched ON.

**NOTE**

- If the vehicle moves with the selector lever shifted to a position other than P while the liftgate is opening/closing electrically, the liftgate moves as follows:

**While opening electrically**

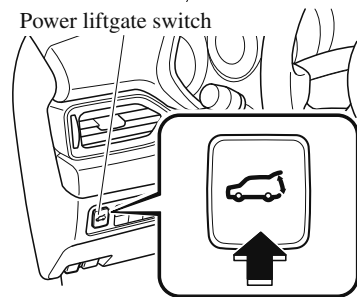
The buzzer is activated, and the liftgate moves in the reverse direction automatically and closes. When the selector lever is shifted to P, you can resume the power liftgate operation using the switches.

**While closing electrically**

The buzzer is activated, but the liftgate continues closing.

**Operation from the driver's seat (To open/close)**

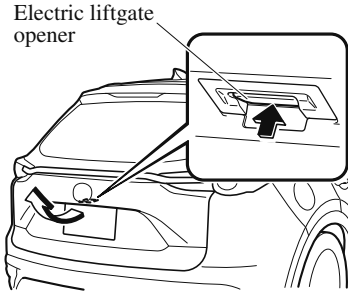
Press the power liftgate switch for about one second or longer while the liftgate is in the fully closed/open position. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes fully after the beep sound is heard.

**Operation from outside (To open)**

Press the electric liftgate opener on the liftgate and raise the liftgate. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens automatically after the beep sound is heard.

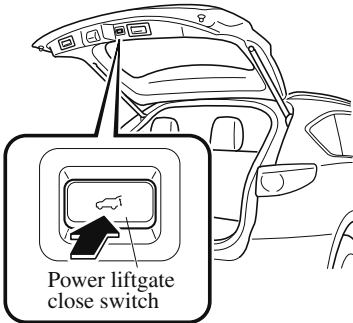
## Doors and Locks

A locked liftgate can also be opened while the key is being carried.



### Operation from outside (To close)

Press the power liftgate close switch while the liftgate is fully opened. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate closes automatically after the beep sound is heard.



### NOTE

If the power liftgate switch/power liftgate close switch is pressed or the electric liftgate opener is operated while the liftgate is opening/closing electrically, the beep sound is heard and the liftgate stops. Then, it reverses when any of the switches are pressed again.

### Changing the power liftgate fully open position

The power liftgate fully-open position can be changed according to the height of a garage.

### When changing the position

1. Stop the liftgate at the desired position.
2. Press the power liftgate close switch for about three seconds.  
A beep sound is activated two times to indicate that the position change has been completed.

### NOTE

Set the desired fully-open position of the liftgate at the position where it is open more than halfway. The position where it is less than halfway open cannot be set.

### To reset

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Press the power liftgate close switch for about seven seconds.  
A beep sound is activated three times to indicate that the reset has been completed.

### NOTE

After about 3 seconds have elapsed since the switch was pressed, a beep sound is activated 2 times to indicate that the liftgate fully-open position has changed. Continuously press the switch for about 7 seconds to complete the reset.

### Jam-safe equipment

While the power liftgate is opening/closing electrically and the system detects a person or an object in the liftgate's path, the liftgate will move in the reverse direction automatically and stops.



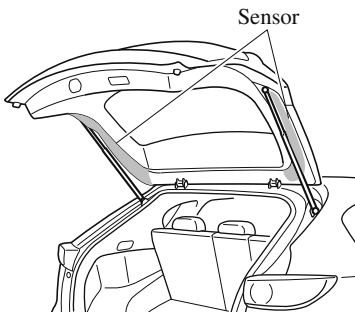
## **! WARNING**

### **Always check the area around the power liftgate before opening/closing it:**

Not checking for occupants and objects around the power liftgate before opening/closing it is dangerous. The jam-safe equipment is designed to prevent jamming in the event an obstruction is in the liftgate's path. The system may not detect certain objects obstructing the liftgate depending on the way they are positioned and their shape. However, if the jam-safe function detects an obstruction and moves the liftgate in the reverse direction, an occupant in the liftgate's path could be seriously injured.

## **! CAUTION**

Sensors are installed on both ends of the power liftgate. Be careful not to allow the sensors to be scratched or damaged by sharp objects, otherwise the liftgate may no longer open/close automatically. In addition, if the sensor is damaged while the liftgate is closing automatically, the system will stop.



## **NOTE**

The jam-safe equipment does not activate during easy closure operation when the power liftgate is between the near-shut position and fully closed position.

When the power liftgate is moving in the open/close direction and an obstruction is detected, the beep sound will be heard and the liftgate moves in the reverse direction and stops.

### **Liftgate easy closure**

The Easy Closure system automatically closes the liftgate completely from the near-shut position.

This system also operates when the liftgate is closed manually.

## **! WARNING**

### **When closing a liftgate, always keep hands and fingers away from the liftgate:**

Placing hands or fingers around a liftgate is dangerous because the liftgate closes automatically from the near-shut position, which could cause hands and fingers to be pinched and injured.

## **NOTE**

- If the electric liftgate opener is pressed while the easy closure function is operating, the liftgate can be opened.
- If the liftgate is opened/closed repeatedly in a short period of time, the easy closure function may not operate. Wait for about 2 seconds and then try again.

**Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions****▼ Fuel Requirements (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

Vehicles with catalytic converters or oxygen sensors must use **ONLY UNLEADED FUEL**, which will reduce exhaust emissions and keep spark plug fouling to a minimum.

To achieve maximum engine performance, use the specified fuel.

Fuel	Research Octane Number	Country
Premium unleaded fuel (within E20)	95 or above	Thailand
Regular unleaded fuel	92 or above	Myanmar
	90 or above	Indonesia, The Philippines, Cambodia, Laos

Fuel with a lower rating will negatively affect the emission control system performance and could also cause engine knocking and serious engine damage.

**⚠ CAUTION****➤ USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.**

*Leaded fuel is harmful to the catalytic converter and oxygen sensors and will lead to deterioration of the emission control system and or failures.*

**➤ Never add fuel system additives, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.****▼ Deposit Cleaner**

To get the best performance out of our newest-technology SKYACTIV petrol engine on vehicles driven in the following countries and regions, periodic cleaning of deposits adhering to the fuel related system, such as the fuel injectors, is required using a Mazda genuine deposit cleaner.

Target countries: Brunei, Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Philippines, Thailand, Vietnam

**⚠ CAUTION****➤ Periodically use Mazda genuine deposit cleaner.**

*If the deposit cleaner is not periodically used, the malfunction indicator light may turn on to indicate an engine malfunction, and if the vehicle continues to be driven under this condition, it could result in problems occurring such as idling failure and poor acceleration.*

- *The Mazda genuine deposit cleaner is not a guarantee of engine performance no matter the quality of the fuel used.  
If a problem occurs even though the specified fuel is used and the Mazda genuine deposit cleaner is used according to the instructions, consult an Authorised Mazda Dealer.*
- *If a deposit cleaner other than the Mazda genuine product is used, it could result in damage to the fuel system or the engine internally; therefore use only the Mazda genuine product.  
Mazda genuine deposit cleaner: K002 W0 001*
- *If periodic cleaning is not done using the Mazda genuine deposit cleaner, repair cost for engine malfunctions occurring from deposits are borne by the customer.*

### **How to use the cleaner**

With the fuel tank full, infuse 1 bottle of Mazda genuine deposit cleaner directly into the fuel tank.

#### **NOTE**

- *Infusing the deposit cleaner when the fuel tank is full provides the appropriate concentration of cleaner, and by the fuel including the cleaner contacting the deposits for a long period of time, the best cleaning results can be obtained.*
- *If the deposit cleaner is infused when the fuel tank is not full, get a full tank of fuel as soon as possible. Refer to the scheduled maintenance (Page 6-3) for when to add the deposit cleaner.*

### **▼ Fuel Requirements (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

The vehicle will operate efficiently on diesel fuel with specification EN590 or the equivalent.



- *Never use fuel other than specification EN590 or the equivalent for your vehicle. Use of petrol or paraffin in diesel engines will result in engine damage.*
- *Never add fuel system additives. Otherwise, the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.*

#### **NOTE**

*When refuelling, always add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.*

### **▼ Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.

## Fuel and Emission

---

### **WARNING**

**Never park over or near anything flammable:**

*Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.*

### **CAUTION**

*Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.*

- *USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.*
- *Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.*
- *Do not coast with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.*
- *Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.*
- *Do not push-start or pull-start this vehicle.*

### ▼ **Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.

### **WARNING**

**Never park over or near anything flammable:**

*Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.*

### **CAUTION**

*Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.*

- *Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.*

- *Do not coast with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.*
- *Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.*
- *Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.*
- *Do not push-start or pull-start this vehicle.*

## ▼ Engine Exhaust (Carbon monoxide)



### **Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle:**

*Engine exhaust gas is dangerous. This gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is colourless, odourless, and poisonous. When inhaled, it can cause loss of consciousness and death. If you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, keep all windows fully open and contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer immediately.*

### **Do not run the engine when inside an enclosed area:**

*Running the engine inside an enclosed area, such as a garage, is dangerous. Exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could easily enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.*

### **Open the windows or adjust the heating or cooling system to draw fresh air when idling the engine:**

*Exhaust gas is dangerous. When the vehicle is stopped with the windows closed and the engine running for a long time even in an open area, exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.*

### **Clear snow from underneath and around your vehicle, particularly the tail pipe, before starting the engine:**

*Running the engine when a vehicle is stopped in deep snow is dangerous. The exhaust pipe could be blocked by the snow, allowing exhaust gas to enter the cabin. Because exhaust gas contains poisonous carbon monoxide, it could cause loss of consciousness or even death to occupants in the cabin.*

# Fuel and Emission

## Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap

### **! WARNING**

**When removing the fuel-filler cap, loosen the cap slightly and wait for any hissing to stop, then remove it:**

Fuel spray is dangerous. Fuel can burn skin and eyes and cause illness if ingested. Fuel spray is released when there is pressure in the fuel tank and the fuel-filler cap is removed too quickly.

**Before refuelling, stop the engine, and always keep sparks and flames away from the filler neck:**

Fuel vapour is dangerous. It could be ignited by sparks or flames causing serious burns and injuries.

Additionally, use of the incorrect fuel-filler cap or not using a fuel-filler cap may result in a fuel leak, which could result in serious burns or death in an accident.

**Do not continue refuelling after the fuel pump nozzle shuts off automatically:**

Continuing to add fuel after the fuel pump nozzle has shut off automatically is dangerous because overfilling the fuel tank may cause fuel overflow or leakage. Fuel overflow and leakage could damage the vehicle and if the fuel ignites it could cause a fire and explosion resulting in serious injury or death.

### **! CAUTION**

Always use only a designated Mazda fuel-filler cap or an approved equivalent, available at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The wrong cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel and emission control systems.

### ▼ Refuelling

Before refuelling, close all the doors, windows, and the liftgate, and switch the ignition OFF.

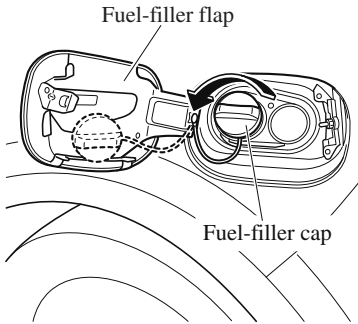
1. To open the fuel-filler flap, pull the remote fuel-filler flap release.



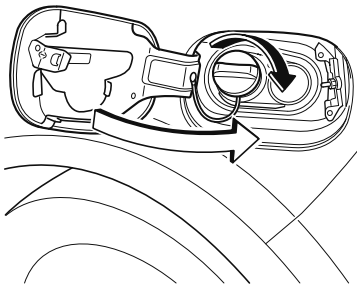
Remote fuel-filler flap release

2. To remove the fuel-filler cap, turn it anticlockwise.

3. Attach the removed cap to the inner side of the fuel-filler flap.



4. Insert the refuelling nozzle all the way and begin refuelling. Pull out the refuelling nozzle after the refuelling stops automatically.
5. To close the fuel-filler cap, turn it clockwise until a click is heard.
6. To close, press the fuel-filler flap until it locks securely.



## Mirrors

Before driving, adjust the inside and outside mirrors.

### ▼ Outside Mirrors

#### **! WARNING**

**Be sure to look over your shoulder before changing lanes:**

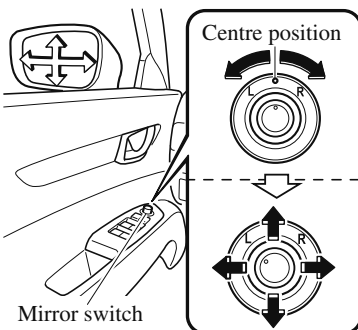
Changing lanes without taking into account the actual distance of the vehicle in the convex mirror is dangerous. You could have a serious accident. What you see in the convex mirror is closer than it appears.

#### Power mirror adjustment

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

To adjust:

1. Rotate the mirror switch to the left L or right R to choose the left or right side mirror.
2. Press the mirror switch in the appropriate direction.



After adjusting the mirror, lock the control by rotating the switch to the centre position.

#### Folding outside mirror

#### **! WARNING**

**Always return the outside mirrors to the driving position before you start driving:** Driving with the outside mirrors folded in is dangerous. Your rear view will be restricted, and you could have an accident.

**Do not touch a power folding outside mirror while it is moving:**

Touching the power folding outside mirror when it is moving is dangerous. Your hand could be pinched and injured or the mirror could be damaged.

**Use the switch to set the mirror to the on-road position:**

Setting the power folding outside mirror to the on-road position by hand is dangerous. The mirror will not lock in position and will prevent effective rearview visibility.

**Only operate the power folding outside mirror with the vehicle safely parked:**

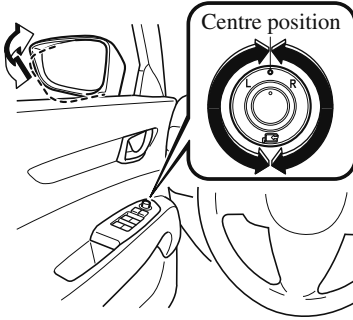
Operating the power folding outside mirror while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Wind blast on the mirror will cause them to collapse and you will be unable to return it to the on-road position, preventing rearview visibility.

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

To fold, rotate the outside mirror switch.



To return the mirror to the driving position, rotate the switch to the centre position.



### Engine-off outside mirror operation

The outside mirrors can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to off.

#### ▼ Rearview Mirror

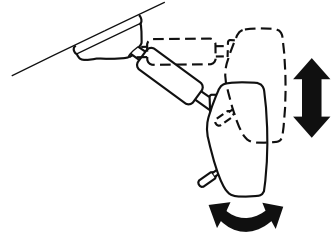
### **! WARNING**

#### ***Do not stack cargo or objects higher than the seatbacks:***

*Cargo stacked higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. It can block your view in the rearview mirror, which might cause you to hit another car when changing lanes.*

### Rearview mirror adjustment

Before driving, adjust the rearview mirror to centre on the scene through the rear window.

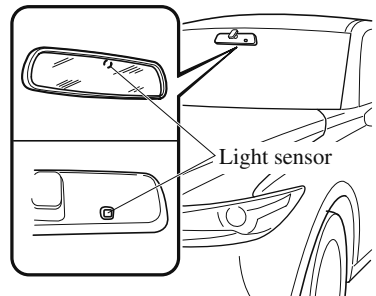


### Reducing glare from headlights

The auto-dimming mirror automatically reduces the glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear when the ignition is switched ON.

#### **NOTE**

- *Do not use glass cleaner or suspend objects on or around the light sensor. Otherwise, light sensor sensitivity will be affected and may not operate normally.*



- *The auto-dimming function is cancelled when the ignition is switched ON and the selector lever is in the R position.*

## Power Windows

The windows can be opened/closed by operating the power window switches.



***Make sure the opening is clear before closing a window:***

*Closing a power window is dangerous. A person's hands, head, or even neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury or even death. This warning applies especially to children.*

***Never allow children to play with power window switches:***

*Power window switches that are not locked with the power window lock switch would allow children to operate power windows unintentionally, which could result in serious injury if a child's hands, head or neck becomes caught by the window.*

***Make sure nothing blocks the window just before it reaches the fully closed position or while fully holding up the power window switch:***

*Blocking the power window just before it reaches the fully closed position or while fully holding up the power window switch is dangerous.*

*In this case, the jam-safe function cannot prevent the window from closing all the way. If fingers are caught, serious injuries could occur.*

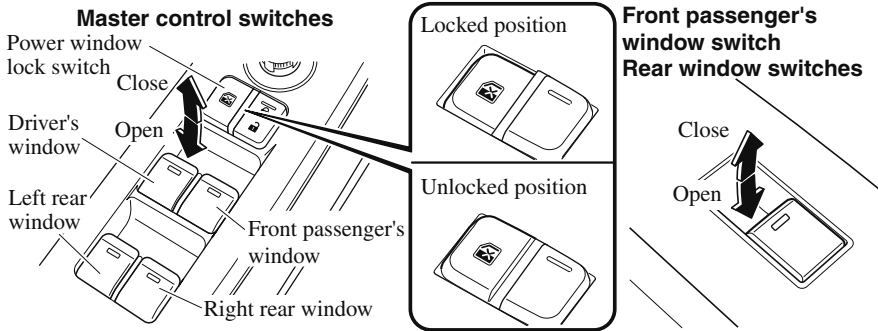
***NOTE***

*When driving with only 1 of the rear windows open, your ears might experience a resonating sound. However, this does not indicate a problem. The sound can be reduced by slightly opening a front window or by changing the size of the rear window opening.*

**▼ Opening/Closing Windows**

The window opens while the switch is pressed and it closes while the switch is pulled up with the ignition switched ON. Do not open or close 3 or more windows at the same time.

The front passenger's side and rear windows can be opened/closed when the power window lock switch on the driver's door is in the unlock position. Keep this switch in the locked position while children are in the vehicle.



**NOTE**

- A power window may no longer open/close if you continue to press the switch after fully opening/closing the power window. If the power window does not open/close, wait a moment and then operate the switch again.
  - The passenger windows may be opened or closed using the master control switches on the driver's door.
  - The power window can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to ACC or off with all doors closed. If any door is opened, the power window will stop operating.
- For engine-off operation of the power window, the switch must be held up firmly throughout window closure because the auto-closing function will be inoperable.*
- When the power window lock switch is in the locked position, the light on each power window switch, except for the driver's power window switch, turns off. The light may be difficult to see depending on the surrounding brightness.

▼ **Auto-opening/Closing**

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch completely down, then release. The window will fully open automatically.  
To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch completely up, then

release. The window will fully close automatically.

To stop the window partway, pull or press the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

**NOTE**  
**Power window system initialization procedure**

# Windows

---

*If the battery was disconnected during vehicle maintenance, or for other reasons (such as a switch continues to be operated after the window is fully open/closed), the window will not fully open and close automatically.*

*The power window auto function will only resume on a power window that has been reset.*

- 1. Switch the ignition ON.*
- 2. Make sure that the power window lock switch located on the driver's door is not depressed.*
- 3. Press the switch and fully open the window.*
- 4. Pull up the switch to fully close the window and continue holding the switch for about 2 seconds after the window fully closed.*
- 5. Make sure that the power windows operate correctly using the door switches.*

## ▼ Jam-safe Window

If foreign matter is detected between the window and the window frame while the window is closing automatically (refer to Auto-opening/Closing on page 3-31), the window stops closing and automatically opens partway.

### **NOTE**

- The jam-safe function may operate under the following conditions:*
  - A strong impact is detected while the window is closing automatically.*
  - Window is closing automatically in very low temperatures.*

- In the event the jam-safe function activates and the power window cannot be closed automatically, pull and hold the switch and the window will close.*
- The jam-safe window function does not operate until the system has been reset.*

## Modification and Add-On Equipment

Mazda cannot guarantee the immobilizer and the theft-deterrent systems' operation if the system has been modified or if any add-on equipment has been installed.

### CAUTION

*To avoid damage to the vehicle, do not modify the system or install any add-on equipment to the immobilizer and the theft-deterrent systems or the vehicle.*

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system allows the engine to start only with a key the system recognises.

If someone attempts to start the engine with an unrecognised key, the engine will not start, thereby helping to prevent vehicle theft.

If you have a problem with the immobilizer system or the key, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### CAUTION

- *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*
- *To avoid damage to the key, do not:*
  - *Drop the key.*
  - *Get the key wet.*
  - *Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.*
  - *Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.*
- *If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

### NOTE

- *The keys carry a unique electronic code. For this reason, and to assure your safety, obtaining a replacement key requires some waiting time. They are only available through an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

# Security System

---

- Always keep a spare key in case one is lost. If a key is lost, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
- If you lose a key, an Authorised Mazda Repairer will reset the electronic codes of your remaining keys and immobilizer system. Bring all the remaining keys to an Authorised Mazda Repairer to reset. Starting the vehicle with a key that has not been reset is not possible.

## ▼ Operation

### NOTE

- The engine may not start and security indicator light may illuminate or flash if the key is placed in an area where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal, such as on the instrument panel or in the glove compartment. Move the key to a location within the signal range, switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine.
- Signals from a TV or radio station, or from a transceiver or mobile telephone could interfere with your immobilizer system. If you are using the proper key and the engine fails to start, check the security indicator light.

## Arming

The system is armed when the ignition is switched from ON to off.

The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes every 2 seconds until the system is disarmed.



## Disarming

The system is disarmed when the ignition is switched ON with the correct programmed key. The security indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then turns off. If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following:

Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission. Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### NOTE

- If the security indicator light flashes continuously while you are driving, do not shut off the engine. Go to an Authorised Mazda Repairer and have it checked. If the engine is shut off while the indicator light is flashing, you will not be able to restart it.
- Because the electronic codes are reset when the immobilizer system is repaired, the keys are needed. Make sure to bring all the keys to an Authorised Mazda Repairer so that they can be programmed.

## Theft-Deterrent System

If the theft-deterrent system detects an inappropriate entry into the vehicle, which could result in the vehicle or its contents being stolen, the alarm alerts the surrounding area of an abnormality by sounding the horn and flashing the hazard warning lights.

The system will not function unless it's properly armed. So when you leave the vehicle, follow the arming procedure correctly.

### ▼ Operation

#### System triggering conditions

The horn sounds intermittently and the hazard warning lights flash for about 30 seconds when the system is triggered by any one of the following:

- Unlocking a door with the auxiliary key, door lock switch, or an inside door-lock knob.
- Forcing open a door, the bonnet or the liftgate.
- Opening the bonnet by operating the bonnet release handle.
- Switching the ignition ON without using the push button start.

If the system is triggered again, the lights and horn will activate until the driver's door or the liftgate is unlocked with the transmitter.

The lights and horn can also be deactivated by pressing the request switch on a door.

### NOTE

- The liftgate does not open while the theft-deterrent system is operating.
- For vehicles equipped with the power liftgate, the liftgate can be opened even while the theft-deterrent system is operating by pressing the power liftgate button on the transmitter or the electric liftgate opener switch while carrying the key.
- If the battery goes dead while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the horn will activate and the hazard warning lights will flash when the battery is charged or replaced.

### ▼ How to Arm the System

1. Close the windows securely.
2. Switch the ignition OFF.
3. Make sure the bonnet, the doors, and the liftgate are closed.
4. Press the lock button on the transmitter, request switch or lock the driver's door from the outside with the auxiliary key.  
The hazard warning lights will flash once.

The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes twice per second for 20 seconds.



5. After 20 seconds, the system is fully armed.

## Security System

---

### **NOTE**

· *The theft-deterrent system can also be armed by activating the auto relock function with all the doors, the liftgate and the bonnet closed.*

*Refer to Transmitter on page 3-4.*

· *The system will disarm if one of the following operations takes place within 20 seconds after pressing the lock button:*

- *Unlocking any door.*
- *Opening any door.*
- *Opening the bonnet.*
- *Switching the ignition ON.*

*To rearm the system, do the arming procedure again.*

· *When the doors are locked by pressing the lock button on the transmitter or using the auxiliary key while the theft-deterrent system is armed, the hazard warning lights will flash once to indicate that the system is armed.*

### **▼ To Turn Off an Armed System**

An armed system can be turned off using any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.
- Starting the engine with the push button start.
- Pressing a request switch on the doors.

The hazard warning lights will flash twice.

### **NOTE**

*When the doors are unlocked by pressing the unlock button on the transmitter while the theft-deterrent system is turned off, the hazard warning lights will flash twice to indicate that the system is turned off.*

### **▼ To Stop the Alarm**

A triggered alarm can be turned off using any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the transmitter.
- Starting the engine with the push button start.
- Pressing a request switch on the doors.
- Pressing the electric liftgate opener while the key is being carried.
- Pressing the power liftgate button on the transmitter.

The hazard warning lights will flash twice.



## Running-In

No special running-in is necessary, but a few precautions in the first 1,000 km (600 miles) may add to the performance, economy, and life of the vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Do not maintain one constant speed, either slow or fast, for a long period of time.
- Do not drive constantly at full-throttle or high engine rpm for extended periods of time.
- Avoid unnecessary hard stops.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not tow a trailer.

## Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment

How you operate your Mazda determines how far it will travel on a tank of fuel. Use these suggestions to help save fuel and reduce CO<sub>2</sub>.

- Avoid long warm-ups. Once the engine runs smoothly, begin driving.
- Avoid fast starts.
- Drive at lower speeds.
- Anticipate when to apply the brakes (avoid sudden braking).
- Follow the maintenance schedule (page 6-3) and have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform inspections and servicing.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Slow down on rough roads.
- Keep the tyres properly inflated.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Keep the wheels in correct alignment.
- Keep windows closed at high speeds.
- Slow down when driving in crosswinds and headwinds.

### WARNING

***Never stop the engine when going down a hill:***

*Stopping the engine when going down a hill is dangerous. This causes the loss of power steering and power brake control, and may cause damage to the drivetrain. Any loss of steering or braking control could cause an accident.*

## Hazardous Driving

### WARNING

**Be extremely careful if it is necessary to downshift on slippery surfaces:**

*Downshifting into lower gear while driving on slippery surfaces is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.*

**Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvres when driving this vehicle:**

*Sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvring of this vehicle are dangerous as it could result in the increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle roll-over, personal injury or death.*

*This vehicle has a higher centre of gravity. Vehicles with a higher centre of gravity such as utility vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower centre of gravity. Utility vehicles are not designed for cornering at high speeds any more than low profile sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.*

*In addition, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.*

*In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.*

When driving on ice or in water, snow, mud, sand, or similar hazards:

- Be cautious and allow extra distance for braking.

- Avoid sudden braking and sudden manoeuvring.
- Do not pump the brakes. Continue to press down on the brake pedal. Refer to Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-66.
- If you get stuck, select a lower gear and accelerate slowly. Do not spin the front wheels.
- For more traction in starting on slippery surfaces such as ice or packed snow, use sand, rock salt, chains, carpeting, or other nonslip material under the front wheels.

**NOTE**

*Use snow chains only on the front wheels.*

## Floor Mat

We recommend the use of Genuine Mazda floor mats.

### **! WARNING**

***Make sure the floor mats are secured with the grommets or the retainers to prevent them from bunching up under the foot pedals (Driver's side):***

*Using a floor mat that is not secured is dangerous as it will interfere with the accelerator and brake pedal operation (driver's side), which could result in an accident.*

*Only use a floor mat which conforms to the shape of the floor on the driver's side and make sure it is oriented correctly.*

*Secure the floor mat using the grommets or retainers.*

*There are various ways to secure floor mats depending on the type used, therefore secure the mat according to the type.*

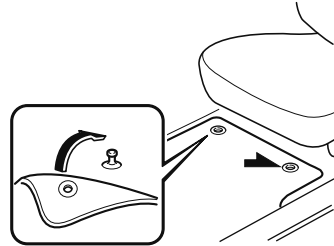
*After installing the floor mat, make sure that it does not slide from side to side or back and forth, and that there is sufficient clearance with the accelerator and brake pedals on the driver's side.*

*After removing the floor mat for cleaning or some other reason, always securely reinstall it while paying attention to the precautions just mentioned.*

***Do not install two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side:***

*Installing two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side is dangerous as the retention pins can only keep one floor mat from sliding forward.*

*Loose floor mat(s) will interfere with the foot pedals and could result in an accident. If using an all-weather mat for winter use always remove the original floor mat.*



When setting a floor mat, position the floor mat so that its grommets or retainers are inserted over the pointed end of the retention posts.

## Rocking the Vehicle

### **WARNING**

***Do not spin the wheels at high speed, and do not allow anyone to stand behind a wheel when pushing the vehicle:***

*When the vehicle is stuck, spinning the wheels at high speed is dangerous. The spinning tyre could overheat and explode. This could cause serious injuries.*

### **CAUTION**

*Too much rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle failure, and tyre damage.*

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand or mud, depress the accelerator slightly and slowly move the selector lever from D to R position.

## Winter Driving

Carry emergency gear, including tyre chains, window scraper, flares, a small shovel, jumper leads, and a small bag of sand or salt.

Ask an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to check the following:

- Have the proper ratio of antifreeze in the radiator.  
Refer to Engine Coolant on page 6-17.
- Inspect the battery and its leads. Cold reduces battery capacity.
- Use an engine oil appropriate for the lowest ambient temperatures that the vehicle will be driven in (page 6-14).
- Inspect the ignition system for damage and loose connections.
- Use washer fluid made with antifreeze—but do not use engine coolant antifreeze for washer fluid (page 6-20).

### **NOTE**

- *Remove snow before driving. Snow left on the windscreen is dangerous as it could obstruct vision.*
- *Do not apply excessive force to a window scraper when removing ice or frozen snow on the mirror glass and windscreen.*
- *Never use warm or hot water for removing snow or ice from windows and mirrors as it could result in the glass cracking.*

· Drive slowly. Braking performance can be adversely affected if snow or ice adheres to the brake components. If this situation occurs, drive the vehicle slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal.

### ▼ Snow Tyres



**Use only the same size and type tyres (snow, radial, or non-radial) on all 4 wheels:**

Using tyres different in size or type is dangerous. Your vehicle's handling could be greatly affected and result in an accident.



Check local regulations before using studded tyres.

### Use snow tyres on all 4 wheels

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed for your snow tyres or legal speed limits.

### ▼ Tyre Chains

Check local regulations before using tyre chains.



- Chains may affect handling.
- Do not go faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended limit, whichever is lower.

- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, and sharp turns.
- Avoid locked-wheel braking.
- Do not use chains on a temporary spare tyre; it may result in damage to the vehicle and to the tyre.
- Do not use chains on roads that are free of snow or ice. The tyres and chains could be damaged.
- Chains may scratch or chip aluminium wheels.

Install the chains on the front tyres only. Do not use chains on the rear tyres. Please consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### Installing the chains

1. Secure the chains on the front tyres as tightly as possible. Always follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
2. Retighten the chains after driving 1/2—1 km (1/4—1/2 mile).

## Driving Tips

---

### Driving In Flooded Area

#### **WARNING**

***Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:***

*Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.*

#### **CAUTION**

*Do not drive the vehicle on flooded roads as it could cause short circuiting of electrical/electronic parts, or engine damage or stalling from water absorption. If the vehicle has been immersed in water, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

## Turbocharger Information (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

### CAUTION

- *After driving at freeway speeds or up a long hill, idle the engine at least 30 seconds before stopping it. Otherwise, the turbocharger could be damaged. However, when i-stop operates, idling is unnecessary.*
- *Racing or over-revving the engine, particularly after it's just been started, can damage the turbocharger.*
- *To protect the engine from damage, the engine is designed so that it cannot be raced just after starting it in extremely cold weather.*

The turbocharger greatly enhances engine power. Its advanced design provides improved operation and requires minimum maintenance.

To get the most from it, observe the following.

1. Change engine oil and filter according to Scheduled Maintenance (page 6-3).
2. Use only recommended engine oil (page 6-14). Extra additives are NOT recommended.

## Towing Caravans and Trailers

Your Mazda is not designed for towing.  
Never tow a trailer with your Mazda.



# 4

## When Driving

Information concerning safe driving and stopping.

<b>Start/Stop Engine.....</b>	<b>4-4</b>	<b>Brake.....</b>	<b>4-56</b>
Ignition Switch.....	4-4	Brake System.....	4-56
Starting the Engine.....	4-5	AUTOHOLD.....	4-60
Turning the Engine Off.....	4-10	Emergency Stop Signal	
i-stop*.....	4-11	System.....	4-64
<b>Instrument Cluster and Display .....</b>	<b>4-18</b>	Hill Launch Assist (HLA).....	4-65
.....	<b>4-18</b>	<b>ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist</b>	
Meters and Gauges.....	4-18	<b>(TSA).....</b>	<b>4-66</b>
Multi-information Display.....	4-20	Antilock Brake System	
Active Driving Display*.....	4-27	(ABS).....	4-66
Warning/Indicator Lights.....	4-29	Traction Control System	
<b>Automatic Transaxle.....</b>	<b>4-36</b>	(TCS).....	4-67
Automatic Transaxle		Dynamic Stability Control	
Controls.....	4-36	(DSC).....	4-69
Shift-Lock System.....	4-37	Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)....	4-70
Transaxle Ranges.....	4-38	<b>Fuel Economy Monitor.....</b>	<b>4-71</b>
Manual Shift Mode.....	4-40	Fuel Economy Monitor.....	4-71
Driving Tips.....	4-43	<b>Drive Selection.....</b>	<b>4-74</b>
<b>Switches and Controls.....</b>	<b>4-44</b>	Drive Selection*.....	4-74
Lighting Control.....	4-44	<b>i-ACTIV AWD.....</b>	<b>4-75</b>
Fog Lights*.....	4-48	i-ACTIV AWD Operation*.....	4-75
Turn and Lane-Change		<b>Power Steering.....</b>	<b>4-77</b>
Signals.....	4-49	Power Steering.....	4-77
Windscreen Wipers and			
Washer.....	4-50		
Rear Window Wiper and			
Washer.....	4-53		
Rear Window Defogger.....	4-53		
Horn.....	4-54		
Hazard Warning Flasher.....	4-55		

<b>i-ACTIVSENSE</b> .....	<b>4-78</b>
i-ACTIVSENSE.....	4-78
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)*.....	4-81
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*.....	4-81
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)* .....	4-84
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)*.....	4-89
Driver Attention Alert (DAA)* .....	4-93
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)* .....	4-95
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)*.....	4-99
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)* .....	4-110
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)*.....	4-121
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)* .....	4-124
Smart Brake Support (SBS)* ....	4-128
360° View Monitor* .....	4-130
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)* .....	4-157
Radar Sensor (Front)*.....	4-162
Radar Sensors (Rear)*.....	4-165
Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)* .....	4-167
Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera.....	4-168

<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	<b>4-169</b>
Cruise Control* .....	4-169
<b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> .....	<b>4-173</b>
Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D 2.2).....	4-173
<b>Rear View Monitor</b> .....	<b>4-174</b>
Rear View Monitor*.....	4-174
<b>Parking Sensor System</b> .....	<b>4-182</b>
Parking Sensor System* .....	4-182

# MEMO

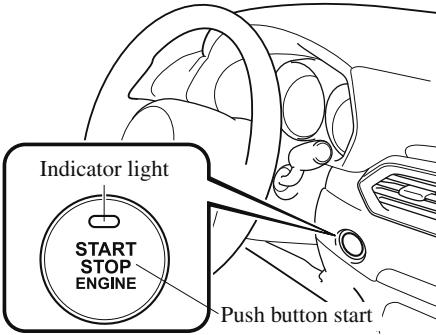
# Start/Stop Engine

## Ignition Switch

### ▼ Push Button Start Positions

The system operates only when the key is within operational range.

Each time the push button start is pressed, the ignition switches in the order of off, ACC, and ON. Pressing the push button start again from ON switches the ignition off.



### NOTE

- The engine starts by pressing the push button start while depressing the brake pedal. To switch the ignition position, press the push button start without depressing the pedal.
- Do not leave the ignition switched ON while the engine is not running. Doing so could result in the battery going dead. If the selector lever is in the P position, and the ignition is in ACC, the ignition switches off automatically after about 25 minutes.

### Off

The power supply to electrical devices turns off and the push button start indicator light (amber) also turns off.

In this position the steering wheel is locked.

### WARNING

**Before leaving the driver's seat, always switch the ignition off, set the parking brake, and make sure the selector lever is in P position:**

Leaving the driver's seat without switching the ignition off, setting the parking brake, and shifting the selector lever to P position is dangerous. Unexpected vehicle movement could occur which could result in an accident.

In addition, if your intention is to leave the vehicle for even a short period, it is important to switch the ignition off, as leaving it in another position will disable some of the vehicle's security systems and run the battery down.

### NOTE

#### **(Locked steering wheel)**

If the push button start indicator light (green) is flashing and the beep sound is heard, this indicates that the steering wheel is not unlocked. To unlock the steering wheel, press the push button start while moving the steering wheel left and right.

#### **ACC (Accessory)**

Some electrical accessories will operate and the indicator light (amber) illuminates. In this position the steering wheel is unlocked.

**NOTE**

*The keyless entry system does not function while the push button start has been pressed to ACC, and the doors will not lock/unlock even if they have been locked manually.*

**ON**

This is the normal running position after the engine is started. The indicator light (amber) turns off. (The indicator light (amber) illuminates when the ignition is switched ON and the engine is not running.)

Some indicator lights/warning lights should be inspected before the engine is started (page 4-29).

**NOTE****(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

*When the push button start is pressed to ON, the sound of the fuel pump motor operating near the fuel tank can be heard. This does not indicate an abnormality.*

## Starting the Engine

### **WARNING**

**Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:**

*Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.*

**NOTE**

- *The key must be carried because the key carries an immobilizer chip that must communicate with the engine controls at short range.*
- *The engine can be started when the push button start is pressed from off, ACC, or ON.*
- *The push button start system functions (function which can start the engine by only carrying the key) can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details. If the push button start system functions have been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead. Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-8.*
- *After starting a cold engine, the engine speed increases and a whining sound from the engine compartment can be heard.*

# Start/Stop Engine

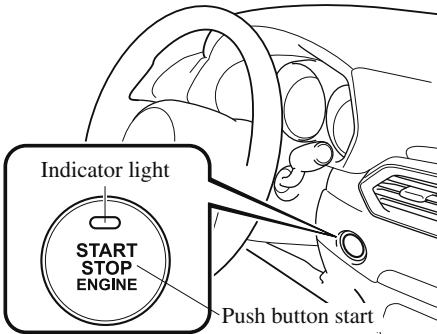
*This is for improved exhaust gas purification and does not indicate any parts defect.*

1. Make sure you are carrying the key.
2. Occupants should fasten their seat belts.
3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Continue to press the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
5. Put the vehicle in park (P). If you must restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift into neutral (N).

### NOTE

*The starter will not operate if the selector lever is not in P or N position and the brake pedal is not depressed sufficiently.*

6. Make sure that the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.



### NOTE

- *If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes, make sure that the key is being carried (page 7-25).*

- *If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes with the key being carried, touch the key to the push button start and start the engine (page 7-25).*

*Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-8.*

### CAUTION

*If the KEY warning indication (amber) is displayed, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate a problem with the engine starting system. This may prevent the engine from starting or from switching the ignition to ACC or ON (page 7-25). Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.*

### NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the KEY warning indication (amber) is displayed after the push button start is pressed. This informs the driver that the push button start will not switch to ACC, even if it is pressed from off (page 7-25).*
  - *The key battery is dead.*
  - *The key is out of operational range.*
  - *The key is placed in areas where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal (page 3-6).*
  - *A key from another manufacturer similar to the key is in the operational range.*
- **(Forced engine starting method)**

If the **KEY** warning indication (amber) is displayed, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method (page 7-25). Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine, such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the brake pedal are required.

- When the engine is force-started, the **KEY** warning indication (amber) remains displayed and the push button start indicator light (amber) remains flashing.
- When the selector lever is in the neutral (N) position, the push button start indicator light (green) does not turn on.

7. Press the push button start after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.

#### **NOTE**

- After starting the engine, the push button start indicator light (amber) turns off and the ignition switches to the ON position.
- **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**  
After pressing the push button start and before the engine starts, the operation sound of the fuel pump motor from near the fuel tank can be heard, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.

#### · **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

- The starter does not rotate until the glow indicator light turns off.



- If the ignition is left switched ON for a long period of time without the engine running after the glow plugs are warmed up, the glow plugs may warm up again which will illuminate the glow indicator light.
  - When starting the engine, do not release the brake pedal until the glow indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the engine starts, after pressing the push button start.
  - If the brake pedal is released before the engine starts, depress the brake pedal again and press the push button start to start the engine.
8. After starting the engine, let it idle for about 10 seconds.

#### **NOTE**

#### · **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

- Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without the use of the accelerator.
- If the engine does not start the first time, refer to Starting a Flooded Engine under Emergency Starting. If the engine still does not start, have your vehicle inspected by an Authorised Mazda Repairer (page 7-15).

# Start/Stop Engine

· (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

*If the ambient temperature is lower than about  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $14^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), the maximum engine speed may not be attained for about 3 minutes after the engine starts to protect the engine.*

## ▼ Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead



When starting the engine by holding the transmitter over the push button start due to a dead key battery or a malfunctioning key, be careful not to allow the following, otherwise the signal from the key will not be received correctly and the engine may not start.

➤ Metal parts of other keys or metal objects touch the key.



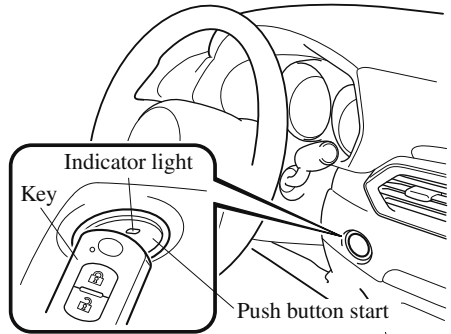
➤ Spare keys or keys for other vehicles equipped with an immobilizer system touch or come near the key.



➤ Devices for electronic purchases, or security passage touch or come near the key.

If the engine cannot be started due to a dead key battery, the engine can be started using the following procedure:

1. Continue to depress the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
2. Make sure that the push button start indication light (green) flashes.
3. Touch the push button start using the backside of the key (as shown) while the push button start indicator light (green) flashes.



### NOTE

*When touching the push button start using the backside of the key as shown in the illustration, touch the push button start with the lock switch side of the key facing up.*

4. Make sure that the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.
5. Press the push button start to start the engine.

### NOTE

· *The engine cannot be started unless the brake pedal is fully depressed.*



- *If there is a malfunction with the push button start function, the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes. In this case, the engine may start, however, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer; we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.*
- *If the push button start indicator light (green) does not illuminate, perform the operation from the beginning again. If it does not illuminate, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer; we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
- *To switch the ignition position without starting the engine, perform the following operations after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.*
  1. *Release the brake pedal.*
  2. *Press the push button start to switch the ignition position. The ignition switches in the order of ACC, ON, and off each time the push button start is pressed. To switch the ignition position again, perform the operation from the beginning.*

### ▼ **Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine**

If the KEY warning indication (amber) is displayed, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method (page 7-25). Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started.

Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the brake pedal are required.

# Start/Stop Engine

---

## Turning the Engine Off

### WARNING

**Do not stop the engine while the vehicle is moving:**

Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving for any reason other than in an emergency is dangerous. Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving will result in reduced braking ability due to the loss of power braking, which could cause an accident and serious injury.

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Shift the selector lever to the P position and set the parking brake.
3. Press the push button start to turn off the engine. The ignition position is off.

### CAUTION

➤ When leaving the vehicle, make sure the push button start is off.

➤ **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

If the engine is started and stopped repeatedly before it warms up, the engine may speed up while the vehicle is stopped to clean the engine internally. Do not stop the engine until the engine returns to running at its normal speed.

### NOTE

· **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

The cooling fan in the engine compartment could turn on for a few minutes after the ignition is switched from ON to OFF, whether or not the A/C is on or off, to cool the engine compartment quickly.

· If the system detects that the remaining battery power of the key is low when the ignition is switched from ON to ACC or OFF, the following is indicated.

Replace with a new battery before the key becomes unusable.

Refer to Key Battery Replacement on page 6-29.

A message is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

Refer to Taking Action on page 7-31.

· If the engine is turned off while the selector lever is in a position other than P, the ignition switches to ACC.

### ▼ Emergency Engine Stop

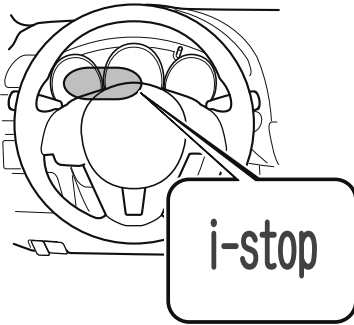
Continuously pressing the push button start or quickly pressing it any number of times while the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven will turn the engine off immediately. The ignition switches to ACC.

**i-stop\***

The i-stop function automatically stops the engine when the vehicle is stopped at a traffic light or stuck in traffic, and then restarts the engine automatically to resume driving. The system provides improved fuel economy, reduced exhaust gas emissions, and eliminates idling noise while the engine is stopped.

**Engine idle stopping and restarting****NOTE**

- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns on under the following conditions:
  - When engine idling is stopped.



- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns off when the engine is restarted.

**(AUTOHOLD operation turned off)**

1. Engine idling stops when the brake pedal is depressed while the vehicle is driven (except for driving in the R or M position second gear fixed mode) and the vehicle is stopped.
2. The engine restarts automatically when the brake pedal is released with the selector lever in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).

3. If the selector lever is in the N or P position, the engine does not restart when the brake pedal is released. The engine restarts when the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode) or the R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

**(AUTOHOLD operation turned on)**

1. When the brake pedal is depressed while the vehicle is being driven (except for driving in the R or M position second gear fixed mode) and the vehicle is brought to a stop, the i-stop function will operate and it continues to operate even if the brake is released.
2. The engine restarts automatically when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D/M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
3. If the selector lever is in the N or P position, the engine does not restart when the brake pedal is released. The engine restarts when the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode) or the R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

**Operation conditions****When the system is operable**

Under the following conditions, the i-stop indicator light (green) turns on and engine idling stops.


## Start/Stop Engine

---

- **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

The engine is warmed up.

- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**


- The engine is not cold.
- The engine has been started and the vehicle is driven for a certain period.
- The engine is started with the bonnet closed.
- The battery is in good condition.
- All doors, liftgate, and bonnet are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The air conditioner is not operating with the airflow mode in the  position.
- The temperature setting dial for the air-conditioning is set to a position other than maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON).
- The vehicle's interior temperature and the set temperature for the air conditioner are nearly the same.
- The i-stop warning light (amber) is not turned on/flashing.
- The keyless entry & push button start system functions are normal.
- The brake vacuum is sufficiently high.
- The steering wheel is not being operated.
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The selector lever is in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
- The automatic transaxle fluid has warmed up sufficiently.
- The automatic transaxle fluid temperature is not abnormally high.
- The steering wheel is almost in the straight-ahead position (idling may not stop even with the steering wheel in the straight-ahead position if force is applied to the steering wheel. Release

the force applied to the steering wheel to stop engine idling).

- The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
- Emergency braking is not applied.

### When the system is not operable

Engine idling does not stop in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped but the engine is kept idling.
- The air conditioner is operating with the airflow mode in the  position.
- The temperature setting dial for the air-conditioning is set to the maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON) position.
- There is a large difference between the cabin temperature and the set temperature of the air conditioner.
- The ambient temperature is extremely high or low.
- The atmospheric pressure is low (when driving at high altitudes).
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The steering wheel is not in the straight-ahead position while the vehicle is stopped.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**
  - The particulate matter (PM) is being removed by the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

### NOTE

***Under the following conditions, a period of time is required to stop engine idling***

- *The battery power is depleted for some reasons such as the vehicle has not been driven for a long period.*


- The ambient temperature is high or low.
- After the battery terminals are disconnected for some reasons such as for battery replacement.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**  
After PM removal is performed by the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

**Engine-stop period is short or time until next engine idle stop is long**

- The ambient temperature is high or low.
- The battery power is depleted.
- Power consumption by the vehicle's electrical parts is high.

**Engine restarts automatically while engine idling is stopped**

Under the following conditions, the engine restarts automatically.

- The i-stop OFF switch is pressed until the beep sounds.
- The air conditioner is operated with the airflow mode in the  position.
- The temperature setting dial of the air conditioner is set to maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON).
- The cabin temperature is largely different from the set temperature of the air conditioner.
- The brakes are released slightly on a slope and the vehicle begins to move.
- Two minutes have elapsed since the idling was stopped.
- The battery power is depleted.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
- The selector lever is shifted to the R position.
- The selector lever is shifted from N or P position to D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.

- The steering wheel is operated with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
- The selector lever is in the M position and the second gear fixed mode is selected.
- With the selector lever in the P or N position, or the D/M range, the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened, or the bonnet is opened.

**Selector lever is operated while engine idling is stopped**

If the selector lever is shifted from D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position to N or P position while engine idling is stopped, the engine does not restart even when the brake pedal is released. The engine will restart if the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode), or R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

If the selector lever is shifted from the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) to the N or P position, and the driver's seat belt is unfastened or the driver's door is opened, the engine restarts.

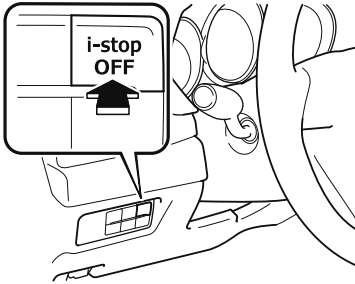
**Battery terminals are disconnected**

Engine idling may not stop right after the battery terminals are disconnected. In addition, if the battery is replaced, the i-stop functions must be verified. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

# Start/Stop Engine

---

## ▼ i-stop OFF Switch



By pressing the switch until a beep sounds, the i-stop function is turned off and the i-stop warning light (amber) in the instrument cluster turns on. By pressing the switch again until the beep sounds, the i-stop function becomes operational and the i-stop warning light (amber) turns off.

### **NOTE**

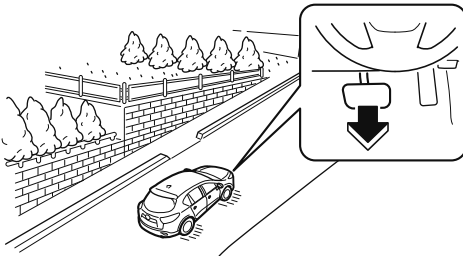
*If the engine is stopped with the i-stop function cancelled, the i-stop function becomes operational when the engine is started the next time.*

### ▼ Vehicle Roll Prevention Function (Automatic transaxle)

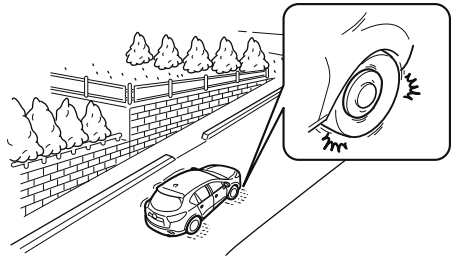
Vehicles with the i-stop function are equipped with a vehicle roll prevention function. This function prevents the vehicle from rolling, such as when releasing the brake pedal while on a slope under the following conditions:

- While engine idling is stopped (prevents the vehicle from rolling back)
- When the engine restarts after releasing the brake pedal (prevents the vehicle's sudden movement due to vehicle creep), sudden movement of the vehicle is prevented by controlling the brakes.

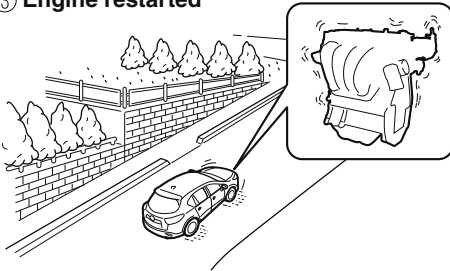
#### ① Release foot from brake pedal



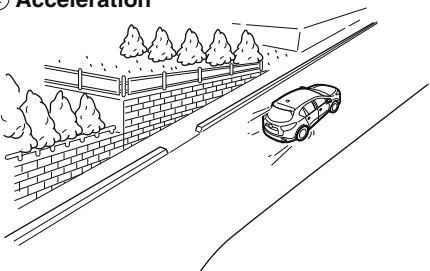
#### ② Vehicle brake force maintained



#### ③ Engine restarted



#### ④ Acceleration



## **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not rely completely on the vehicle roll prevention function.**

- The vehicle roll prevention function is a supplementary function which operates for a maximum of 4 seconds after releasing the brake pedal and accelerating the vehicle from an engine idling stop condition. Over reliance on the system may result in an unexpected accident if the vehicle were to suddenly accelerate. Before starting to drive the vehicle, always confirm the safety of the surroundings and operate the selector lever, brake pedal, and accelerator pedal appropriately. Note that the vehicle may move suddenly depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something.

## Start/Stop Engine

---

- *Note that the vehicle may move suddenly after the vehicle roll prevention function is released while the vehicle is under the following conditions:*
  - *The selector lever is in the N position.*
  - *If the selector lever is shifted to the N position and the brake pedal is released while the i-stop function is operating, the brake force is gradually released. To accelerate the vehicle, release the brake pedal after the engine restarts and shift the selector lever to a position other than the N position.*

### **NOTE**

- *When the vehicle is stopped on a steep grade, the vehicle roll prevention function does not operate because engine idling is not stopped.*
- *The brake pedal response may change, sound may occur from the brakes, or the brake pedal could vibrate from the operation of the vehicle roll prevention function. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

### ▼ **i-stop Warning Light (Amber)/i-stop Indicator Light (Green)**

## i-stop

To ensure safe and comfortable use of the vehicle, the i-stop system constantly monitors the driver's operations, the vehicle's interior and exterior environment, and the operational status of the vehicle, and uses the i-stop warning light (amber) and i-stop indicator light (green) to inform the driver of various cautions and warnings.

### **NOTE**

*On vehicles equipped with the centre display, the i-stop operation status is displayed in the fuel monitor control status display.  
Refer to Control Status Display on page 4-72.*

### **i-stop warning light (amber)**

#### **When the light is turned on**

- The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and turns off when the engine is started.
- The light turns on when the i-stop OFF switch is pressed and the system is turned off.

### **NOTE**

*A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer; we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

- *The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON.*
- *The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running.*



**When the light is flashing**

The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

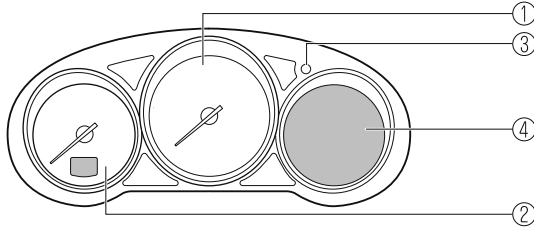
**i-stop indicator light (green)****When the light is turned on**

- The light turns on while engine idling is stopped and turns off when the engine is restarted.

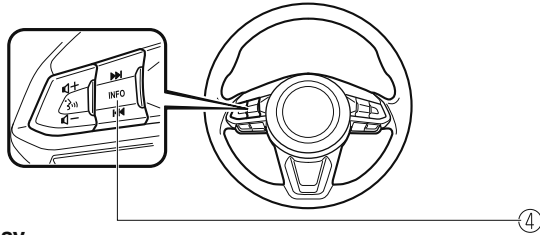
# Instrument Cluster and Display

## Meters and Gauges

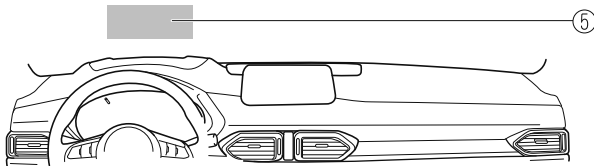
### Instrument Cluster



### Steering Switch



### Active Driving Display



① Speedometer.....	page 4-18
② Tachometer.....	page 4-18
③ Instrument Panel Illumination.....	page 4-19
④ Multi-information Display and INFO Switch.....	page 4-20
⑤ Active Driving Display.....	page 4-27

### ▼ Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle.

### ▼ Tachometer

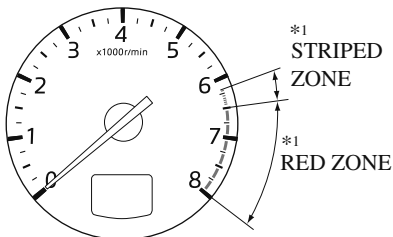
The tachometer shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).

### ⚠ CAUTION

*Do not run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE.*

# Instrument Cluster and Display

*This may cause severe engine damage.*



\*1 The range varies depending on the type of gauge.

## NOTE

*When the tachometer needle enters the STRIPED ZONE, this indicates to the driver that the gears should be shifted before entering the RED ZONE.*

## ▼ Instrument Panel Illumination

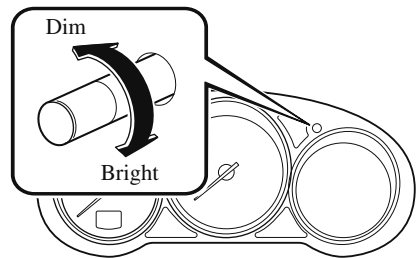
When the position lights are turned on with the ignition switched ON, the brightness of the instrument panel illumination is dimmed. However, when the light sensor detects that the surrounding area is bright such as when the position lights are turned on in the daytime, the instrument panel illumination does not dim.

## NOTE

- *When the ignition is switched ON in the early evening or at dusk, the instrument panel illumination is dimmed for several seconds until the light sensor detects the brightness of the surrounding area, however, the dimmer may cancel after the brightness is detected.*
  - *When the position lights are turned on, the position lights indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.*
- Refer to Headlights on page 4-44.*

The brightness of the instrument cluster and instrument panel illuminations can be adjusted by rotating the knob.

- The brightness decreases by rotating the knob to the left. A beep sound will be heard when the knob has been rotated to the maximum dim position.
- The brightness increases by rotating the knob to the right.



## Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

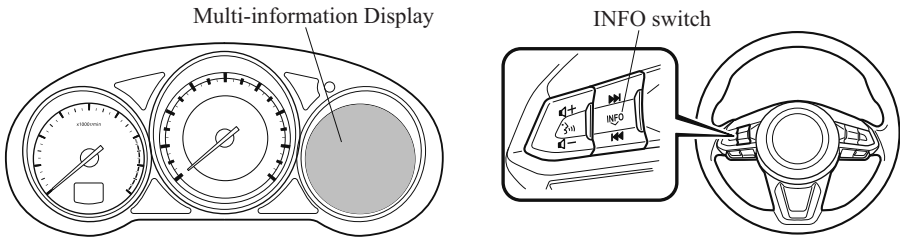
The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by rotating the instrument panel illumination knob to the right until a beep sound is heard while the instrument cluster is dimmed with the ignition switched ON. If the instrument cluster's visibility is reduced due to glare from surrounding brightness, cancel the illumination dimmer.

## NOTE

- *When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the instrument cluster cannot be dimmed even if the position lights are turned on.*
- *When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the screen in the centre display switches to constant display of the daytime screen.*

# Instrument Cluster and Display

## Multi-information Display

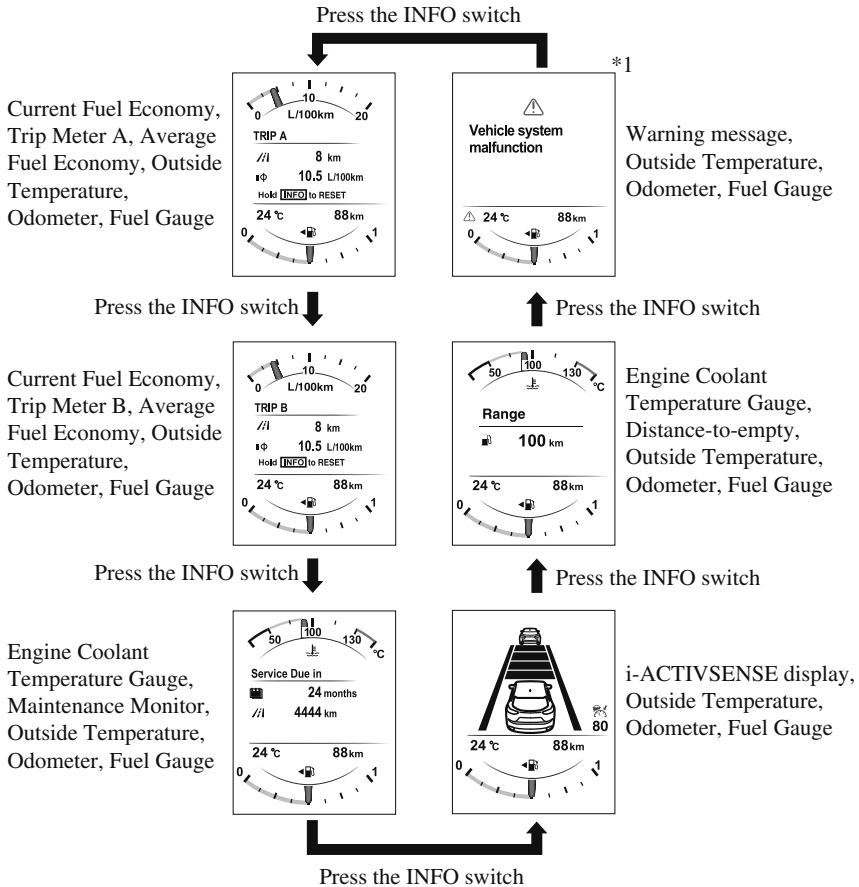


The multi-information display indicates the following information.

- Odometer
- Trip meter
- Engine coolant temperature gauge
- Fuel gauge
- Outside temperature
- Distance-to-empty
- Average fuel economy
- Current fuel economy
- Maintenance Monitor
- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Display
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display
- Cruise Control Display
- Message Display

# Instrument Cluster and Display

The screen content changes each time the INFO switch is pressed.



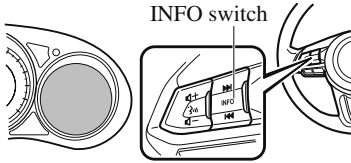
\*1: Displayed only when a warning occurs.

## ▼ Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector

The odometer is constantly displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched ON, and the TRIP A or TRIP B screen can

# Instrument Cluster and Display

be displayed by operating the INFO switch.



Odometer,  
Trip meter A

TRIP A	
//	8 km
■Φ	10.5 L/100km
Hold <b>INFO</b> to RESET	
88km	

Press the INFO switch ↓

Odometer,  
Trip meter B

TRIP B	
//	8 km
■Φ	10.5 L/100km
Hold <b>INFO</b> to RESET	
88km	

## Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

## Trip meter

The driving distance for a specified interval is indicated. Two types (TRIP A, TRIP B) of interval distance and the average fuel economy for each can be measured.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip

meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

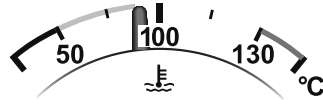
The trip meter and average fuel economy can be reset by pressing the INFO switch for 1.5 seconds or more while in each mode.

## **NOTE**

- Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).
- The trip record will be erased when:
  - The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).
  - The vehicle is driven over 9999.9 km (mile).

## ▼ Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. The blue gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is low, and the red gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high and overheating.



## **CAUTION**

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light (red) flashes, there is a possibility of overheating. Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down.

# Instrument Cluster and Display

Refer to *Overheating* on page 7-17.

## NOTE

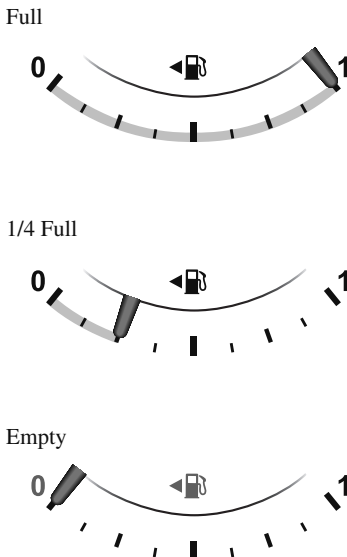
- The temperature unit (Centigrade/ Fahrenheit) of the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with the temperature unit of the outside temperature display.

Refer to *Personalisation Features* on page 9-9.

- During normal driving, the engine coolant temperature stabilizes at 100 °C (210 °F) or less, and the gauge indicates a range lower than 100 °C (210 °F).

## ▼ Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition is switched ON. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full.



If the fuel level is low, (⬅️) and (0) turn an amber colour. Refuel as soon as possible.

If inconsistency in engine performance or stalling occurs due to low fuel level conditions, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible and add at least 10 L (2.7 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.

Refer to *Taking Action* on page 7-31.

## NOTE

- After refuelling, it may require some time for the indicator to stabilize. In addition, the indicator may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.
- The display indicating a quarter or less remaining fuel has more segments to show the remaining fuel level in greater detail.
- The direction of the arrow (⬅️) indicates that the fuel-filler flap is on the left side of the vehicle.

## ▼ Outside Temperature Display

When the ignition is switched ON, the outside temperature is displayed.

4 °C

## NOTE

- Under the following conditions, the outside temperature display may differ from the actual outside temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:
  - Significantly cold or hot temperatures.
  - Sudden changes in outside temperature.
  - The vehicle is parked.
  - The vehicle is driven at low speeds.

# Instrument Cluster and Display

## Changing the Temperature Unit of the Outside Temperature Display

The outside temperature unit can be switched between Celsius and Fahrenheit. Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

### **NOTE**

*When the temperature unit indicated in the outside temperature display is changed, the temperature unit indicated in the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with it.*

### **▼ Distance-to-empty**

This displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.

## Range



**100 km**

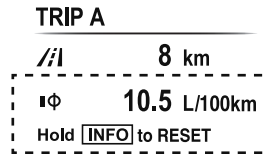
### **NOTE**

- *Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.*
- *The display will not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.*

- *The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge indicating the remaining fuel supply disappear.*
- *If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.*

### **▼ Average Fuel Economy**

This mode displays the average fuel economy by calculating the total fuel consumption and the total travelled distance since purchasing the vehicle, re-connecting the battery after disconnection, or resetting the data. The average fuel economy is calculated and displayed every minute.



**88km**

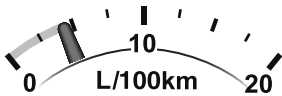
To clear the data being displayed, press the INFO switch for more than 1.5 seconds. After pressing the INFO switch, - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) will be displayed for about 1 minute before the fuel economy is recalculated and displayed.



# Instrument Cluster and Display

## ▼ Current Fuel Economy

This displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled.



## ▼ Maintenance Monitor

The following maintenance period notifications can be displayed by turning the Maintenance Monitor on.

- Scheduled Maintenance
- Tyre Rotation
- Oil Change

For the setting method and indications for the maintenance monitor, refer to the Maintenance Monitor.

Refer to Maintenance Monitor on page 6-7.

The maintenance monitor displays the information when the ignition is switched ON.

### **NOTE**

*This function is inoperable while the vehicle is being driven.*

### **Message display**

When the remaining days to the maintenance period is 15 days or less, or the remaining distance is 1,000 km (600 miles) or shorter, a message is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.



**Service Soon**

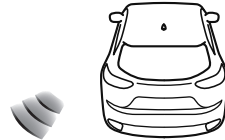
**500 km**

## **NOTE**

- If any of the INFO switch is pressed while a message is displayed, it will no longer be displayed the next time the ignition is switched ON.
- After the vehicle is serviced and the remaining time/distance is reset, the message for the next maintenance period will be displayed when the remaining distance or time to the next maintenance period approaches 0 (displays when engine is started).
- If there are multiple messages, they are displayed according to their order.
- If OFF is set for Messages, messages are not displayed.

## ▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display\*

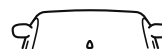
Displays the system status.



Refer to Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) on page 4-84.

## ▼ Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display\*

Displays the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



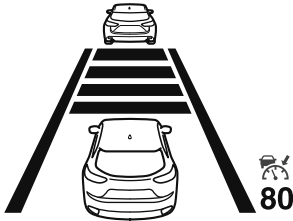
\*Some models.

# Instrument Cluster and Display

Refer to Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) on page 4-89.

## ▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Display\*

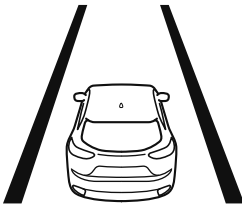
Displays the currently set system status.



Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) on page 4-99.

## ▼ Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display\*

Displays the system status.



Refer to Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-110.

## ▼ Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed Display\*

The vehicle speed preset using the cruise control is displayed.



Refer to Cruise Control on page 4-169.

## ▼ Message Display

A message such as the system operation status, a malfunction, or an abnormality is indicated.

**Warning/indicator light in instrument cluster turns on/flashes or symbol is indicated on display at same time as message**

Check the information regarding the warning/indicator light or indicated symbol.

Refer to If a Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-29.

Refer to If a Indication/Indicator Lights on page 4-31.

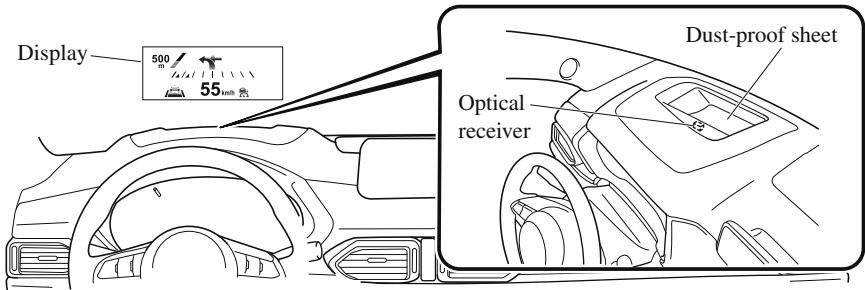
**Message only is indicated on display**

Follow the instructions indicated on the display. For the display content, refer to the next page.

Refer to If a Message Indicated on Multi-information Display on page 7-34.

# Instrument Cluster and Display

## Active Driving Display\*



### **! WARNING**

**Always adjust the display brightness and position with the vehicle stopped:**

Adjusting the display brightness and position while driving the vehicle is dangerous as doing so could distract your attention from the road ahead and lead to an accident.

### **! CAUTION**

- Do not place beverages near the active driving display. If water or other liquids are splashed on the active driving display, it could cause damage.
- Do not place objects above the active driving display or apply stickers to the dust-proof sheet/optical receiver as they will cause interference.
- A sensor is integrated to control the display's luminosity. If the optical receiver is covered, the display's luminosity will lower making the display difficult to view.
- Do not allow intense light to hit the optical receiver. Otherwise, it could cause damage.

### **NOTE**

- Wearing polarized sunglasses will reduce the visibility of the active driving display due to the characteristics of the display.
- If the battery has been removed and re-installed or the battery voltage is low, the adjusted position may deviate.
- The display may be difficult to view or temporarily affected by weather conditions such as rain, snow, light, and temperature.
- If the audio system is removed, the active driving display cannot be operated.

The active driving display indicates the following information:

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Operation Conditions and Warnings


## Instrument Cluster and Display

---

Refer to Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) on page 4-84.

- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Warnings  
Refer to Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) on page 4-89.
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Operation Conditions and Warnings  
Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) on page 4-99.
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Operation Conditions and Warnings  
Refer to Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-110.
- Smart Brake Support (SBS) Operation Conditions and Warnings  
Refer to Smart Brake Support (SBS) on page 4-128.
- Cruise Control Operation Conditions  
Refer to Cruise Control on page 4-169.
- Navigation Guidance (vehicles with navigation system)
- Speed limit indicator (vehicles with navigation system)
- Vehicle Speed

Each setting/adjustment for the active driving display can be performed on the centre display.

1. Select the  icon on the home screen and display the Settings screen.
2. Select the AD-Disp tab.
3. Select the desired item and perform the setting/adjustment.
  - Method for adjusting screen brightness (automatically/manually)
  - Screen brightness initial settings (automatic adjustment is selected)
  - Screen brightness adjustment (manual adjustment is selected)
  - Display position of active driving display (display height)
  - Active driving display angle adjustment (display angle correction)
  - Active driving display ON/OFF (indication)
  - Navigation guidance ON/OFF
  - Reset settings (reset)

### **NOTE**

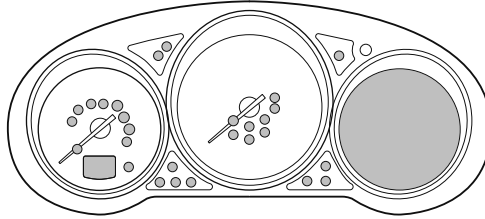
- *The desired driving position (display position, brightness level, display information) can be called up after programming the position.  
Refer to Driving Position Memory on page 2-10.*

# Instrument Cluster and Display

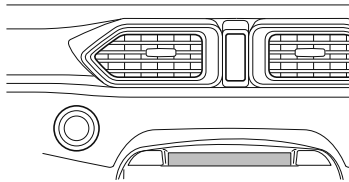
## Warning/Indicator Lights

Instrument Cluster varies depending on model and specifications.

### Instrument Cluster







### Centre of Instrument panel

















Warning/Indicator lights will appear in any of the highlighted areas

### ▼ Warning Indication/Warning Lights



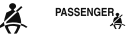



These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Warning	Page
	Brake System Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-23
	ABS Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning 7-23 ABS warning 7-25
	Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-23
	Engine Oil Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-23

# Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning	Page
 (Red)	High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication/Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-23
	Power Steering Malfunction Indication	7-23
	Master Warning Indication/Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Indication/Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
	Check Engine Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
<b>AT</b>	Automatic Transaxle Warning Indication* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
<b>4WD</b>	*4WD Warning Indication* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
	Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
 (Amber/White)	KEY Warning Indication	Amber 7-25
		White 7-31
<b>i-stop</b> (Amber)	i-stop Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
 (Amber)	*Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Indication/Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
	*Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication	7-25
 (Amber)	*Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warning Indication	7-25
 (Amber)	*Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Warning Indication	7-25
 (Amber)	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication	7-25
	LED Headlight Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-25
	*Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Indication	7-31

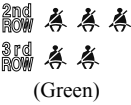




# Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning	Page
	Low Fuel Warning Indication	7-31
	Engine Oil Level Warning Light* <sup>1</sup>	7-31
 PASSENGER	Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)	7-31
 2nd ROW 3rd ROW (Red)	Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)	7-31
	Door-Ajar Warning Indication	7-31
	Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication	7-31










\*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

## ▼ Indication/Indicator Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.









Signal	Indicator	Page
 2nd ROW 3rd ROW (Green)	Seat Belt Indicator Light (Rear seat)	2-34
 (Green)	i-stop Indicator Light	4-16
	Security Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	3-34
	Wrench Indication	4-34
	*Glow Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	4-34
<b>DPF</b>	*Diesel Particulate Filter Indication	4-173

# Instrument Cluster and Display


Signal	Indicator	Page
 (Blue)	Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light	4-34
	Shift Position Indication	4-39
	Lights-On Indication/Indicator Light	4-44
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light	Headlight High-Low Beam 4-46
		Flashing the Headlights 4-46
	*Fog Light Indicator Light	4-48
	Direction Indicator/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights	Turn and Lane-Change Signals 4-49
		Hazard Warning Flasher 4-55
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Indication/Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup> * <sup>2</sup>	7-25
<b>HOLD</b>	AUTOHOLD Active Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	4-62
	TCS/DSC Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	Traction Control System (TCS) 4-67
		Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 4-69
		Turns on 7-25
<b>TCS OFF</b>	TCS OFF Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	4-68
<b>SPORT</b>	*Select Mode Indication	4-74
 (Green)	*Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Indicator Light	4-82



# Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
 OFF	*Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	Except malfunction 4-88
		Malfunction 7-25
 (White)	*Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Main Indication	4-102
 (Green)	*Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Set Indication	4-102
	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indication	4-113
 OFF	*Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	4-117
	*Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indication	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-123
		Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) 4-127
 OFF	*Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) OFF Indicator Light* <sup>1</sup>	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-123
		Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) 4-127
		Smart Brake Support (SBS) System 4-129
 (White)	*Cruise Main Indication	4-170

# Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
 (Green)	*Cruise Set Indication	4-170

- \*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- \*2 The light turns on continuously when the electric parking brake (EPB) is applied.

## ▼ Wrench Indication



The wrench indication is displayed under the following conditions.

- When the preset maintenance period has arrived.  
Refer to Maintenance Monitor on page 6-7.
- When the engine oil has deteriorated.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**
  - When the engine oil is deteriorated or exceeds the specified amount.
  - When fuel filter (sedimentor) draining is required. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

## NOTE

- The wrench indication may display earlier than the preset period depending on vehicle usage conditions.

## ▼ Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light (Blue)



The light illuminates continuously when the engine coolant temperature is low and turns off after the engine is warm.

## ▼ Glow Indicator Light (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)



When the ignition is switched ON, the glow indicator light turns on. The glow indicator light turns off when preheating is finished.

A problem in the system might be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

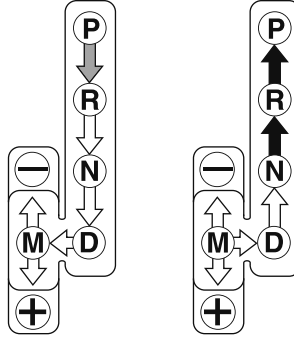
- The glow indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON or it remains on.
- The glow indicator light is flashing.

**NOTE**

*If the vehicle is left with the ignition switched ON without starting the engine and a long period of time has elapsed since preheating finished, the preheating may be performed again and the glow indicator light may turn on.*

## Automatic Transaxle Controls

Lock-release button



### Various Lockouts:



Indicates that you must depress the brake pedal and hold in the lock-release button to shift (The ignition must be switched ON).



Indicates the selector lever can be shifted freely into any position.



Indicates that you must hold in the lock-release button to shift.

### NOTE

*The Sport AT has an option that is not included in the traditional automatic transaxle that gives the driver the option of selecting each gear instead of leaving it to the transaxle to shift gears. Even if you intend to use the automatic transaxle functions as a traditional automatic, you should also be aware that you can inadvertently shift into manual shift mode and an inappropriate gear may be retained as the vehicle speed increases. If you notice the engine speed going higher or hear the engine racing, confirm you have not accidentally slipped into manual shift mode (page 4-40).*

## Shift-Lock System

The shift-lock system prevents shifting out of P unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

### NOTE

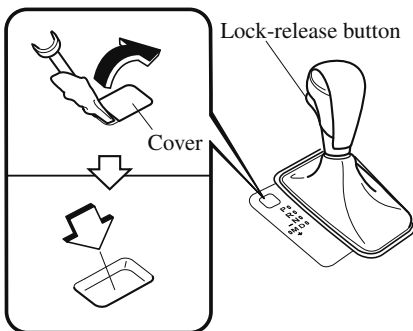
- When the ignition is switched to ACC or the ignition is switched off, the selector lever cannot be shifted from P position.
- The ignition cannot be switched to OFF if the selector lever is not in P position.

### ▼ Shift-Lock Override

If the selector lever will not move from P position using the proper shift procedure, continue to hold down the brake pedal.

#### Type A

1. Remove the shift-lock override cover using a cloth-wrapped flat head screwdriver.
2. Insert a screwdriver and push it down.

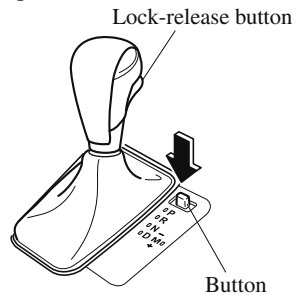


3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

Take the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the system checked.

#### Type B

1. Press the lock-release button with the button pressed.



2. Move the selector lever.
- Take the vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the system checked.

# Automatic Transaxle

---

## Transaxle Ranges

- The shift position indication in the instrument cluster illuminates. Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-29.
- The selector lever must be in P or N position to operate the starter.

### P (Park)

P locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.



**Always set the selector lever to P position and set the parking brake:**

Only setting the selector lever to the P position without using the parking brake to hold the vehicle is dangerous. If P fails to hold, the vehicle could move and cause an accident.



- Shifting into P, N or R while the vehicle is moving can damage your transaxle.
- Shifting into a driving gear or reverse when the engine is running faster than idle can damage the transaxle.

### R (Reverse)

In position R, the vehicle moves only backward. You must be at a complete stop before shifting to or from R, except under rare circumstances as explained in Rocking the Vehicle (page 3-40).

#### **NOTE**

*(With parking sensor system)*

*When the selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON, the parking sensor system is activated and a beep sound is heard.*

*Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.*

### N (Neutral)

In N, the wheels and transaxle are not locked. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or brakes are on.



**If the engine is running faster than idle, do not shift from N or P into a driving gear:**

*It's dangerous to shift from N or P into a driving gear when the engine is running faster than idle. If this is done, the vehicle could move suddenly, causing an accident or serious injury.*

**Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle:**

*Shifting into N while driving is dangerous. Engine braking cannot be applied when decelerating which could lead to an accident or serious injury.*



*Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle. Doing so can cause transaxle damage.*

#### **NOTE**

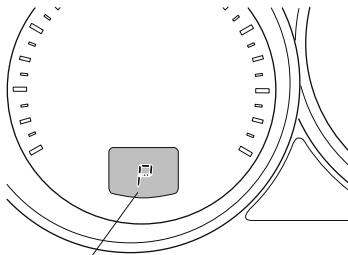
*Apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal before moving the selector lever from N position to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.*

**D (Drive)**

D is the normal driving position. From a stop, the transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence.

**M (Manual)**

M is the manual shift mode position. Gears can be shifted up or down by operating the selector lever. Refer to Manual Shift Mode on page 4-40.

**▼ Shift Position Indication**

Shift position indication

The selector position is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.

**Gear position indication**

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication illuminates and the numeral for the selected gear is displayed.

**▼ Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)**

Active Adaptive Shift (AAS) automatically controls the transaxle shift points to best suit the road conditions and driver input. This improves driving feel. The transaxle may switch to AAS mode when driving up and down slopes, cornering, driving at high elevations, or depressing the accelerator pedal quickly while the selector lever is in the D position. Depending on the road and

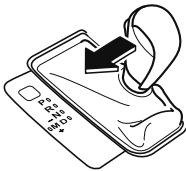
driving conditions/vehicle operations, gear shifting could be delayed or not occur, however, this does not indicate a problem because the AAS mode will maintain the optimum gear position.

# Automatic Transaxle

## Manual Shift Mode

The manual shift mode gives you the feel of driving a manual transaxle vehicle by allowing you to operate the selector lever manually. This allows you to control engine rpm and torque to the drive wheels much like a manual transaxle when more control is desired.

To change to manual shift mode, shift the lever from D to M.



### NOTE

Changing to manual shift mode while driving will not damage the transaxle.

To return to automatic shift mode, shift the lever from M to D.

### NOTE

- If you change to manual shift mode when the vehicle is stopped, the gear will shift to M1.
- If you change to manual shift mode without depressing the accelerator pedal when driving in D range, 5th gear/6th gear, the gear will shift to M4/M5.

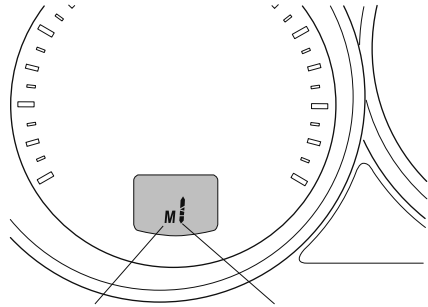
### ▼ Indications

#### Manual shift mode indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication in the instrument panel illuminates.

#### Gear position indication

The numeral for the selected gear illuminates.



Manual shift mode indication      Gear position indication

### NOTE

- If the gears cannot be shifted down when driving at higher speeds, the gear position indication will flash twice to signal that the gears cannot be shifted down (to protect the transaxle).
- If the automatic transaxle fluid (ATF) temperature becomes too high, there is the possibility that the transaxle will switch to automatic shift mode, cancelling manual shift mode and turning off the gear position indication illumination. This is a normal function to protect the AT. After the ATF temperature has decreased, the gear position indication illumination turns back on and driving in manual shift mode is restored.

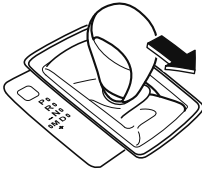
### ▼ Manually Shifting Up

You can shift gears up by operating the selector lever.

M1 → M2 → M3 → M4 → M5 → M6



To shift up to a higher gear, tap the selector lever back + once.



#### NOTE

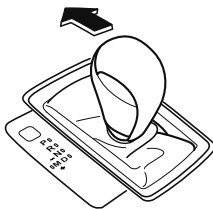
- When driving slowly, the gears may not shift up.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE while in manual shift mode. In addition, manual shift mode switches to automatic shift mode while the accelerator pedal is completely depressed. This function is cancelled while the TCS is turned off. However, if the vehicle is continuously driven at a high rpm, the gears may automatically shift up to protect the engine.

#### ▼ Manually Shifting Down

You can shift gears down by operating the selector lever.

M6 → M5 → M4 → M3 → M2 → M1

To shift down to a lower gear, tap the selector lever forward – once.



#### ! WARNING

#### **Do not use engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:**

Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

#### NOTE

- When driving at high speeds, the gear may not shift down.
- During deceleration, the gear may automatically shift down depending on vehicle speed.
- When depressing the accelerator fully, the transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed. However, the gears do not kickdown while the TCS is turned off.

#### ▼ Second Gear Fixed Mode

When the selector lever is moved back + while the vehicle speed is about 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less, the transaxle is set in the second gear fixed mode. The gear is fixed in second while in this mode for easier acceleration from a stop and driving on slippery roads such as snow-covered roads.

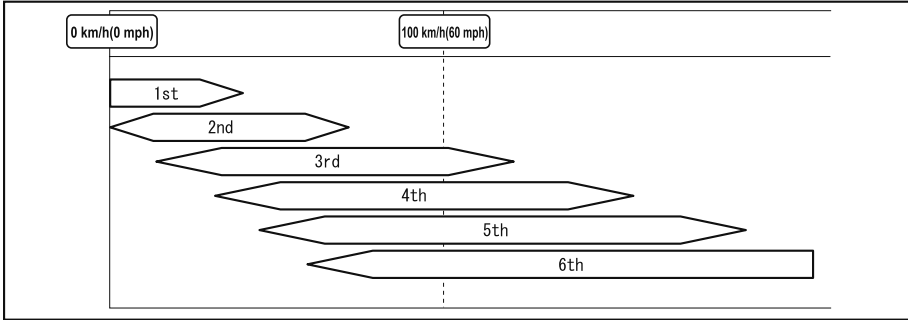
If the selector lever is moved back + or forward – while in the second gear fixed mode, the mode will be cancelled.

# Automatic Transaxle

---

## ▼ Shift Gear (Shifting) Speed Limit

For each gear position while in the manual mode, the speed limit is set as follows: When the selector lever is operated within the range of the speed limit, the gear is shifted.



### Shift up

The gear does not shift up while the vehicle speed is lower than the speed limit.

### Shift down

The gear does not shift down while the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit. If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit and the gear does not shift down, the gear position indication flashes 2 times to notify the driver that the gear cannot be shifted.

### Kickdown

When the accelerator pedal is depressed fully while driving, the gear shifts down. However, the gears do not kickdown while the TCS is turned off.

### **NOTE**

*The gear also shifts down using kickdown while in the second gear fixed mode.*

### Auto-shift down

The gear shifts down automatically depending on the vehicle speed during deceleration.

### **NOTE**

*If the vehicle comes to a stop while in the second gear fixed mode, the gear remains in second.*

## Driving Tips

### **WARNING**

**Do not let the vehicle move in a direction opposite to the direction selected by the selector lever:**

*Do not let the vehicle move backward with the selector lever in a forward position, or do not let the vehicle move forward with the selector lever in the reverse position. Otherwise, the engine may stop, causing the loss of the power brake and power steering functions, and make it difficult to control the vehicle which could result in an accident.*

### Passing

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing steep grades, depress the accelerator fully. The transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.

### **NOTE**

- *The accelerator pedal may initially feel heavy as it is being depressed, then feel lighter as it is depressed further. This change in pedal force aids the engine control system in determining how much the accelerator pedal has been depressed for performing kickdown, and functions to control whether or not kickdown should be performed.*
- *While the selector lever is in the M position and the TCS is turned off, manual shift mode does not switch to automatic shift mode even if the accelerator pedal is completely depressed. Operate the selector lever.*

### Climbing steep grades from a stop

To climb a steep grade from a stopped position:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift to D or M1, depending on the load weight and grade steepness.
3. Release the brake pedal while gradually accelerating.

### Descending steep grades

When descending a steep grade, shift to lower gears, depending on load weight and grade steepness. Descend slowly, using the brakes only occasionally to prevent them from overheating.

# Switches and Controls

## Lighting Control

### ▼ Headlights

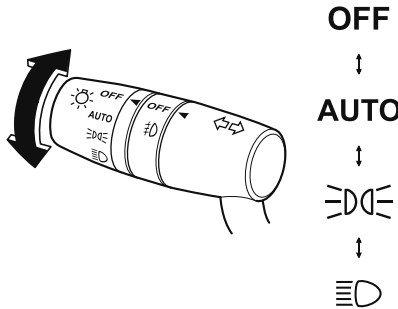
Turn the headlight switch to turn the headlights and other exterior lights on or off.

When the tail lights, position lights, and the number plate lights are turned on, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



#### NOTE

- To prevent discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on while the engine is off unless safety requires them.
- Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).



Switch Position	OFF		AUTO		☰☽☰		☰☽	
	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF
Headlights	Off	Off	Auto*2	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Running lights*	On*1	Off	On*3	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Tail lights								
Position lights	Off	Off	Auto*2	On*4	On	On	On	On*4
Number plate lights								

\*1 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven.

\*2 The lights are turned on by the auto light function.

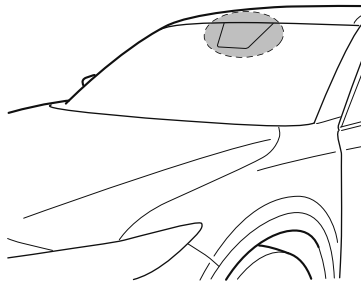
- \*3 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven, and turned off when the headlights are turned on by the auto light function.
- \*4 The lights are turned on continuously if the ignition is switched from ON to any other position with the lights turned on. The lights are turned off when the driver's door is opened or 30 seconds have elapsed since the lights turned on.

## Auto-light control

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the light sensor senses the surrounding lightness or darkness and automatically turns the headlights and other exterior lights on or off.



- *Do not shade the light sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the light sensor will not operate correctly.*



- *The light sensor also works as a rain sensor for the auto-wiper control. Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely — this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow — when it is particularly tempting to leave the engine running.*

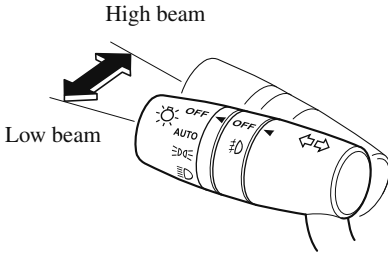
## **NOTE**

- *The headlights and other exterior lights may not turn off immediately even if the surrounding area becomes well-lit because the light sensor determines that it is night time if the surrounding area is continuously dark for several minutes such as inside long tunnels, traffic jams inside tunnels, or in indoor parking lots. In this case, the lights turn off if the light switch is turned to the OFF position.*
- *The sensitivity of the auto-light control may be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

# Switches and Controls

## ▼ Headlight High-Low Beam

The headlights switch between high and low beams by moving the lever forward or backward.



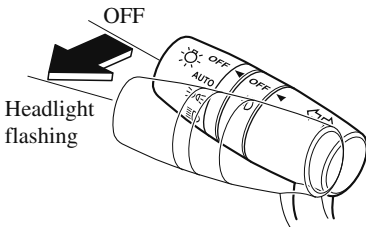
When the headlight high-beams are on, the headlight high-beam indicator light is turned on.



## ▼ Flashing the Headlights

Can be used when the ignition is switched ON.

To flash the headlights, pull the lever fully towards you (the headlight switch does not need to be on).



The headlight high-beam indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates

simultaneously. The lever will return to the normal position when released.



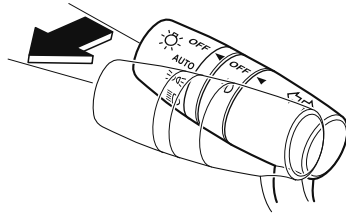
## ▼ Coming Home Light

The coming home light turns on the headlights (low beams) when the lever is operated.

### To turn on the lights

When the lever is pulled with the ignition switched to ACC or OFF, the low beam headlights turn on.

The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed after all of the doors are closed.



### **NOTE**

- The time until the headlights turn off after all of the doors are closed can be changed.  
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.
- If no operations are done for 3 minutes after the lever is pulled, the headlights turn off.
- The headlights turn off if the lever is pulled again while the headlights are illuminated.

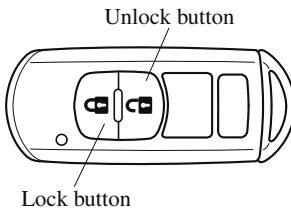
### ▼ Leaving Home Light

The leaving home light turns on the lights when the transmitter unlock button is pressed while away from the vehicle. The following lights turn on when the leaving home light is operated. Low beams, Position lights, Tail lights, Number plate lights.

#### To turn on the lights

When the ignition switch and the headlight switch are in the following conditions, the headlights will illuminate when the transmitter unlock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal. The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed (30 seconds).

- Ignition switch: off
- Headlight switch: AUTO,  $\text{☰}$ , or  $\text{☷}$



#### **NOTE**

- Operation of the leaving home light can be turned on or off. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.
- When the transmitter lock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal, the headlights turn off.
- When the headlight switch is turned to the OFF position, the headlights turn off.

### ▼ Headlight Levelling

The number of passengers and weight of cargo in the luggage compartment change the angle of the headlights.

The angle of the headlights will be automatically adjusted when turning on the headlights.

The warning/indicator light turns on when the system has a malfunction. Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-29.

### ▼ Running Lights\*

The running lights turn on automatically when the vehicle starts moving.

They turn off when the parking brake is operated or the selector lever is shifted to the P position.

#### **NOTE**


The running lights can be deactivated. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

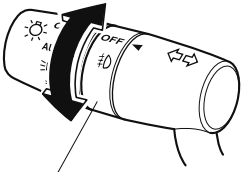
# Switches and Controls

## Fog Lights\*



The fog lights can be used when the ignition is switched ON.

Use this switch to turn on the fog lights. The fog lights will improve visibility at night and during foggy conditions.

To turn the fog lights on, rotate the fog light switch to the  position.



Fog light switch


The headlight switch must be in the  or  position when turning on the fog lights. The fog light indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates while the fog light are on.



To turn the fog lights off, do any of the following:

- Rotate the fog light switch to the OFF position.
- Turn the headlight switch to the OFF position.

### NOTE

- If the fog light switch is in the  position or the headlight switch is in the AUTO position, the fog lights will turn on when the headlights, the exterior lights and instrument panel illumination turn on.



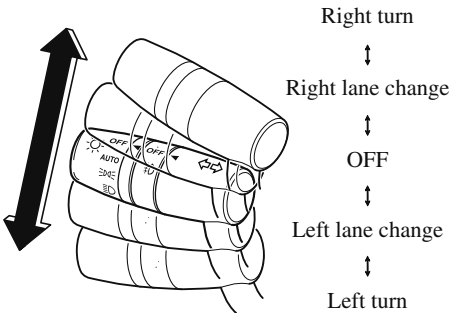
## Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The ignition must be switched ON to use the turn and lane-change signals.

### ▼ Direction Indicators

Move the signal lever down (for a left turn) or up (for a right turn) to the stop position. The signal will self-cancel after the turn is completed.

If the indicator light continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to its original position.



The direction indicators in the instrument cluster flash according to the operation of the direction indicator lever to show which signal is working.



### NOTE

- If an indicator light stays on without flashing or if it flashes abnormally, one of the direction indicator bulbs may be burned out.
- A personalised function is available to change the turn indicator sound volume. (page 9-9)

### ▼ Lane-Change Signals

Move the lever halfway toward the direction of the lane change—until the indicator flashes—and hold it there. It will return to the off position when released.

### ▼ Three-Flash Turn Signal

After releasing the direction indicator lever, the direction indicator flashes 3 times. The operation can be cancelled by moving the lever in the direction opposite to which it was operated.

### NOTE

*The three-flash turn signal function can be switched to operable/inoperable using the personalisation function.*

*Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

# Switches and Controls

## Windscreen Wipers and Washer

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wipers.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:**

Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

**Only use windscreen washer fluid mixed with anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions:**

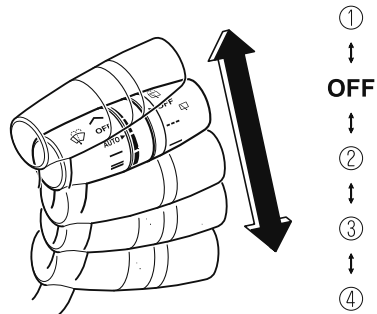
Using windscreen washer fluid without anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions is dangerous as it could freeze on the windscreen and block your vision which could cause an accident. In addition, make sure the windscreen is sufficiently warmed using the defroster before spraying the washer fluid.

**NOTE**

If the windscreen wipers are operated under cold weather conditions or during snowfall, they could stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen, park the vehicle in a safe place, turn the wiper switch off, and then remove the accumulated snow. If the wiper switch is turned to another position other than OFF, the wipers will operate. If the wipers do not operate even though the wiper switch is turned to a position other than OFF, consult an expert repairer; we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

### ▼ Windscreen Wipers

Turn the wipers on by pressing the lever up or down.



Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
①		MIST	Operation while pulling up lever
	OFF		Stop
②	AU-TO	AU-TO	Auto control
③		LO	Low speed

# Switches and Controls

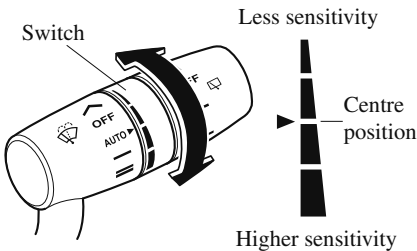
Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
④	≡	HI	High speed

## Auto-wiper control

When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the rain sensor senses the amount of rainfall on the windscreen and turns the wipers on or off automatically (off—intermittent—low speed—high speed).

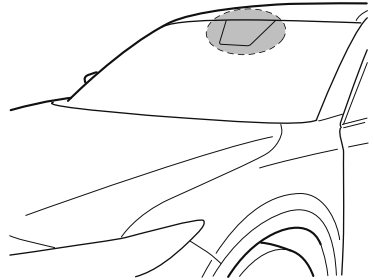
The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted by turning the switch on the wiper lever.

From the centre position (normal), rotate the switch upward for higher sensitivity (faster response) or rotate it downward for less sensitivity (slower response).



## ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not shade the rain sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the rain sensor will not operate correctly.



- When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:
  - If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.
  - If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object from either outside or inside the vehicle.

Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely (when it is most likely that the engine is left running) this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow.

## Switches and Controls

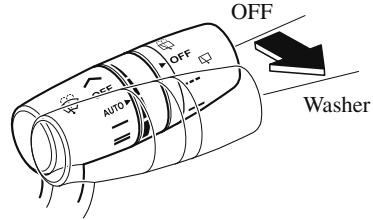
### NOTE

- Switching the auto-wiper lever from the OFF to the AUTO position while driving activates the windscreen wipers once, after which they operate according to the rainfall amount.
- The auto-wiper control may not operate when the rain sensor temperature is about  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $14^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) or lower, or about  $85^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $185^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) or higher.
- If the windscreen is coated with water repellent, the rain sensor may not be able to sense the amount of rainfall correctly and auto-wiper control may not operate properly.
- If dirt or foreign matter (Such as ice or matter containing salt water) adheres to the windscreen above the rain sensor or if the windscreen is iced, it could cause the wipers to move automatically. However, if the wipers cannot remove this ice, dirt or foreign matter, the auto-wiper control will stop operation. In this case, set the wiper lever to the low speed position or high speed position for manual operation, or remove the ice, dirt or foreign matter by hand to restore the auto-wiper operation.
- If the auto-wiper lever is left in the AUTO position, the wipers could operate automatically from the effect of strong light sources, electromagnetic waves, or infrared light because the rain sensor uses an optical sensor. It is recommended that the auto-wiper lever be switched to the OFF position other than when driving the vehicle under rainy conditions.
- The auto-wiper control functions can be turned off.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

### ▼ Windscreen Washer

Pull the lever toward you and hold it to spray washer fluid.



### NOTE

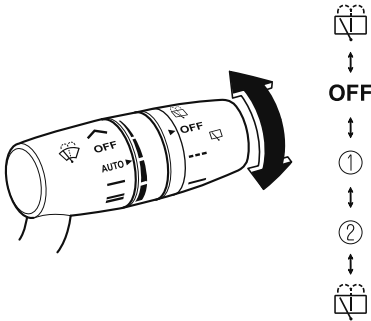
If the windscreen washer is turned on when the windscreen wipers are not operating, the windscreen wipers operate a few times.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-20). If the fluid level is normal, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

## Rear Window Wiper and Washer

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wiper.


### ▼ Rear Window Wiper



Turn the wiper on by turning the rear wiper/washer switch.

Switch Position			Wiper operation
No.	Type A	Type B	
	OFF		Stop
①	---	INT	Intermittent
②	—	ON	Normal

### ▼ Rear Window Washer

To spray washer fluid, turn the rear wiper/washer switch to either of the  position. After the switch is released, the washer will stop.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-20). If the fluid level is normal and the washer still does not work, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

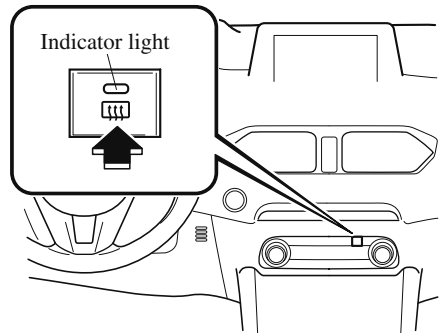
## Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger clears fog from the rear window.

The ignition must be switched ON to use the defogger.

Press the switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The rear window defogger operates for about 15 minutes and then turns off automatically. The indicator light illuminates when the defogger is operating.

To turn off the rear window defogger before the 15 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.



### ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaners with abrasives to clean the inside of the rear window surface. They may damage the defogger grid inside the window.


## Switches and Controls

---

### NOTE

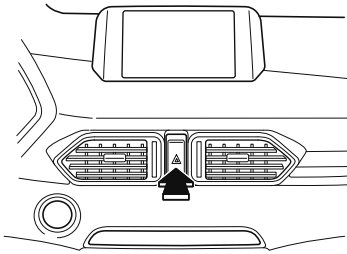
- *This defogger is not designed for melting snow. If there is an accumulation of snow on the rear window, remove it before using the defogger.*
- *The rear window defogger setting can be changed. After changing the setting, the rear window defogger stops automatically after 15 minutes have elapsed and when the ambient temperature is high. When the ambient temperature is low, it continues to operate until the switch is pressed again.*  
*Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

### Horn

To sound the horn, press the  mark on the steering wheel.

## Hazard Warning Flasher

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

### NOTE

- The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.
- Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.
- If the brake pedal is depressed while driving on slippery roads, the emergency stop signal system could operate causing all the turn and lane change signals to flash. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-64.

- While the emergency stop signal system is operating, all the direction indicators automatically flash rapidly to caution the driver of a vehicle following behind your vehicle of a sudden braking situation. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-64.

## Brake System

### ▼ Foot Brake

This vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal use.

Should power-assist fail, you can stop by applying greater force than normal to the brake pedal. But the distance required to stop will be greater than usual.

### ⚠ WARNING

#### **Do not coast with the engine stalled or turned off, find a safe place to stop:**

Coasting with the engine stalled or turned off is dangerous. Braking will require more effort, and the brake's power-assist could be depleted if you pump the brake. This will cause longer stopping distances or even an accident.

#### **Shift to a lower gear when going down steep hills:**

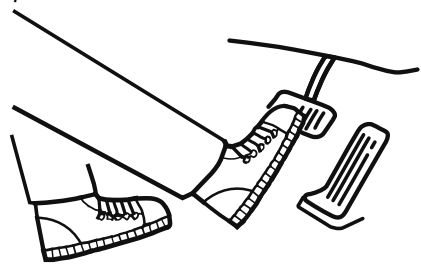
Driving with your foot continuously on the brake pedal or steadily applying the brakes for long distances is dangerous. This causes overheated brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances or even total brake failure. This could cause loss of vehicle control and a serious accident. Avoid continuous application of the brakes.

**Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:**

*Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.*

### ⚠ CAUTION

- *Do not drive with your foot held on the clutch pedal or brake pedal, or hold the clutch pedal depressed halfway unnecessarily. Doing so could result in the following:*
  - *The clutch and brake parts will wear out more quickly.*
  - *The brakes can overheat and adversely affect brake performance.*
  - *Always depress the brake pedal with the right foot. Applying the brakes with the unaccustomed left foot could slow your reaction time to an emergency situation resulting in insufficient braking operation.*



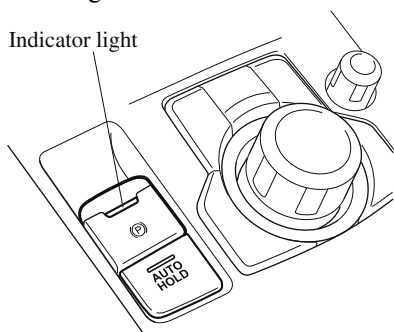
- *Wear shoes appropriate for driving in order to avoid your shoe contacting the brake pedal when depressing the accelerator pedal.*

### ▼ Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

The EPB equipment applies the parking brake using an electric motor. When the



parking brake is applied, the EPB switch indicator light turns on.



## **⚠ WARNING**

### **Do not drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied:**

If the vehicle is driven with the parking brake applied, the brake parts may generate heat and the brake system may not operate, leading to an accident. Before driving, release the parking brake and verify that the EPB indicator light is turned off.

### **NOTE**

- The parking brake cannot be applied or released while the vehicle battery is dead.
- If the EPB is repeatedly applied and released it may stop operating to prevent overheating of the motor. If this occurs, wait approx. 1 minute before operating the EPB switch again.
- An operation sound occurs when applying or releasing the parking brake, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- If the EPB is not used for long periods, an automatic inspection of the system is performed while the vehicle is parked. An operation sound can be heard, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- When the parking brake is applied and the ignition is switched OFF, an operation sound can be heard, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- The brake pedal may move while the parking brake is being applied or released, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- If the EPB switch is continually pulled while driving the vehicle, the parking brake will be applied and the EPB warning beep will be activated. When the switch is released, the parking brake is released and the beep stops.
- If the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched off or in ACC, the EPB indicator light in the instrument cluster and the indicator light in the switch may turn on for 15 seconds.
- When running the vehicle through an automatic car wash, it may be necessary to switch the ignition off with the parking brake released depending on the type of automatic car wash.

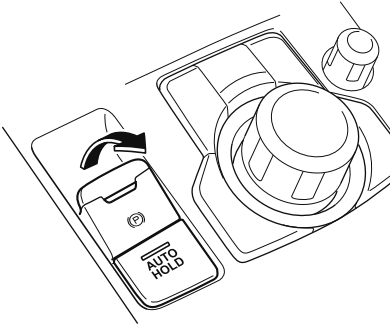
### **When applying the parking brake**

The parking brake can be applied regardless of the ignition switch position. Securely depress the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.

The parking brake is applied and the EPB indicator light and the EPB switch indicator light turn on.

# Brake

Refer to Warning/Indicator Lights on page 4-29.

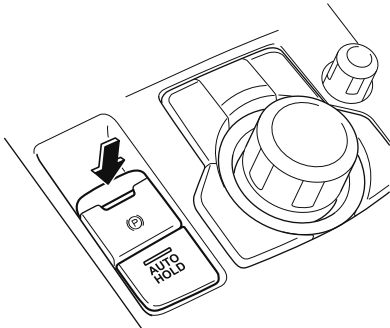


## When releasing the parking brake

The parking brake can be released while the ignition is switched ON or the engine is running. When the parking brake is released, the EPB indicator light and the EPB switch indicator light turn off.

## **Parking brake manual release**

Firmly depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch.



If the EPB switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal, the display in the instrument cluster notifies the driver that the brake is not depressed. A message is displayed on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

Refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display on page 7-34.

## **Parking brake automatic release**

If the accelerator pedal is depressed with the parking brake applied and all of the following conditions met, the parking brake is released automatically.

- The engine is running.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- Selector lever is in the D, M, or R position

## **NOTE**

*If something such as the driver's foot contacts the accelerator pedal with the engine running and the parking brake applied, the parking brake may be released automatically. If you do not intend to drive immediately, shift the selector lever to the P or N position.*

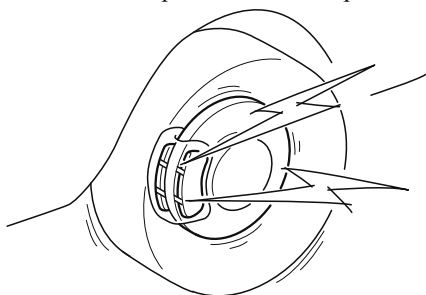
## ▼ **Warning Light**

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction. Refer to Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.

## ▼ **Brake Pad Wear Indicator**

When the disc brake pads become worn, the built-in wear indicators contact the

disc plates. This causes a screeching noise to warn that the pads should be replaced.



When you hear this noise, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Do not drive with worn disc pads:**

*Driving with worn disc pads is dangerous. The brakes could fail and cause a serious accident. As soon as you hear a screeching noise consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

#### **NOTE**

*In high humidity weather conditions, brake noises, such as brake squeak or brake squeal can be heard. It does not indicate a malfunction.*

#### **▼ Brake Assist**

During emergency braking situations when it is necessary to depress the brake pedal with greater force, the brake assist

system provides braking assistance, thus enhancing braking performance.

When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the brakes apply more firmly.

#### **NOTE**

- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the pedal will feel softer but the brakes will apply more firmly. This is a normal effect of the brake assist operation and does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, a motor/pump operation noise may be heard. This is a normal effect of the brake assist and does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *The brake assist equipment does not supersede the functionality of the vehicle's main braking system.*

## AUTOHOLD

The AUTOHOLD function automatically holds the vehicle stopped, even if you take your foot off the brake pedal. This function can be best used while stopped in traffic or at a traffic light. The brakes are released when you resume driving the vehicle such as by depressing the accelerator pedal.

### **WARNING**

**Do not rely completely on the AUTOHOLD function:**

*The AUTOHOLD function is only designed to assist the brake operation while the vehicle is stopped. Neglecting to operate the brakes and relying only on the AUTOHOLD system is dangerous and could result in an unexpected accident if the vehicle were to suddenly move. Operate the brakes appropriately in accordance with the road and surrounding conditions.*

**Do not release your foot from the brake pedal while the vehicle is stopped on a steep grade:**

*Because there is a possibility of the vehicle not being held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function, the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident.*

**Do not use the AUTOHOLD function on slippery roads such as icy or snow-covered roads, or unpaved roads:**

*Even if the vehicle is held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function, the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident. Operate the accelerator pedal, brakes, or steering wheel appropriately as necessary.*

**Immediately depress the brake pedal in the following cases:**

*Because the AUTOHOLD function is cancelled forcibly, the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident.*

➤ *[Brake Hold Unavailable Depress Brake to Hold Position] is displayed in the multi-information display and the warning sound is activated at the same time.*

**Always apply the parking brake when parking the vehicle:**

*Not applying the parking brake when parking the vehicle is dangerous as the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident. When parking the vehicle, shift the selector lever to the P position (automatic transaxle vehicle) and apply the parking brake.*

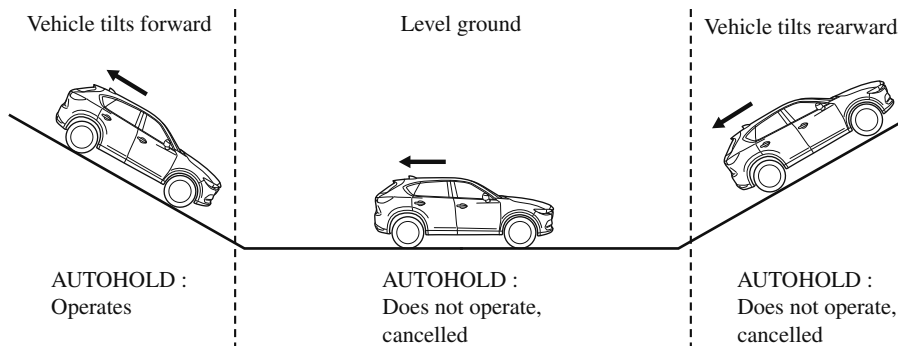
**⚠ CAUTION**

If you stop operating the accelerator pedal before the vehicle starts moving, the force holding the vehicle in the stopped position may weaken. Firmly depress the brake pedal or depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

**NOTE**

- Under the following conditions, a problem with the AUTOHOLD is occurring. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer; we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
- A message is indicated on the multi-information display and a warning sound is activated for about 5 seconds while the AUTOHOLD is operating or when you press the AUTOHOLD switch.
- If you switch the ignition OFF while the AUTOHOLD is operating, the parking brake is applied automatically to assist you with parking the vehicle.
- The AUTOHOLD is cancelled when the selector lever is shifted to R position while the vehicle is on level ground, or facing up a hill or grade (as shown below).

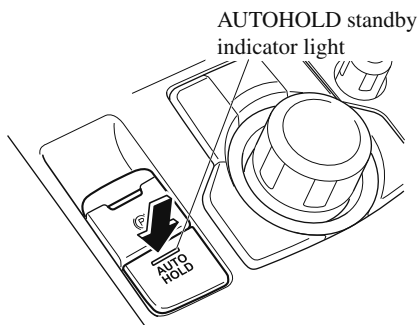
← : Driving in reverse (selector lever/shift lever in R)



## Brake

### ▼ To Turn On AUTOHOLD System

Press the AUTOHOLD switch and when the AUTOHOLD standby indicator light turns on, the AUTOHOLD function turns on.



#### **NOTE**

*When all of the following conditions are met, the AUTOHOLD standby indicator light turns on when the AUTOHOLD switch is pressed and the AUTOHOLD function turns on.*

- The ignition is switched ON (engine is running or stopped by i-stop).
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- There is no problem with the AUTOHOLD function.

### **To operate AUTOHOLD and hold the brakes**

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

2. The AUTOHOLD active indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on and the brakes are held.

# HOLD

3. The vehicle is held in its stopped position even with the brake pedal released.

#### **NOTE**

*When all of the following conditions are met, the AUTOHOLD operates and the brakes are held.*

- The ignition is switched ON (engine is running or stopped by i-stop).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The brake pedal is being depressed.
- The AUTOHOLD active indicator light turns on.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- There is no problem with the AUTOHOLD function.
- The parking brake is released.
- There is no problem with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) function.
- The selector lever is in a position other than R position or the vehicle tilts forward with the selector lever in the R position.

### **To release AUTOHOLD and start driving the vehicle**

If you do any of the following actions to resume driving the vehicle, the brakes release automatically and the

AUTOHOLD active indicator light turns off.

- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The vehicle tilts rearward or the selector lever is shifted to the R position on level ground.

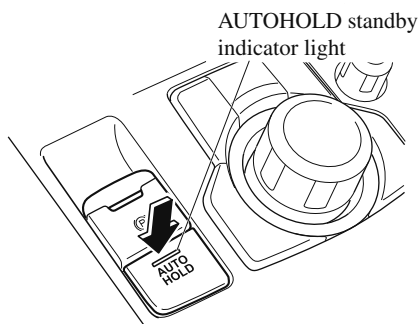
**NOTE**

- *If the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is pulled while the AUTOHOLD is operating, the parking brake is applied and the AUTOHOLD is released. In addition, if the parking brake is released under this condition, the AUTOHOLD operates to hold the brakes.*
- *Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically applied and the AUTOHOLD is released. The AUTOHOLD is re-enabled when the conditions before the AUTOHOLD is released are restored.*
  - *The driver's seat belt is unfastened.*
  - *The driver's door is opened.*
- *When about 10 minutes or longer have passed since the AUTOHOLD operation started, the parking brake is automatically applied. Because the AUTOHOLD is restored when releasing the parking brake, the hold on the brakes by AUTOHOLD function resumes.*

**▼ To Turn Off AUTOHOLD System**

Depress the brake pedal and press the AUTOHOLD switch. The AUTOHOLD is

turned off and the AUTOHOLD standby indicator light turns off.



**NOTE**

- *When the brakes are not held such as while driving the vehicle, the AUTOHOLD can be turned off only by pressing the AUTOHOLD switch.*
- *If the AUTOHOLD switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while AUTOHOLD is operating (AUTOHOLD active indicator light in instrument cluster is turned on), the message Brake Pedal Must Be Depressed to Deactivate Auto Hold System is indicated on the multi-information display to notify the driver to depress the brake pedal.*
- *If any of the following conditions occurs while the AUTOHOLD function is operating (AUTOHOLD active indicator light is turned on), the parking brake is applied automatically and the AUTOHOLD function turns off. For the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) operation, refer to the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) on page 4-56.*
  - *The ignition is switched OFF.*
  - *There is a problem with the AUTOHOLD function.*

- Turn off the AUTOHOLD before switching OFF the ignition so that the parking brake is not applied automatically.

## Emergency Stop Signal System

If you apply the brakes suddenly while driving at a speed of about 55 km/h (34 mph) or faster, the emergency stop signal system automatically and rapidly flashes all the direction indicator lights to caution drivers behind your vehicle of the sudden braking situation.

### **NOTE**

#### · **Flashing**

*When you bring your vehicle to a complete stop while all the direction indicator lights are flashing rapidly, the rapid flashing of all the direction indicator lights changes back to the normal flashing pattern. When the hazard warning light switch is pressed, all of the direction indicator lights turn off.*

#### · **Operation**

- *When the ABS operates, the emergency stop signal system is more likely to operate. Therefore, if the brake pedal is depressed on a slippery road, all of the direction indicator lights may flash.*
- *The emergency stop signal system does not operate when the hazard warning light switch is pressed.*



## Hill Launch Assist (HLA)

HLA is a function which assists the driver in accelerating from a stop while on a slope. When the driver releases the brake pedal and depresses the accelerator pedal while on a slope, the function prevents the vehicle from rolling. The braking force is maintained automatically after the brake pedal is released on a steep grade. HLA operates on a downward slope when the selector lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the selector lever is in a forward gear.

### **WARNING**

#### **Do not rely completely on HLA :**

*HLA is an auxiliary device for accelerating from a stop on a slope. The system only operates for about 2 seconds and therefore, relying only on the system, when accelerating from a stop is dangerous because the vehicle may move (roll) unexpectedly and cause an accident. The vehicle could roll depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before starting to drive the vehicle.*

#### **NOTE**

- HLA does not operate on a gentle slope. In addition, the gradient of the slope on which the system will operate changes depending on the vehicle's load.*
- HLA does not operate if the parking brake is applied, or if the vehicle has not stopped completely.*
- HLA is operating, the brake pedal may feel stiff and vibrate, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

- HLA does not operate while the TCS/DSC indicator light is illuminated. Refer to Contact Authorised and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.*
- HLA does not turn off even if the TCS OFF switch is pressed to turn off the TCS.*
- Although the HLA does not operate during idling stop, the vehicle roll prevention function operates to prevent vehicle roll.*

## Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS control unit continuously monitors the speed of each wheel. If one wheel is about to lock up, the ABS responds by automatically releasing and reapplying that wheel's brake.

The driver will feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal and may hear a chattering noise from the brake system. This is normal ABS system operation. Continue to depress the brake pedal without pumping the brakes.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Refer to Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.

### **WARNING**

#### ***Do not rely on ABS as a substitute for safe driving:***

*The ABS cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), driving on ice and snow, and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.*

#### **NOTE**

- Braking distances may be longer on loose surfaces (snow or gravel, for example) which usually have a hard foundation. A vehicle with a normal braking system may require less distance to stop under these conditions because the tyres will build up a wedge of surface layer when the wheels skid.*
- The sound of the ABS operating may be heard when starting the engine or immediately after starting the vehicle, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.*

# ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

## Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control System (TCS) enhances traction and safety by controlling engine torque and braking. When the TCS detects driving wheel slippage, it lowers engine torque and operates the brakes to prevent loss of traction.

This means that on a slick surface, the engine adjusts automatically to provide optimum power to the drive wheels, limiting wheel spin and loss of traction.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction. Refer to Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.

### WARNING

#### **Do not rely on the Traction Control System (TCS) as a substitute for safe driving:**

*The Traction Control System (TCS) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.*

**Use snow tyres or tyre chains and drive at reduced speeds when roads are covered with ice and/or snow:**

*Driving without proper traction devices on snow and/or ice-covered roads is dangerous. The Traction Control System (TCS) alone cannot provide adequate traction and you could still have an accident.*

#### **NOTE**

*To turn off the TCS, press the TCS OFF switch (page 4-68).*

#### **▼ TCS/DSC Indicator Light**



This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS, DSC or the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

#### **NOTE**

- *In addition to the indicator light flashing, a slight labouring sound will come from the engine. This indicates that the TCS/DSC is operating properly.*
- *On slippery surfaces, such as fresh snow, it will be impossible to achieve high rpm when the TCS is on.*

## ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

---

### ▼ TCS OFF Indicator Light

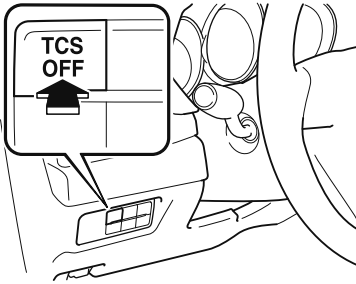
# TCS OFF

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. It also illuminates when the TCS OFF switch is pressed and TCS is switched off. Refer to TCS OFF Switch on page 4-68.

If the light remains illuminated and the TCS is not switched off, take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The DSC may have a malfunction.

### ▼ TCS OFF Switch

Press the TCS OFF switch to turn off the TCS. The TCS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.



Press the switch again to turn the TCS back on. The TCS OFF indicator light will turn off.

### NOTE

- When TCS is on and you attempt to free the vehicle when it is stuck, or drive it out of freshly fallen snow, the TCS (part of the DSC system) will activate. Depressing the accelerator will not increase engine power and freeing the vehicle may be difficult. When this happens, turn off the TCS.
- If the TCS is off when the engine is turned off, it automatically activates when the ignition is switched ON.
- Leaving the TCS on will provide the best traction.
- If the TCS OFF switch is pressed and held for 10 seconds or more, the TCS OFF switch malfunction detection function operates and the TCS system activates automatically. The TCS OFF indicator light turns off while the TCS system is operative.

# ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

## Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) automatically controls braking and engine torque in conjunction with systems such as ABS and TCS to help control side slip when driving on slippery surfaces, or during sudden or evasive manoeuvring, enhancing vehicle safety.

Refer to ABS (page 4-66) and TCS (page 4-67).

DSC operation is possible at speeds greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Refer to Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.

### WARNING

#### **Do not rely on the Dynamic Stability Control as a substitute for safe driving:**

*The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.*

### CAUTION

- *The DSC may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:*

- *Use tyres of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all 4 wheels.*
- *Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all 4 wheels.*
- *Do not mix worn tyres.*
- *The DSC may not operate correctly when tyre chains are used or a temporary spare tyre is installed because the tyre diameter changes.*

### ▼ TCS/DSC Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS, DSC or the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

If the vehicle sways while being driven and towing a trailer, the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) automatically controls braking and engine torque to suppress the swaying and enhance vehicle stability.

The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operable at a vehicle speed of about 65 km/h (40 mph) or more.

When the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) operates while driving the vehicle, the TCS/DSC indicator light flashes.

Refer to TCS/DSC Indicator Light on page 4-69.

#### **WARNING**

#### **Do not rely solely on the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)**

*Assured vehicle stability is limited even if the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating. Drive carefully to prevent accidents.*

*In particular, if the TCS/DSC indicator light is flashing, drive the vehicle carefully as it is in a less stable condition and could sway more easily. Drive with caution and in accordance with the road, vehicle and trailer conditions.*

#### **CAUTION**

➤ *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:*

- *Use tyres of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all four wheels.*

- *Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all four wheels.*
- *Do not mix worn tyres.*
- *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) may not operate correctly when tyre chains are used or a temporary spare tyre is installed because the tyre diameter changes.*



#### **NOTE**

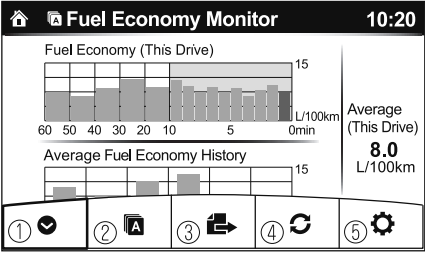
- *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) uses the TCS/DSC functions. The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) does not operate if there is a malfunction in the TCS/DSC (the TCS/DSC indicator light turns on).*
- *When the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the brake lights may turn on.*

## Fuel Economy Monitor

The Control Status, Fuel Consumption, and Effectiveness are switched and displayed by operating each icon in the display.

In addition, after completing a trip, the total energy efficiency to date is displayed in the ending display when the ending display is turned on.

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Applications screen.
2. Select the “Fuel Economy Monitor”.
3. Select the  icon at the bottom left of the screen to display the menu in the lower part of the screen.
4. Select the icon in the menu and perform the operation. Each icon operates as follows:

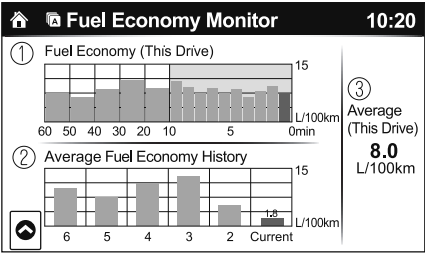
Indication on display	Control status
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>① Hides the menu display.</li> <li>② Displays the Applications screen.</li> <li>③ Switches the Fuel Economy Monitor in the order of Control Status, Fuel Consumption, and Effectiveness.</li> <li>④ Resets the fuel economy data.</li> <li>⑤ Displays the following setting screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ending display on/off switching</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

### NOTE

The fuel economy monitor screen after the ignition is switched from ON to OFF is changed to the original fuel economy monitor screen when the ignition is switched ON the next time.


### ▼ Fuel Consumption Display

Information regarding the fuel economy is displayed.

Indication on display	Control status
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>① Displays the fuel economy for the past 60 minutes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays the fuel economy every minute for the past 1 to 10 minutes.</li> <li>• Displays the fuel economy every 10 minutes for the past 10 to 60 minutes.</li> </ul> </li> <li>② Displays the average fuel economy over the past 5 resets and after the current reset.</li> <li>③ Calculates the average fuel economy every minute after vehicle travel begins, and displays it.</li> </ol>

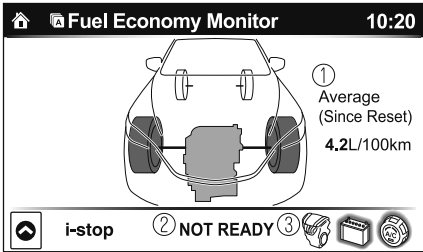

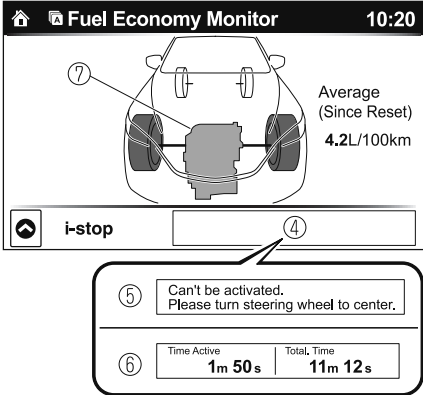
# Fuel Economy Monitor

## NOTE

- The fuel economy data is synchronized (linked) with the average fuel economy displayed in the tripmeter (TRIP A).
- To reset the fuel economy data, press the  icon in the menu. (The average fuel economy and TRIP A displayed in the tripmeter (TRIP A) reset at the same time.)
- After resetting the fuel economy data, "--" is displayed while the average fuel economy is being calculated.

## ▼ Control Status Display

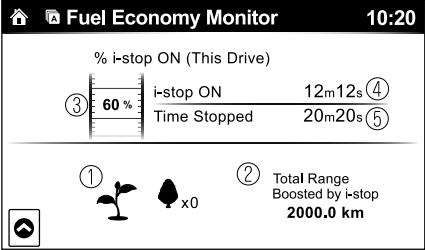
The i-stop operation status are displayed.

Indication on display	Control status
	<p>① Displays the accumulated fuel economy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Synchronized (linked) with the average fuel economy displayed in the trip meter (TRIP A). Refer to Average Fuel Economy on page 4-24.</li> <li>• To reset, press the  icon in the menu. (The average fuel economy and TRIP A displayed in the trip meter (TRIP A) reset at the same time.)</li> </ul> <p>② Displays the readiness status as to whether operation of the i-stop function is available.</p> <p>③ Displays the operation readiness status of the i-stop function on the vehicle side (engine, battery, and A/C) using icon colouring. The blue colour indicates that the i-stop function is ready to operate, and the grey colour indicates that it is not ready for operation.</p>
	<p>④ Displays the i-stop function status while the vehicle is stopped.</p> <p>⑤ Indicates the operations required by the driver to operate the i-stop function while it is not operating.</p> <p>⑥ Displays the current amount of time that the i-stop function has been operating and the accumulated amount of time that it has been operating.</p> <p>⑦ The i-stop function operation status is indicated by the colour of the engine area. The colour is blue during i-stop function operation, and grey when it is not operating.</p>



## ▼ Effectiveness Display

The actual performance of the energy efficiency is displayed.

Indication on display	Control status
 <p>The screenshot shows the Fuel Economy Monitor interface. At the top, it says "Fuel Economy Monitor" and "10:20". Below that, it displays "% i-stop ON (This Drive)" with a gauge showing 60%. To the right, it shows "i-stop ON 12m12s" and "Time Stopped 20m20s". At the bottom, there are two tree graphics: a small one labeled "1" and a larger one labeled "2" with "x0" next to it. Below the trees, it says "Total Range Boosted by i-stop 2000.0 km".</p>	<p>① The leaf graphic grows according to the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> emissions reduced by the system effects. The cumulative total amount of leaf growth is indicated in terms of the number of tree graphics.</p> <p>② Displays the total driving distance which could be extended by the operation of the i-stop function.</p> <p>③ Displays the percentage of time that the vehicle was stopped by the i-stop function operation out of the total amount of time that the vehicle was stopped.</p> <p>④ Displays the amount of time that the i-stop function has operated.</p> <p>⑤ Displays the total amount of time that the vehicle was stopped.</p>

## ▼ Ending Screen Display

If the ending display on the fuel economy monitor is on when the ignition is switched from ON to OFF, the actual energy efficiency is displayed.

## Drive Selection\*

Drive selection is a system to switch the vehicle's drive mode. When the sport mode is selected, vehicle's response against accelerator operation is enhanced. This provides additional quick acceleration which may be needed to safely make manoeuvres such as lane changes, merging onto freeways, or passing other vehicles.

### **! CAUTION**

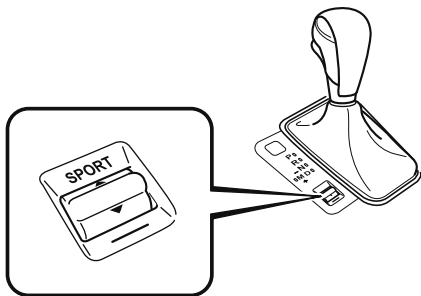
*Do not use the sport mode when driving on slippery roads such as wet or snow-covered roads. It may cause tyre slipping.*

### **NOTE**

- *When the sport mode is selected, driving at higher engine speeds increases and it may increase fuel consumption. Mazda recommends that you cancel the sport mode on normal driving.*
- *Drive mode cannot be switched in the following conditions:*
  - *ABS/TCS/DSC is operating*
  - *The Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system/cruise control is operating.*
  - *Steering wheel is being operated abruptly*

### **▼ Drive Selection Switch**

Press the drive selection switch forward (“SPORT”) to select the sport mode.  
Pull the drive selection switch back (“—”) to cancel the sport mode.



### **NOTE**

- *In the following cases, the drive selection is cancelled.*

- *The ignition is switched OFF.*
- *Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system/cruise control is set.*
- *Depending on the driving conditions when sport mode is selected, the vehicle may perform shift-down or slightly accelerate.*

### **▼ Select Mode Indication**

When the sport mode is selected, the select mode indication turns on in the instrument cluster.

# SPORT

### **NOTE**

*If the drive selection cannot be switched to sport mode, the select mode indication flashes to notify the driver.*

**i-ACTIV AWD Operation\***

4WD provides excellent drivability on snow-covered and ice-packed roads, sand and mud, as well as on steep slopes and other slippery surfaces.

A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Refer to Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-25.

**! WARNING****Never spin a wheel that is off the ground:**

*Spinning a wheel that is off the ground as a result of the vehicle being stuck or in a ditch is dangerous. The drive assembly could be seriously damaged which could lead to an accident or could even lead to overheating, oil leakage, and a fire.*

**▼ 4WD Driving****! WARNING****Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvres when driving this vehicle:**

*Sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvring of this vehicle is dangerous as it could result in the increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle roll-over, personal injury or death.*

*This vehicle has a higher centre of gravity. Vehicles with a higher centre of gravity such as utility and 4WD vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower centre of gravity.*

*Utility and 4WD vehicles are not designed for cornering at high speeds any more than low profile sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. In addition, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.*

**Drive carefully when the vehicle is loaded by lowering vehicle speed and applying the brakes earlier:**

*Abrupt manoeuvring and sudden braking when driving a loaded vehicle is dangerous as the driving behaviour of a vehicle with a high centre of gravity is different when it is loaded compared to when it is not, and could result in the loss of vehicle control and an accident.*

**▼ Tyres and Tyre Chains**

The condition of the tyres plays a large role in the performance of the vehicle. Moreover, to prevent adverse effects to the drive assembly, please note the following:

**Tyres**

- When replacing tyres, always replace all front and rear tyres at the same time.
- All tyres must be of the same size, manufacture, brand and tread pattern. Pay particular attention when equipping snow or other types of winter tyres.
- Do not mix tread-worn tyres with normal tyres.
- Inspect tyre inflation pressures at the specified periods adjust to the specified pressures.

**NOTE**

*Check the tyre inflation pressure label attached to driver's door frame for the correct tyre inflation pressure.*

- Make sure to equip the vehicle with genuine wheels of the specified size, on all wheels. With 4WD, the system is calibrated for all 4 wheels being of the same dimensions.

## **Tyre chains**

- Install tyre chains to the front tyres.
- Do not use tyre chains on the rear wheels.
- Do not drive the vehicle faster than 30 km/h (19 mph) with the tyre chains installed.
- Do not drive the vehicle with tyre chains on road conditions other than snow or ice.

## **▼ Towing**

If the vehicle requires towing, have it towed with all 4 wheels completely off the ground.

Refer to Towing Description on page 7-19.

## Power Steering

- Power steering is only operable when the engine is running. If the engine is off or if the power steering system is inoperable, you can still steer, but it requires more physical effort.

If the steering feels stiffer than usual during normal driving or the steering vibrates, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

- The warning indication notifies the driver of system abnormalities and operation conditions.

In addition, the buzzer may also activate depending on the system abnormality or operation condition.

Refer to Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately on page 7-23.

Refer to Power Steering Warning Buzzer on page 7-40.



*Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme left or right for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. This could damage the power steering system.*

**i-ACTIVSENSE**

i-ACTIVSENSE is a collective term covering a series of advanced safety and driver support systems which make use of a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and radar sensors. These systems consist of active safety and pre-crash safety systems.

These systems are designed to assist the driver in safer driving by reducing the load on the driver and helping to avert collisions or reduce their severity. However, because each system has its limitations, always drive carefully and do not rely solely on the systems.

**▼ Active Safety Technology**

Active Safety Technology supports safer driving by helping the driver to recognise potential hazards and avert accidents.

**Driver awareness support systems****Nighttime visibility**

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS).....	page 4-81
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH).....	page 4-81

**Left/right side and rear side detection**

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....	page 4-110
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).....	page 4-84

**Inter-vehicle distance recognition**

Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS).....	page 4-89
---	-----------

**Driver fatigue detection**

Driver Attention Alert (DAA).....	page 4-93
-----------------------------------	-----------

**Rear obstruction detection when leaving a parking space**

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....	page 4-95
--------------------------------------	-----------

**Full-surround recognition**

360°View Monitor.....	page 4-130
-----------------------	------------

**Driver support systems****Inter-vehicle distance**

Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC).....	page 4-99
--	-----------

**Lane departure**

Lane-keep Assist System (LAS).....	page 4-110
------------------------------------	------------

## ▼ Pre-Crash Safety Technology

Pre-crash safety technology is designed to assist the driver in averting collisions or reduce their severity in situations where they cannot be avoided.

### Collision damage reduction in low vehicle speed range

#### Forward driving

Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS).....page 4-121

#### Reverse driving

Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R).....page 4-124

### Collision damage reduction in medium/high speed range

Smart Brake Support (SBS).....page 4-128

## ▼ Camera and Sensors

### Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects lane indications and recognises headlights, tail lights and city lights during nighttime driving. In addition, it also detects the vehicle ahead, pedestrians, or obstructions. The following systems also use the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).

- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed at the top of the windscreen near the rearview mirror.

Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-157.

### Radar sensor (front)

The radar sensor (front) functions by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle ahead sent from the radar sensor. The following systems also use the radar sensor (front).

- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The radar sensor (front) is mounted behind the radiator grille.

Refer to Radar Sensor (Front) on page 4-162.

## **Radar sensors (rear)**

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensors. The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.

Refer to Radar Sensors (Rear) on page 4-165.

## **Ultrasonic sensors (rear)**

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) function by detecting the ultrasonic waves reflected off obstructions at the rear sent from the ultrasonic sensors. The following systems also use the ultrasonic sensors (rear).

- Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) are mounted in the rear bumper.

Refer to Ultrasonic Sensors (Rear) on page 4-167.

## **Front camera/side cameras/rear view camera**

The front camera, side cameras, and rear camera shoot images of the area surrounding the vehicle. The 360° View Monitor uses each camera.

Cameras are installed to the front bumper, door mirrors, and liftgate.

Refer to Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera on page 4-168.



## Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)\*

The adaptive front lighting system (AFS) automatically adjusts the headlight beams to the left or right in conjunction with the operation of the steering wheel after the headlights have been turned on.

### **NOTE**

- *Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).*
- *The Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) function can be switched to operable/inoperable using the personalisation function. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

## Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)\*

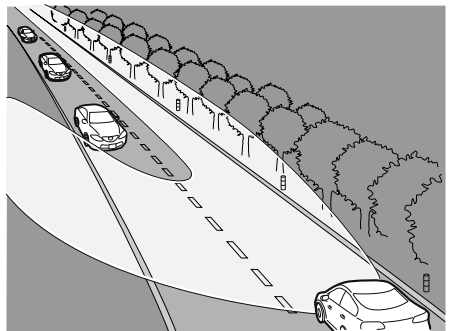
The ALH are a system which uses the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) to determine the situation of a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction while driving at night to automatically switch the illumination range of the headlights, the illuminated area, or the illumination brightness. Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-157.

The ALH are controlled between high and low beams as follows to assure the driver's visibility without dazzling a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction.

### **Glare-Free High Beam**

This feature dims only the high-beam light shone on the vehicle ahead.

The high beams will dim while driving at a speed of about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster. When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the beams switch to the low beams.

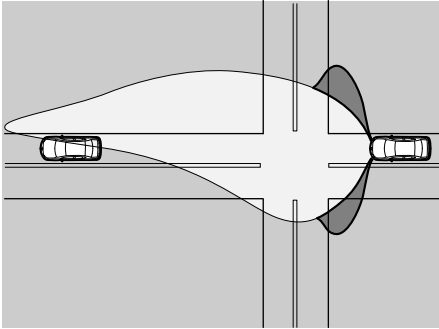


### **NOTE**

*The headlight high-beam indicator light turns on while the high beams are on.*

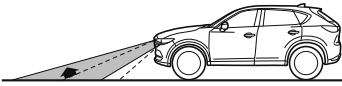
## Wide-Range Low Beam

This feature extends the illumination range of the light cast by the low beams while driving at a speed less than about 40 km/h (25 mph).



## Highway Mode

This feature shifts the illumination angle of the light cast by the headlights upward while driving on highways.



The distance in which the ALH can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.

### **CAUTION**

- Do not modify the suspensions or headlight units, or remove the camera. Otherwise, the ALH may not operate normally.
- Do not rely excessively on the ALH and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.

## **NOTE**

*Under the following conditions, the ALH may not operate normally. Manually switch between the high and low beams according to the visibility, and the road and traffic conditions.*

- *When there are other sources of light in the area such as street lamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.*
- *When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.*
- *When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.*
- *When driving on roads with sharp curves or undulations.*
- *When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles ahead or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.*
- *When there is insufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.*
- *When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.*
- *When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.*

## **▼ To Operate the System**

The system switches the headlights to the high beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. The ALH indicator light (green)

in the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.



The ALH determine that it is nighttime based on the brightness of the surrounding area.

The system cancels operation when the headlight switch is turned to a position other than **AUTO**, the headlights are manually switched to low beams, or the high beams are flashed on and off.

**NOTE**

*The system can be changed so that the ALH do not operate.*



*Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

**▼ Manual Switching**

**Switching to low beams**

Shift the lever to the low beam position.  
The ALH indicator light (green) turns off.

**Switching to high beams**

Turn the headlight switch to the  position.  
The ALH indicator light (green) turns off and the  is illuminated.

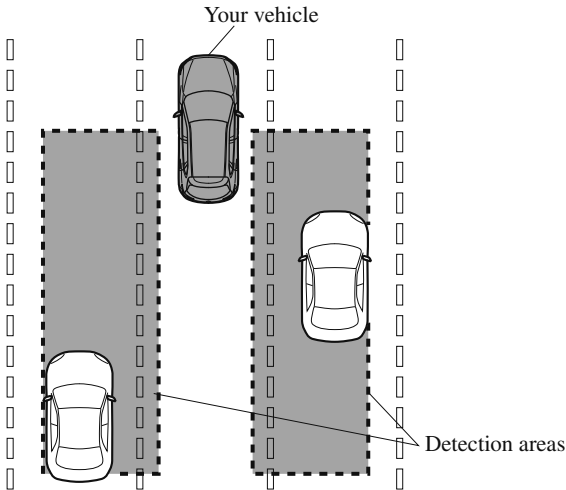
## Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)\*

The BSM is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides during lane changes by notifying the driver of the presence of vehicles approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane.

The BSM detects vehicles approaching from the rear while travelling in the forward direction at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster and notifies the driver by turning on the BSM warning indicator light and displaying the vehicle detection screen.

If the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the BSM warning indicator light is illuminated while the approaching vehicle is detected, the BSM notifies the driver of possible danger by turning on the BSM warning indicator light, and by activating the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display.

The detection area on this system covers the driving lanes on both sides of the vehicle and from the rear part of the front doors to about 50 m (164 ft) behind the vehicle.



### **! WARNING**

***Always check the surrounding area visually before making an actual lane change:***

*The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at your rear when making a lane change. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the BSM warning indicator light, the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display may not activate or they might be delayed even though a vehicle is in an adjacent driving lane. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.*

**NOTE**

- *The BSM will operate when all of the following conditions are met:*
  - *The ignition is switched ON.*
  - *The BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off.*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster.*
- *The BSM will not operate under the following circumstances.*
  - *The vehicle speed falls below about 25 km/h (15 mph) even though the BSM OFF switch indicator light is turned off.*
  - *The selector lever is shifted to R position and the vehicle is reversing.*
  - *The turning radius is small (making a sharp turn, turning at intersections).*
- *In the following cases, the BSM OFF indicator light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the BSM OFF indicator light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.*
  - *Some problem with the system including the BSM warning indicator lights is detected.*
  - *A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.*
  - *There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear). Remove any snow, ice or mud on the rear bumper.*
  - *Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.*
  - *The temperature near the radar sensors (rear) becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.*
  - *The battery voltage has decreased.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.*
  - *A vehicle is in the detection area at the rear in an adjacent driving lane but it does not approach. The BSM determines the condition based on radar detection data.*
  - *A vehicle is travelling alongside your vehicle at nearly the same speed for an extended period of time.*
  - *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.*
  - *A vehicle in an adjacent driving lane is attempting to pass your vehicle.*
  - *A vehicle is in an adjacent lane on a road with extremely wide driving lanes. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set at the road width of expressways.*
- *In the following case, the flashing of the BSM warning indicator light, and the activation of the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display may not occur or they may be delayed.*
  - *A vehicle makes a lane change from a driving lane 2 lanes over to an adjacent lane.*
  - *Driving on steep slopes.*
  - *Crossing the summit of a hill or mountain pass.*

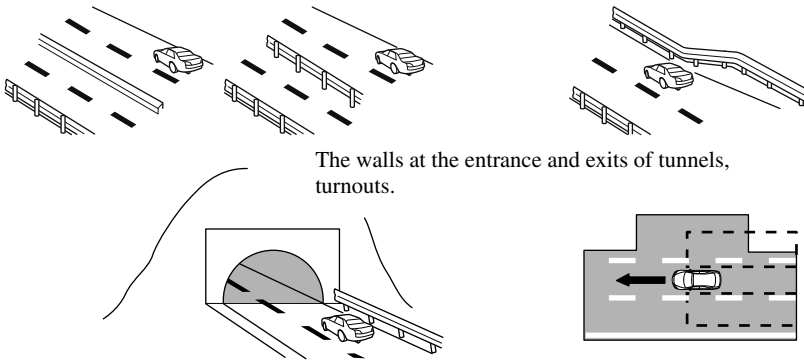
# i-ACTIVSENSE

---

- When there is a difference in the height between your driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- Directly after the BSM system becomes operable by changing the setting.
- If the road width is extremely narrow, vehicles 2 lanes over may be detected. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set according to the road width of expressways.
- The BSM warning indicator light may turn on and the vehicle detection screen may be displayed in the display in reaction to stationary objects (guardrails, tunnels, sidewalls, and parked vehicles) on the road or the roadside.

Objects such as guardrails and concrete walls running alongside the vehicle.

Places where the width between guardrails or walls on each side of the vehicle narrows.



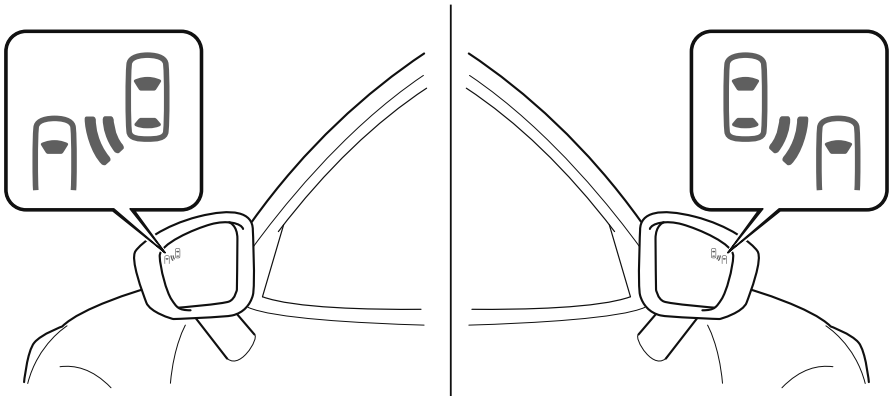
- A BSM warning indicator light may flash or the warning beep and the warning screen indicator display may be activated several times when making a turn at a city intersection.
- Turn off the BSM while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radar's radio waves will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.
- In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flash of the BSM warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors.
  - Snow or ice is adhering to the door mirrors.
  - The front door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.
- The system switches to the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function when the selector lever is shifted to the reverse (R) position.  
Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-95.

### ▼ **Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indicator Lights/Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Beep**

The BSM or Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system notifies the driver of the presence of vehicles in adjacent lanes or at the rear of the vehicle using the BSM warning indicator light, the warning sound and the display indicator (BSM) while the systems are operational.

#### **BSM warning indicator lights**

The BSM warning indicator lights are equipped on the left and right door mirrors. The warning indicator lights turn on when a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane is detected.



When the ignition is switched ON, the warning indicator light turns on momentarily and then turns off after a few seconds.

#### **Forward driving (BSM operation)**

The BSM detects vehicles approaching from the rear and turns on the BSM warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors according to the conditions. Additionally, while a BSM warning indicator light is illuminated, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the BSM warning indicator light is illuminated, the BSM warning indicator light flashes.

#### **Reverse driving (Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system operation)**

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system detects a vehicle approaching from the rear of the vehicle and flashes the BSM warning indicator lights.

#### **Function for cancelling illumination dimmer**

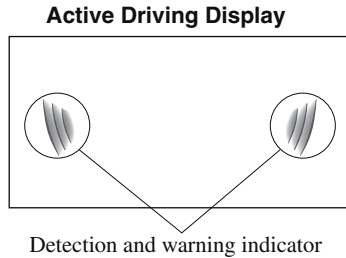
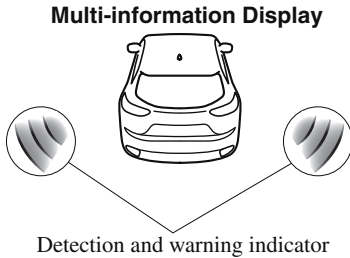
If the BSM warning indicator lights turn on when the position lights are turned on, the brightness of the BSM warning indicator lights is dimmed.

If the BSM warning indicator lights are difficult to see due to glare from surrounding brightness when travelling on snow-covered roads or under foggy conditions, press the dimmer cancellation button to cancel the dimmer and increase the brightness of BSM warning indicator lights when they turn on.

Refer to Instrument Panel Illumination on page 4-19.

### Display indicator

The detected approaching vehicle and warning are displayed in the multi-information display and active driving display when the vehicle is moving forward (BSM operational).



The detected direction is displayed with a detection indicator (white) when an approaching vehicle is detected. In addition, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a lane change while the vehicle is detected, the display changes the colour (amber) of the warning indicator.

### BSM warning beep

The BSM warning beep is activated simultaneously with the flashing of a BSM warning indicator light.

### ▼ **Cancelling Operation of Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)**

The BSM system can be set to inoperable. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

When the BSM is set to inoperable, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off and the BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



### **NOTE**

*When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF while the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are operational, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems remain operational the next time the ignition is switched ON.*



## Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)\*

The DRSS measures the distance between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead using a radar sensor (front) while the vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster, and if your vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead more closely than what is appropriate for maintaining distance between the vehicles according to the vehicle speed, a notification in the active driving display is indicated to advise you to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

### **WARNING**

#### ***Do not rely completely on the DRSS and always drive carefully:***

*The ability to detect a vehicle ahead is limited depending on the type of vehicle ahead, the weather conditions, and the traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator and brake pedals are not operated correctly it could lead to an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.*

#### **NOTE**

- *The DRSS operates when all of the following conditions are met:*
  - *The ignition is switched ON.*
  - *The DRSS is on.*
  - *The selector lever is in a position other than reverse (R).*
  - *The vehicle speed is 30 km/h or faster (19 mph or faster).*
- *The objects which activate the system are 4-wheeled vehicles.*
- *The DRSS may also operate in the presence of motorcycles and bicycles.*
- *The DRSS may not operate normally under the following conditions:*
  - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) has a malfunction.*
  - *The vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely slow speed.*
- *The system does not operate with the following objects:*
  - *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.*
  - *Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)*

#### **▼ Indication on Display**

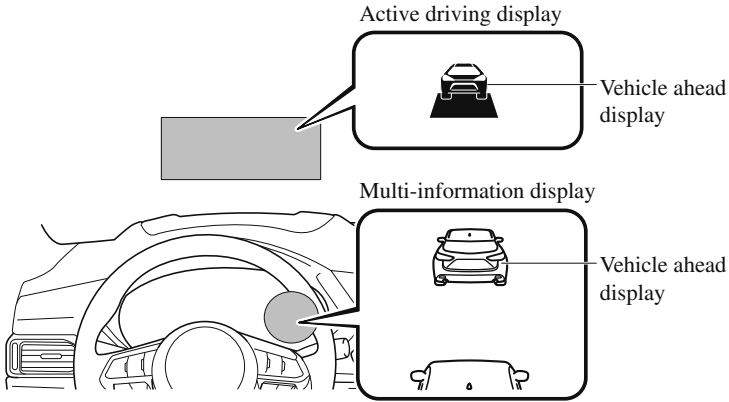
The DRSS operation status is indicated in the active driving display or multi-information display. Regarding malfunctions, check the vehicle conditions or have it inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer according to the content of the displayed message.

# i-ACTIVSENSE



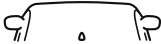

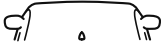

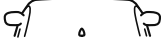

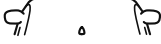
---

## NOTE

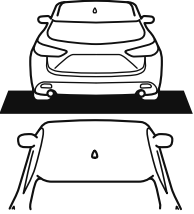
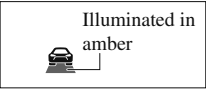
- When the ignition is switched off, the operation status before the system was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched off with the DRSS operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.
- The DRSS can be turned on/off and the system's sensitivity can be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.



**Distance-between-vehicles guidelines<sup>\*1</sup>**

Indication on display		Distance between vehicles guidelines (During travel at about 40 km/h (25 mph))	Distance between vehicles guidelines (During travel at about 80 km/h (50 mph))
Multi-information display	Active driving display		
		About 25 m (82 ft)	About 50 m (164 ft)
			
		About 20 m (66 ft)	About 40 m (131 ft)
			
		About 15 m (49 ft)	About 30 m (98 ft)
			
		About 10 m (33 ft)	About 20 m (66 ft)
			

# i-ACTIVSENSE

Indication on display		Distance between vehicles guidelines (During travel at about 40 km/h (25 mph))	Distance between vehicles guidelines (During travel at about 80 km/h (50 mph))
Multi-information display	Active driving display		
 <p>Flashes in white*2</p>		<p>About 10 m (32 ft) or less</p>	<p>About 20 m (65 ft) or less</p>

\*1 The distance between vehicles differs depending on vehicle speed.

\*2 Indication when the distance setting for notifying the driver that the vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead is Near.

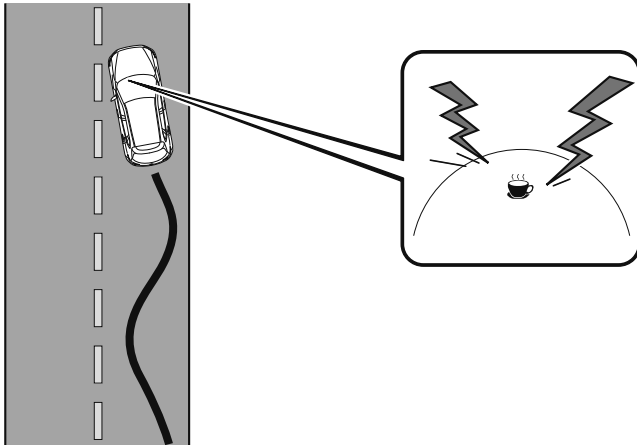
## Driver Attention Alert (DAA)\*

The DAA is a system which detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness, and encourages the driver to take a rest.

When the vehicle is driven inside traffic lane lines at about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 86 mph), the DAA estimates the amount of accumulated fatigue and decreased attentiveness of the driver based on the information from the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and other vehicle information, and encourages the driver to take a rest using an indication on the multi-information display and a warning sound.

Use the DAA on expressways or highways.

Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-157.



### **! WARNING**

#### **Do not rely completely on DAA and always drive carefully:**

*The DAA detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness and encourages the driver to take a rest, however, it is not designed to prevent the vehicle from straying. If you rely too much on the DAA it could lead to an accident. Drive carefully and operate the steering wheel appropriately.*

*In addition, the system may not be able to detect driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness correctly depending on the traffic and driving conditions. The driver must take sufficient rest in consideration of safer driving.*

#### **NOTE**

- *The DAA operates when all of the following conditions are met.*

- The vehicle speed is about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 86 mph).
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines.
- The system has completed learning of the driver's driving data.
- The DAA does not operate under the following conditions.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 65 km/h (40 mph).
  - The vehicle speed exceeds about 140 km/h (86 mph)
  - The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
  - The vehicle is changing lanes.
  - The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The DAA may not operate normally under the following conditions.
  - White (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or fading/patchiness.
  - The vehicle is jolted or swayed continuously by strong winds or rough roads.
  - The vehicle is driven aggressively.
  - When making frequent lane changes.
- The DAA detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness based on the driving data when the vehicle is driven at about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 86 mph) for about 20 minutes. The driving data will be reset under the following conditions.
  - The vehicle is stopped for 15 minutes or longer.
  - The vehicle is driven at less than about 65 km/h (40 mph) for about 30 minutes.
  - The ignition is switched off.
- After the DAA has displayed the first message encouraging rest, it does not display the next one until 45 minutes have passed.

## ▼ Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Display (White)

When the system detects driver fatigue or decreased attentiveness, it activates the warning sound and displays an alert in the multi-information display.



**Driver Attention Alert**  
**Time for a break**

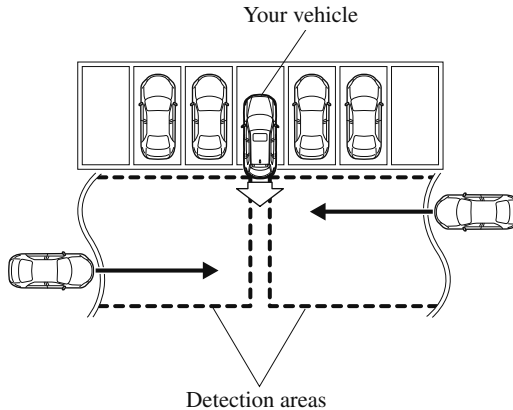
## ▼ Cancelling Driver Attention Alert (DAA)

The DAA can be set to not activate. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

## Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)\*

The RCTA system is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides while the vehicle is reversing by alerting the driver to the presence of vehicles approaching the rear of the vehicle.

The RCTA system detects vehicles approaching from the rear left and right sides of the vehicle, and the rear of the vehicle while the vehicle is being reversed out of a parking space, and notifies the driver of possible danger using the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights and the warning buzzer.



### **RCTA operation**

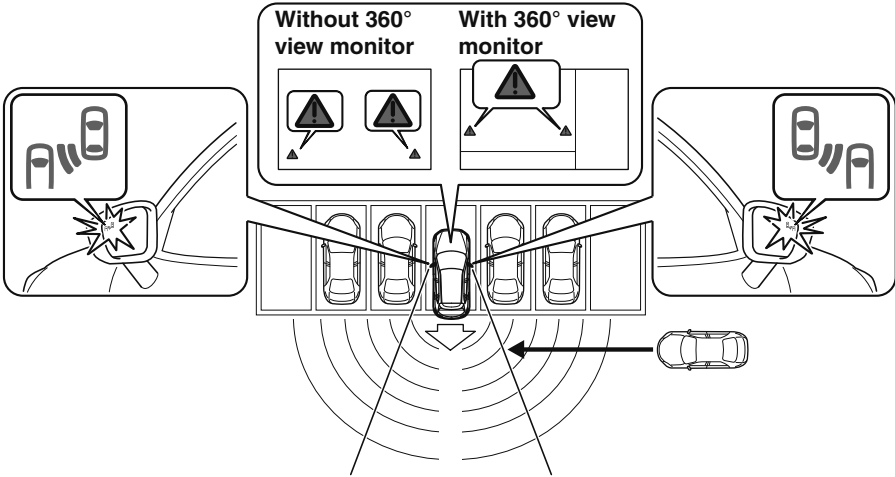
1. The RCTA system operates when the selector lever is shifted to the reverse (R) position.
2. If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights flashes and the warning beep is activated simultaneously.

#### **(With rear view monitor)**

The RCTA warning indication in the rearview monitor also synchronizes with the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator light on the door mirrors.

#### **(With 360° view monitor)**

The RCTA warning indication in the 360° view monitor also synchronizes with the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator light on the door mirrors.



## **⚠ WARNING**

**Always check the surrounding area visually before actually putting the vehicle in reverse:**

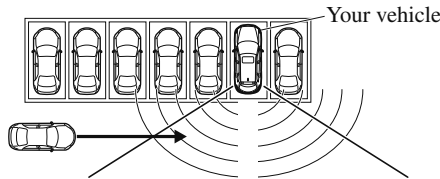
The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at the rear when putting the vehicle in reverse. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights may not flash or it might be delayed even though a vehicle is behind your vehicle. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

### **NOTE**

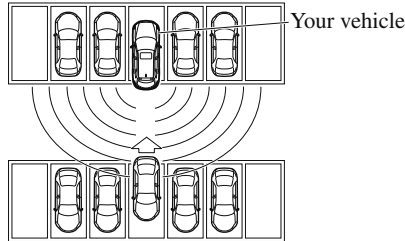
- In the following cases, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Dealer as soon as possible.
- Some problem with the system including the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights has occurred.
- A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.
- There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear).
- Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.



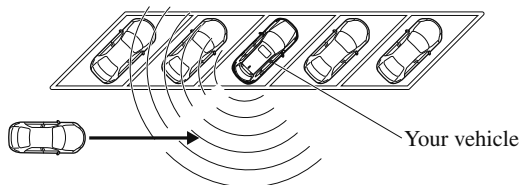
- The temperature near the radar sensors becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.
- The battery voltage has decreased.
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.
  - The vehicle speed when reversing is about 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.
  - The radar sensor (rear) detection area is obstructed by a nearby wall or parked vehicle. (Reverse the vehicle to a position where the radar sensor detection area is no longer obstructed.)



- A vehicle is approaching directly from the rear of your vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked on a slant.



- Directly after the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system becomes operable using the personalisation feature.
- Radio wave interference from a radar sensor equipped on a nearby parked vehicle.
- In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flashing of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors.
  - Snow or ice adheres to the door mirrors.
  - The front door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.

## **i-ACTIVSENSE**

---

- *Turn off the RCTA system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.*

## Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)\*

The MRCC system is designed to maintain headway control\*<sup>1</sup> with a vehicle ahead according to your vehicle's speed using a radar sensor (front) to detect the distance to the vehicle ahead and a preset vehicle speed without you having to use the accelerator or brake pedals.

\*<sup>1</sup> Headway Control: Control of the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead detected by the MRCC system.

Additionally, if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead such as if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a warning sound and a warning indication in the display are activated simultaneously to alert you to maintain a sufficient distance between the vehicles. Also refer to the following before using the MRCC.

- Radar sensor (front) (page 4-162)

### **WARNING**

#### **Do not rely completely on the MRCC:**

*The MRCC system has detection limitations depending on the type of vehicle ahead and its conditions, the weather conditions, and the road conditions. Additionally, the system may be unable to decelerate sufficiently to avoid hitting the vehicle ahead if the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly or another vehicle cuts into the driving lane, which could result in an accident.*

*Always drive carefully and verify the surrounding conditions and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.*

#### **Do not use the MRCC system in the following locations, using the MRCC system at the following locations may result in an unexpected accident:**

- *General roads other than highways (Driving under these conditions using the MRCC system is not possible.)*
- *Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy and there is insufficient space between vehicles.*
- *Roads where frequent and repetitive acceleration and deceleration occur (Driving under these conditions using the MRCC system is not possible.)*
- *When entering and exiting interchanges, service areas, and parking areas of highways (If you exit a highway while headway control is in use, the vehicle ahead will no longer be tracked and your vehicle may accelerate to the set speed.)*
- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads (Tyres could spin causing you to lose vehicle control, or the stop hold control may not operate.)*
- *Long, descending slopes (to maintain distance between vehicles, the system automatically and continuously applies the brakes which could result in the loss of brake power.)*

➤ *Slopes with a steep gradient (The vehicle ahead may not be detected correctly, your vehicle may slide while stopped by the stop hold control, and it may accelerate suddenly after it starts moving.)*

**For safety purposes, switch the MRCC system off when it is not being used.**



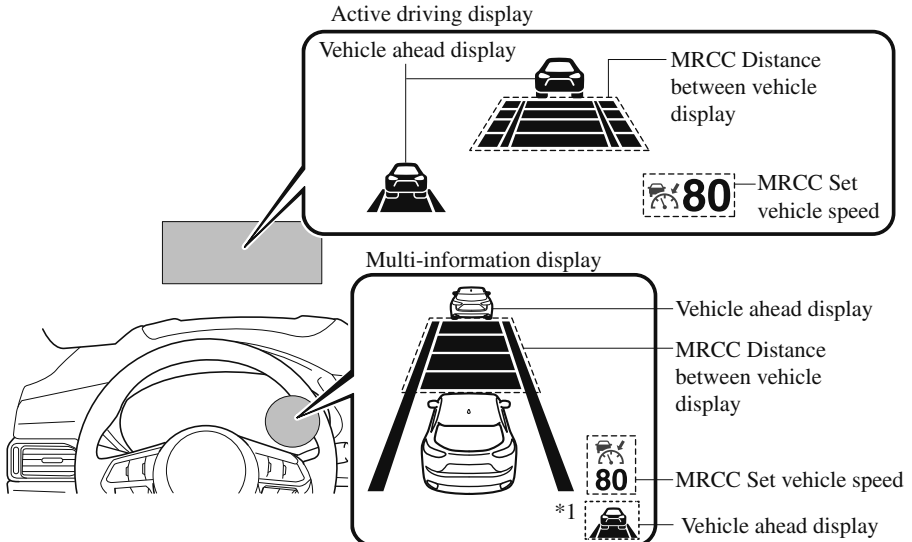
*If your vehicle is towed or you are towing something, switch the MRCC system off to prevent a miss-operation.*

## **NOTE**

- *The MRCC system does not detect the following as physical objects.*
  - *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction*
  - *Pedestrians*
  - *Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)*
  - *If a vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely low speed, the system may not detect it correctly.*
- *During headway control travel, do not set the system for detection of two-wheeled vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.*
- *Do not use the MRCC system under conditions in which close proximity warnings are frequently activated.*
- *During headway control travel, the system accelerates and decelerates your vehicle in conjunction with the speed of the vehicle ahead. However, if it is necessary to accelerate for a lane change or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly causing you to close in on the vehicle rapidly, accelerate using the accelerator pedal or decelerate using the brake pedal depending on the conditions.*
- *While the MRCC system is in use, it does not cancel even if the selector lever is operated and any intended engine braking will not occur. If deceleration is required, lower the vehicle speed setting or depress the brake pedal.*
- *The sound of the automatic brakes operating may be heard, however, it does not indicate a problem.*
- *The brake lights turn on while the MRCC automatic braking is operating, however, they may not turn on while the vehicle is on a downslope at the set vehicle speed or travelling at a constant speed and following a vehicle ahead.*

### ▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Display Indication

The MRCC setting status and operation conditions are indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display.



\*1: If the indication on the active driving display has been turned off using the personalisation features, the indication is displayed on the multi-information display.

If there is a problem with the MRCC system, a message is displayed on the multi-information display. Check the centre display to verify the problem and then have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Refer to Message Indicated on Display on page 7-36.

**▼ Close Proximity Warning**

If your vehicle rapidly closes in on the vehicle ahead because the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly while you are travelling in headway control, the warning sound activates and the brake warning is indicated in the display. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead. Additionally, keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.

**Multi-information Display**

A rectangular display with a dark background and a light border. The word "BRAKE!" is written in white, bold, uppercase letters in the center.

**Active Driving Display**

A rectangular display with a white background and a black border. The word "BRAKE!" is written in black, bold, uppercase letters in the center.

**NOTE**

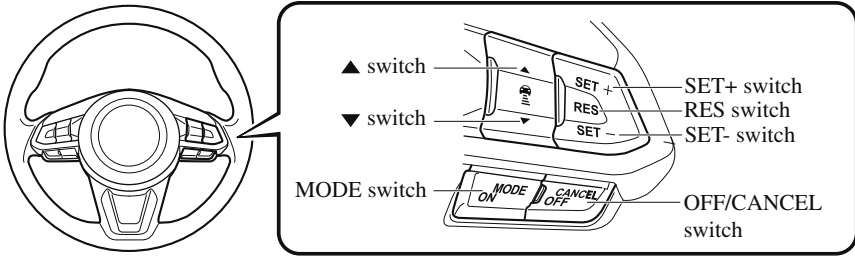
*In the following cases, the warnings and brakes may not operate even if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead.*

- You are driving your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
- Directly after the MRCC system has been set.*
- Directly after the accelerator pedal is released.*
- Another vehicle cuts into the driving lane.*

**▼ Setting the System**

The MRCC system operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Vehicle speed is 30 km/h (19 mph) to 145 km/h (90 mph)
- The MRCC is turned on.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The electric parking brake (EPB) is released (electric parking brake (EPB) indicator light is turned off).
- There is no problem with the DSC.
- All the doors are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The selector lever is in the drive (D) position or manual (M) position (manual mode).

**Turning on the system**

When the MODE switch is pressed once, the MRCC system turns on, and the MRCC main indication (white) turns on and the vehicle speed and the distance between the vehicles while in headway control can be set.



In addition, the MRCC system display indication is displayed on the multi-information display and the active driving display at the same time.

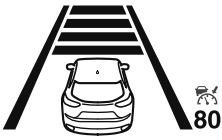

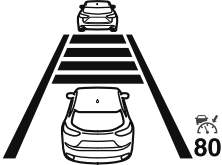

***NOTE***

- *If the ignition is switched off while the MRCC system is operating, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.*
- *The MRCC can switch to the Cruise Control Function.*  
*Refer to Cruise Control Function on page 4-107.*

**How to set the speed**

1. Adjust the vehicle speed to the desired setting using the accelerator pedal.
2. Headway control begins when the SET+ or SET- switch is pressed.  
The set speed and the inter-vehicle distance display filled with white lines is displayed.  
The MRCC main indication (white) switches to the MRCC set indication (green) at the same time.



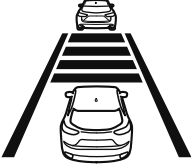

Travel status	Indication on multi-information display	Indication on active driving display
During travel at constant speed		
During travel under headway control		

**NOTE**

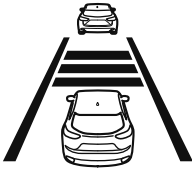
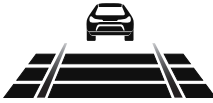
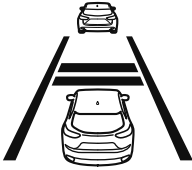
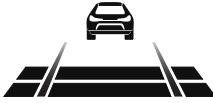
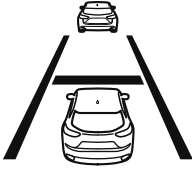

- If a vehicle ahead is detected while travelling at a constant speed, the vehicle-ahead indication is displayed and headway control is performed. Additionally, when a vehicle ahead is no longer detected, the vehicle-ahead indication turns off and the system switches back to travel at constant speed.
- The lowest possible speed which can be set on the MRCC system is 30 km/h (19 mph).
- Headway control is not possible if the vehicle ahead is driving faster than your vehicle's set speed. Adjust the system to the desired vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal.

**How to set the distance-between-vehicles during headway control**

The distance-between-vehicles is set to a shorter distance by pressing the ▼ switch. The distance-between-vehicles is set to a longer distance by pressing the ▲ switch. The distance-between-vehicles can be set to 4 levels; Long, medium, short, and extremely short distance.

Distance-between-vehicles guideline (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Indication on multi-information display	Indication on active driving display* <sup>1</sup>
Long (about 50 m (164 ft))		



Distance-between-vehicles guide-line (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Indication on multi-information display	Indication on active driving display*1
Medium (about 40 m (131 ft))		
Short (about 30 m (98 ft))		
Extremely short (about 25 m (82 ft))		

\*1 Displays a pop-up image in the active driving display only when the driver operates the switch.

**NOTE**

- The distance-between-vehicles differs depending on the vehicle speed, and the slower the vehicle speed, the shorter the distance.
- When the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF and then the engine is started again, the system automatically sets the distance-between-vehicles to the previous setting.

**How to change the set vehicle speed**

**To accelerate/decelerate using the SET switch**

When you press the SET+ switch, the vehicle accelerates and when you press the SET- switch, it decelerates.

Short press	5 km/h (5 mph)
Long press	10 km/h (5 mph)

**NOTE**

For example, the set vehicle speed is changed by pressing the SET switch four times as follows:

The vehicle speed accelerates or decelerates by 20 km/h (20 mph).

**To increase speed using accelerator pedal**

Depress the accelerator pedal and press and release the SET+ switch or SET- switch at the desired speed. If the switch is

not operated, the system returns to the set speed after you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.



*The warnings and brake control do not operate while the accelerator pedal is depressed.*

### **NOTE**

- *When accelerating using the SET+ switch while in headway control, the set vehicle speed can be adjusted but acceleration is not possible. If there is no longer a vehicle ahead, acceleration continues until reaching the set vehicle speed. For the set vehicle speed, check the set vehicle speed indication in the display.*
- *When depressing the accelerator pedal, the inter-vehicle distance indication in the display changes to the white-line indication.*

### **Cancelling the system**

When the following operations are performed, the MRCC system is cancelled, and the MRCC set indication (green) switches to the MRCC main indication (white) at the same time.

- The OFF/CANCEL switch is pressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The electric parking brake (EPB) is applied.
- The selector lever is in the P (Park), N (Neutral), or R (Reverse) position.

Under the following conditions, the MRCC cancel indication is displayed in

the multi-information display and a single beep sound is heard.

- The DSC has operated.
- The Smart Brake Support (SBS) has operated.
- The Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) has operated.
- When travelling on a downslope for a long period of time.
- There is a problem with the system.
- The radar sensor (front) cannot detect target objects (during rain, fog, snow or other inclement weather conditions, or when the radiator grille is dirty).
- The vehicle speed decreases to less than 25 km (16 mph).
- Any of the doors is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.

### **Resuming control**

If the MRCC system is cancelled, you can resume control at the previously set speed by pressing the RES switch and after all of the operation conditions have been met.

### **NOTE**





*If the set speed is not indicated in the display, the control does not resume even if the RES switch is pressed.*

### **Turning off the system**

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch two times while the MRCC system is operating to switch off the system.

### ▼ Shift-up/Shift-down Request Display

The shift-up or shift-down request display in the active driving display or multi-information display may be indicated while the MRCC is operating. When this occurs, shift gears because the gear position is not appropriate.

Request	Indication on display	
	Multi-information display	Active driving display
Shift up	 Shift Up	
Shift down	 Shift Down	

#### **NOTE**

*If the gears are not shifted up/down even though the shift-up/down request indication is displayed, load will be applied to the engine and the MRCC system may be automatically cancelled or engine damage could occur.*

### ▼ Cruise Control Function

While this function is operating, the headway control operation is cancelled and only the cruise control function operates.

The vehicle speed can be set more than about 25 km/h (16 mph).

Use the cruise control function on expressways and other highways which do not require a lot of repeated acceleration and deceleration.



***Do not use the cruise control function in the following locations:***

*Otherwise, it could lead to an accident.*

- *Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy and there is insufficient space between vehicles. (Driving under these conditions using the cruise control function is not possible)*
- *Steep down slopes (Set speed may be exceeded because sufficient engine braking cannot be applied)*
- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads (Tyres could spin causing you to lose vehicle control)*

***Always drive carefully:***

*The warnings and brake control will not operate after the headway control function is cancelled and the system is switched to only the cruise control function. Depress the brake pedal to decelerate according to the surrounding conditions while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead and always driving carefully.*

**Switching to cruise control function**

When the MODE switch is pressed until the system switches to the cruise main indication (white) while the MRCC system is turned on, the system switches to the cruise control function.

When the system switches to the cruise control function, the indicator and multi-information display notify the driver as follows:

- The MRCC set indication (green) or the MRCC main indication (white) is turned off, and the cruise main indication (white) is turned on.
- A message is displayed in the multi-information display.

***Always turn off the cruise control function when it is not in use:***

*Leaving the cruise control function turned on when it is not in use is dangerous as it could operate unexpectedly, resulting in an accident.*

**How to set the speed**

Adjust the system to the desired vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal.

When the SET+ or SET- switch is pressed, the cruise set indication (green) is turned on and headway control begins.

***NOTE***

- *The system may not be able to maintain the set speed constantly depending on driving conditions such as steep up or down slopes.*
- *The speed will continue increasing while the SET+ switch is pressed and held. The speed will continue decreasing while the SET- switch is pressed and held.*

**How to increase the set speed**

The set speed can be increased using the following operations:

**To increase speed using the SET+ switch**

Press and hold the SET+ switch and release the switch at the desired speed. The set speed can be adjusted incrementally (1 km/h (1 mph) increments) by pressing the switch and releasing it immediately. For example, if the switch is pressed 4 times, the set speed increases by about 4 km/h (4 mph).

**To increase speed using accelerator pedal**

Depress the accelerator pedal and press the SET+ or SET- switch at the desired speed.

If the switch is not operated, the system returns to the set speed after you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.

**How to Decrease the Set Speed**

Press the SET- switch continuously and release the switch at the desired speed.

The set speed can be adjusted incrementally (1 km/h (1 mph) increments) by pressing the switch and releasing it immediately. For example, if the switch is pressed 4 times, the set vehicle speed decreases by about 4 km/h (4 mph).

### **Cancelling the function**

#### **Cancelling using OFF/CANCEL switch**

When the OFF/CANCEL switch is pressed once, the cruise control function is cancelled.

#### **Cancelling using MODE switch**

When the MODE switch is pressed, the cruise control function is cancelled and the headway control function is made available for operation.

The cruise control function is cancelled automatically in the following cases. If the RES switch is pressed while the vehicle speed is 25 km/h (16 mph) or higher, the speed returns to the original set speed.

- The OFF/CANCEL switch is pressed once.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The selector lever is shifted to P or N position.

### ***NOTE***

- *If the vehicle speed decreases by about 15 km/h (9.4 mph) or more than the set speed, the cruise control function may be cancelled.*

- *When the vehicle speed is less than 21 km/h (13 mph), the cruise control function is cancelled. In this case, the vehicle speed will not return to the original set speed even if the vehicle is accelerated to 25 km/h (16 mph) or higher and the RES switch is pressed. Reset the cruise control function.*

## Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)\*

The LAS & LDWS alerts the driver that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane and it provides steering assistance to help the driver stay within the vehicle lanes.

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects the white lines (yellow lines) of the vehicle lane in which the vehicle is travelling and if the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it operates the electric power steering to assist the driver's steering operation. The system also alerts the driver by activating a lane departure warning sound, vibrating the steering wheel, and indicating an alert in the display. Use the system when you drive the vehicle on roads with white (yellow) lines such as expressways and highways. Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-157.

The steering wheel operation of the LAS & LDWS has "Late" and "Early" steering assist timing settings.

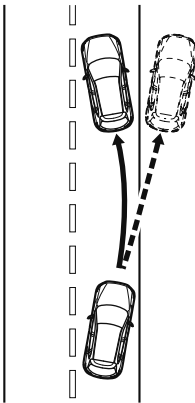
For the "Late" setting, the system assists the driver's steering operation if there is the possibility of the vehicle deviating from its lane.

For the "Early" setting, the system assists the driver's steering operation constantly so that the vehicle stays near the centre of the vehicle lane.

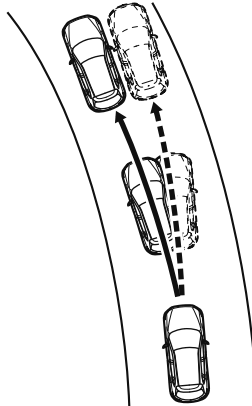
"Late" and "Early" timing can be changed (timing at which steering operation assist is provided) by changing the setting.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

"Late" function



"Early" function



**! WARNING****Do not rely completely on the LAS & LDWS:**

- *The LAS & LDWS is not an automatic driving system. In addition, the system is not designed to compensate for a driver's lack of caution, and over-reliance on the system could lead to an accident.*
- *The detection ability of the LAS & LDWS is limited. Always stay on course using the steering wheel and drive with care.*

**Do not use the LAS & LDWS in the following cases:**

*The system may not operate adequately according to the actual driving conditions, resulting in an accident.*

- *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
- *Driving under bad weather conditions (rain, fog, and snow).*
- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads.*
- *Roads with heavy traffic and insufficient distance between vehicles.*
- *Roads with no white (yellow) lane lines.*
- *Narrow roads resulting from road construction or lane closures.*
- *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from road construction where there may be multiple white (yellow) lane lines or they are interrupted.*
- *Vehicle is driven on roads other than expressways and highways.*
- *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
- *Tyres of a different specified size are used, such as an emergency spare tyre.*

**! CAUTION**

*Heed the following cautions so that the LAS & LDWS can operate normally.*

- *Do not modify the suspensions.*
- *Always use wheels of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for tyre replacement.*

**NOTE**

- *When the direction indicator lever is operated for a lane change, the LAS & LDWS is automatically disabled. The LAS & LDWS becomes operational again when the direction indicator lever is returned and the system detects white (yellow) lane lines while the vehicle is being driven normally within its vehicle lane.*

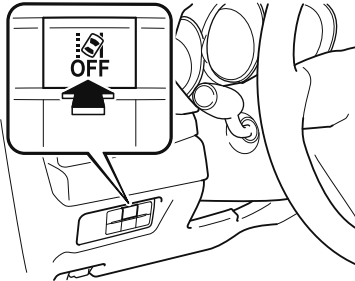
- *If the steering wheel, accelerator pedal, or brake pedal is operated abruptly and the vehicle moves close to a white (yellow) line, the system determines that the driver is making a lane change and the LAS & LDWS operation is temporarily cancelled. The LAS & LDWS becomes operational again when the system detects white (yellow) lane lines while the vehicle is being driven normally within its vehicle lane.*
- *If the vehicle deviates from its lane repeatedly within a short period of time, the LAS & LDWS may not operate.*
- *When white (yellow) lane lines are not detected, the LAS & LDWS does not operate.*
- *Under the following conditions, the LAS & LDWS may not be able to detect white (yellow) lane lines correctly and it may not operate normally.*
  - *If an object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.*
  - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat and the vehicle is tilted.*
  - *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
  - *Tyres other than conventional tyres are equipped.*
  - *Vehicle is driven on an intersection or junction, or on a forked road.*
  - *The white (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or fading/patchiness.*
  - *A vehicle in front of your vehicle is running near a white (yellow) lane line making it less visible.*
  - *A white (yellow) lane line is less visible because of bad weather (rain, fog, or snow).*
  - *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from construction where there may be multiple white (yellow) lane lines or they are interrupted.*
  - *A misleading line is picked up on the road such as a temporary line for construction, or because of shade, lingering snow, or grooves filled with water.*
  - *The surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.*
  - *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.*
  - *The windscreen is dirty or foggy.*
  - *The windscreen, camera is fogged (water droplets).*
  - *Back-light is reflected off the road surface.*
  - *The road surface is wet and shiny after rain, or there are puddles on the road.*
  - *The shade of a guardrail parallel to a white (yellow) lane line is cast on the road.*
  - *The width of the driving lane is narrow or wide.*
  - *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
  - *The road is excessively uneven.*
  - *The vehicle is shaken after hitting a road bump.*
  - *There are 2 or more adjacent white (yellow) lane lines.*



· There are various road markings or lane markings of various shapes near an intersection.

### ▼ System Operation

Make sure that the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off. When the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light is turned on, press the switch and make sure that the indicator light turns off.



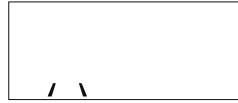
When the ignition is switched ON, the system goes on standby. Drive the vehicle in the centre of the vehicle lane while the system is on standby. When all of the following conditions are met, and the system becomes operational.

- The engine is running.
- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides.
- The driver is operating the steering wheel.
- The driving lane is neither narrow nor wide.

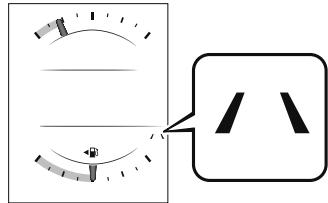
When the system becomes operational, the LAS & LDWS indication (white) is

displayed on the multi-information display or active driving display.

#### Active Driving Display



#### Multi-information Display



If the indication on the active driving display has been turned off using the personalisation features, the LAS & LDWS indication (white) is displayed on the multi-information display.

#### NOTE

When only a vehicle lane line (yellow) on either the left or right is detected, the LAS & LDWS indication on the active driving display turns off.

#### Active Driving Display

Detection only on either left or right

Detects on both left and right sides

No indication



#### Multi-information Display

Detection only on either left or right

Detects on both left and right sides



(Grey)



(White)

If the indication on the active driving display has been turned off using the personalisation features, the LAS & LDWS indication on the multi-information display is displayed in grey and the system goes on standby.

The LAS & LDWS goes on stand-by status in the following cases:

- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The ABS/TCS is operating.
- The TCS is turned off.  
(If the TCS is turned off while the system is operational, a warning beep is heard and the system goes on standby.)
- The vehicle is making a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.

### **NOTE**

- **(When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Late”)**
  - The LAS & LDWS does not operate until the system detects white (yellow) lane lines on either the left or right.
  - When the system detects a white (yellow) lane line on one side only, the system will not operate the steering wheel operation assist and the warning for the lane line on the side that is not being detected. The steering wheel operation assist and the warning is only for a lane deviation on the side that is being detected.

- **(When the timing of the steering assist is set to “Early”)**

- When the steering assist timing is set to “Early”, the LAS & LDWS does not operate until the system detects white (yellow) lane lines on the left and right. The steering wheel operation assist timing operates under the “Late” condition only when the system detects a white (yellow) line on either the left or right.
- The steering wheel operation assist is performed so that the vehicle remains near the centre of the driving lane, however, depending on conditions such as the road curvature, road slope and undulations, and vehicle speed, the system may not be able to keep the vehicle near the centre of the driving lane.
- If the driver takes his or her hands off the steering wheel (not holding the steering wheel), the warning sound is activated and an alert is indicated in the multi-information display or the active driving display.

#### **Multi-information Display**



**Lane-keep Assist System.  
Please Hold Steering Wheel**

#### **Active Driving Display**

Please hold steering wheel

If the steering wheel is held lightly, or depending on the road conditions, the system may detect that you have released the steering wheel (not holding the steering wheel) even if you are holding it, and display a message in the multi-information display or the active driving display.

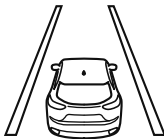
- The timing at which the lane departure warning is activated and the steering wheel operation assist is performed varies.
- The following settings for the LAS & LDWS can be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.
  - Steering operation assist operational/non-operational
  - Cancel sensitivity (likelihood of steering assist)

### Vehicle lane line display

When the LAS & LDWS becomes operational while on standby, the vehicle lane lines are displayed in the multi-information display and the active driving display. In the vehicle lane lines display indicating the operation status, the colour of the vehicle lane lines being detected changes to white.

#### (Stand-by status)

##### Multi-information Display

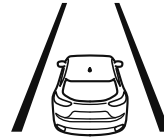


##### Active Driving Display

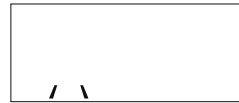


#### (Operational status)

##### Multi-information Display



##### Active Driving Display



#### Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LAS & LDWS is automatically cancelled, the LAS & LDWS warning indication (amber) turns on, and an alert is displayed. When the LAS & LDWS become operational, the system turns back on automatically.

- The temperature inside the camera is high or low.
- The windscreen around the camera is foggy.
- The windscreen around the camera is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

#### Auto cancel of warning/steering assist

When the following operations are performed, the LAS & LDWS operation is cancelled automatically. The LAS & LDWS resumes automatically after the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is operated.
- The accelerator pedal is operated. (To cancel the automatic sensitivity cancel function, deselect “Cancel sensitivity” in the personalisation features setting.)
- The direction indicator lever is operated.

- The vehicle crosses a lane line.

## NOTE

- After the operation, the LAS & LDWS operation may not operate for a period of 5 seconds at the most until the lane lines are detected.
- Under the following conditions, the LAS & LDWS cancels the warning/steering assist automatically.
  - The driver takes his/her hands off the steering wheel.  
(The LAS & LDWS is designed to assist the driver's steering operation and it will resume operation automatically when the driver holds the steering wheel.)
  - The TCS OFF switch is pressed to cancel the TCS.

## Steering operation assist OFF (non-operational)

The steering operation assist for the LAS & LDWS can be changed to non-operational (OFF).

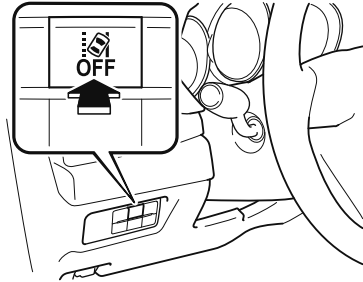
Refer to Setting Change (Personalisation Features) on page 9-9.

When the steering operation assist has been changed to inoperable (OFF), only the lane departure warning is operational.

### System operation

Make sure that the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off. When the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light turns on, press the switch

and make sure that the indicator light turns off.



Drive the vehicle in the centre of the driving lane while the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off.

The system becomes operational when all of the following conditions are met.

- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides or on either side.
- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.
- The vehicle is driven on a straight road or road with gentle curves.
- The engine is running.

The LAS & LDWS goes on stand-by status in the following cases:

- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The vehicle is making a sharp curve.
- The vehicle is making a curve at an inappropriate speed.

## NOTE

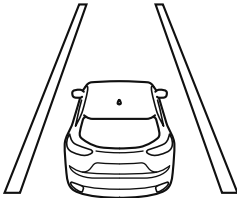
- The LAS & LDWS remains on stand-by until it detects white (yellow) lines on both the left and right sides, or on either side.

- When the system detects a white (yellow) lane line on one side only, the system will not activate warnings for the lane line on the side that is not being detected.
- The distance and warning sensitivity (likelihood of a warning) which the system uses to determine the possibility of a lane departure can be changed. Refer to *Setting Change (Personalisation Features)* on page 9-9.

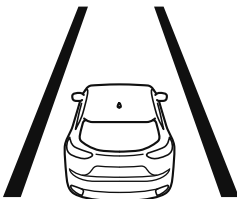
### Vehicle lane line display

When the LAS & LDWS becomes operational while on standby, the vehicle lane lines are displayed in the multi-information display. The system changes to operational status display when the system detects a white (yellow) line on either the left or right.

#### (Stand-by status)



#### (Operational status)



### Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LAS & LDWS is automatically cancelled, the LAS & LDWS warning indication (amber) turns on, and an alert is displayed. When the

LAS & LDWS become operational, the system turns back on automatically.

- The temperature inside the camera is high or low.
- The windscreen around the camera is foggy.
- The windscreen around the camera is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

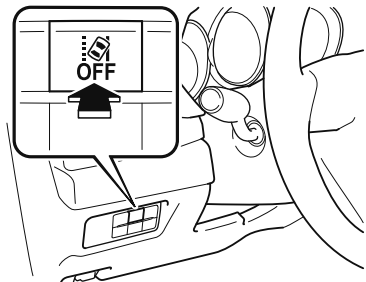
### (Auto cancel of warnings)

When the following operations are performed, the LAS & LDWS determines that the driver intends to make a lane change and the system operation is cancelled automatically. The LAS & LDWS resumes automatically after the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed. (To cancel the automatic sensitivity cancel function, deselect “Warning sensitivity” in the personalisation features setting.)
- The direction indicator lever is operated.
- The vehicle crosses a lane line.

### ▼ System Cancellation

When the LAS & LDWS is turned off, press the LAS & LDWS OFF switch.



The LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light turns on.



## **NOTE**

*· In the following cases, the LAS & LDWS is cancelled automatically and the LAS & LDWS OFF indication is displayed in the multi-information display. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

- There is a malfunction in the power steering.*
- There is a malfunction in the TCS.*
- There is a malfunction in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF with the lane-keep system operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.*

When the LAS & LDWS is turned off, the vehicle lane line indication in the multi-information display and the active driving display turn off.

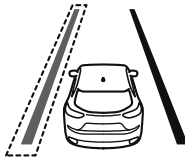
## ▼ Lane Departure Warning

If the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, the lane departure warning (beep sound, rumble sound\*1, or steering wheel vibration) is activated and the direction in which the system determines that the vehicle may deviate is indicated in the multi-information display or the active driving display.

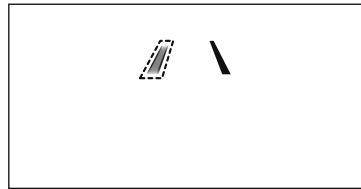
For vehicles equipped with the multi-information display, the direction which the system determined that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane is indicated in the multi-information display.

For vehicles equipped with the active driving display, the colour of the lane line in the direction which the system determined that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane changes from white to amber and the vehicle lane line flashes.

**Multi-information Display**



**Active Driving Display**



### NOTE

- If you have set the lane departure warning sound to the beep sound/rumble sound\*1 setting, the warning sound may not be heard depending on the surrounding noise conditions.
- If you have set the lane departure warning system to the steering wheel vibrations setting, the vibration may not be felt depending on the road surface conditions.
- When the setting for the steering operation assist is changed to operational, the warnings can be set to activate/not activate. (When the setting for the steering operation assist is changed to non-operational, the warnings cannot be set to not activate.)

Refer to Setting Change (Personalisation Features) on page 9-9.

- The LAS & LDWS can be changed to the following settings regardless of whether the steering operation assist has been set to operational/non-operational. Always check the setting status when driving the vehicle and make setting changes if necessary.

Refer to Setting Change (Personalisation Features) on page 9-9.

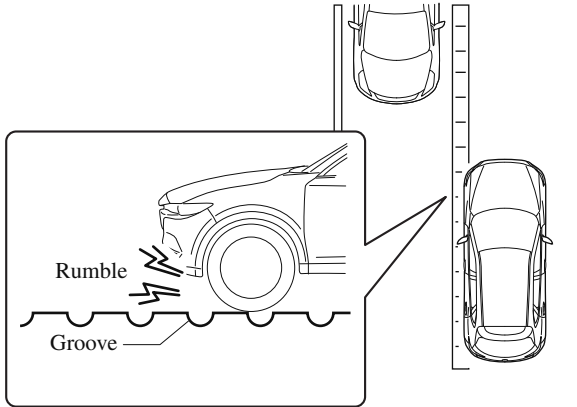
- Steering wheel vibration: Strong/weak
- Warning sound volume
- Types of warnings (steering wheel vibration/beep sound/rumble sound\*1)

\*1 A rumble strip is a series of grooves in the road pavement surface positioned at specific intervals, and when the vehicle passes over it a vibration and rumble sound is produced which alerts the driver that the vehicle is departing from the lane.

# i-ACTIVSENSE

---

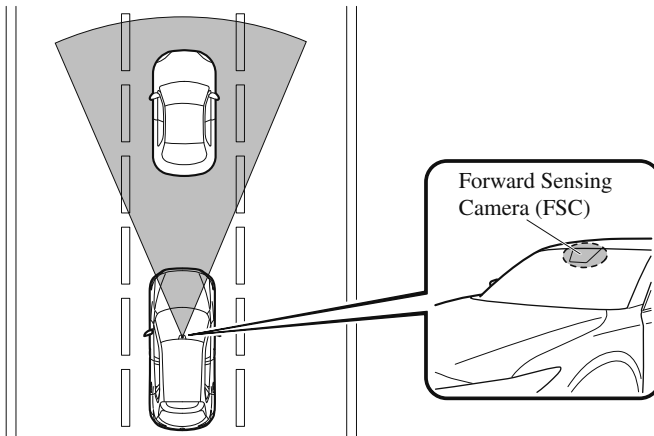
*The rumble sound is a reproduction of the sound which occurs when a vehicle passes over a rumble strip.*





## Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)\*

The Advanced SCBS alerts the driver of a possible collision using the display and a warning sound when the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects a vehicle ahead or pedestrian and determines that a collision with the object is unavoidable while the vehicle is driven at a vehicle speed of about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph) if the object is a vehicle ahead and about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph) if the object is a pedestrian. In addition, the system reduces damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (Advanced SCBS brake) when the system determines that a collision is unavoidable. In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (Advanced SCBS brake assist))



### **! WARNING**

**Do not rely completely on the Advanced SCBS system:**

- The Advanced SCBS system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.
- The Advanced SCBS system operates in response to a vehicle ahead or a pedestrian. The system does not operate in response to obstructions such as a wall, 2-wheeled vehicles, or animals.

### **! CAUTION**

In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:

- *The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is on a chassis roller.*
- *When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.*

Refer to *Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) System Operation* on page 4-123 on how to turn off the Advanced SCBS system.

## **NOTE**

- *The Advanced SCBS system will operate under the following conditions.*
  - *The engine is running.*
  - *The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning indication(amber) does not illuminate.*
  - **(Object is vehicle ahead)**
    - The vehicle speed is between about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph).*
  - **(Object is a pedestrian)**
    - The vehicle speed is between about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph).*
  - *The Advanced SCBS system is not turned off.*
- *Under the following conditions, the Advanced SCBS system may not operate normally:*
  - *The Advanced SCBS system will not operate if the driver is deliberately performing driving operations (accelerator pedal and steering wheel).*
  - *If there is the possibility of partial contact with a vehicle ahead.*
  - *The vehicle is driven on a slippery road surface such as wet roads or icy or snow-bound roads.*
  - *The braking performance is adversely affected due to cold temperatures or wet brakes.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
  - *The brake pedal is depressed.*
  - *The steering wheel is being operated.*
  - *The selector lever is being operated.*
- *In the following cases, the Advanced SCBS may operate.*
  - *Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve.*
  - *Vehicles passing in the opposite lane while making a curve.*
  - *When passing through a toll gate.*
  - *When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, or tunnels.*
  - *If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.*
  - *2-wheeled vehicles, animals, or standing trees.*

### ▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the multi-information display.

#### Multi-information Display

**BRAKE!**

#### Active Driving Display

**BRAKE!**

#### **NOTE**

The operation distance and volume of the collision warning can be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

### ▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

The automatic brake operation display is indicated on the multi-information display after the Advanced SCBS is operated.



**SCBS**

**Automatic Brake**

#### **NOTE**

- The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the Advanced SCBS brake or brake assist (Advanced SCBS brake assist) is operating.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the Advanced SCBS operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds 1 time after about 2 seconds and the Advanced SCBS brake is automatically released.

### ▼ Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) System Operation

The Advanced SCBS system can be temporarily deactivated.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

When the Advanced SCBS system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



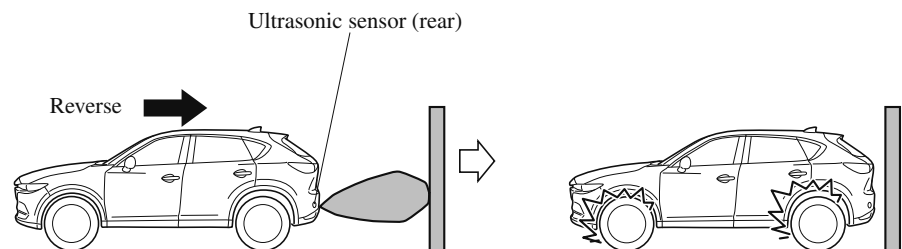
When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

#### **NOTE**

When the Advanced SCBS system is set to inoperable, the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system and the Smart Brake Support (SBS) are also set to inoperable.

## Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)\*

The SCBS R is a system which is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (SCBS brake) when the system's ultrasonic sensors detect an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle while driving at a speed of about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph) and the system determines that a collision is unavoidable.



### **⚠ WARNING**

#### **Do not rely completely on the SCBS R system:**

- *The SCBS R system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*
- *To assure the correct operation of the SCBS R, heed the following cautions.*
  - *Do not apply a sticker to an ultrasonic sensor (rear) (including transparent stickers). Otherwise, the ultrasonic sensor (rear) may not be able to detect vehicles or obstructions which could result in an accident.*
  - *Do not disassemble an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
  - *If cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris is visible around an ultrasonic sensor (rear), stop using the SCBS R system immediately and have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. If the vehicle continues to be driven with cracks or scratch marks left around an ultrasonic sensor, the system may operate unnecessarily and cause an unexpected accident. Refer to Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) System Operation on page 4-127.*
  - *Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for rear bumper replacement.*

#### **Do not modify the suspension:**

*If the vehicle height or inclination is changed, the SCBS R system may not operate correctly because it cannot detect obstructions correctly.*

**Do not apply a strong force to an ultrasonic sensor (rear):**

When washing the vehicle, do not spray highly pressurised water against an ultrasonic sensor (rear), or rub it strongly. In addition, do not hit the rear bumper forcefully when loading and unloading cargo. Otherwise, the sensors may not detect obstructions correctly which could cause the SCBS R system to not operate normally, or it could operate unnecessarily.



- When driving off-road in areas where there is grass or foliage, it is recommended that the SCBS R system be turned off.
- Always use tyres of the specified size and the same manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern on all 4 wheels. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. Otherwise, the SCBS R system may not operate normally.
- If ice or snow is stuck on the ultrasonic sensors (rear) they may not be able to detect obstructions correctly depending on the conditions. In such cases, the system may not be able to perform controls correctly. Always drive carefully and pay attention to the rear of the vehicle.

**NOTE**

- The vehicle posture changes depending on the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and steering wheel operations, which could make it difficult for the system to recognise an obstruction, or it could facilitate unnecessary detection. In such cases, the SCBS R may or may not operate.
- The SCBS R system will operate under the following conditions.
  - The engine is running.
  - The selector lever is in the R (reverse) position.
  - “Reverse Smart City Brake Support Malfunction” is not displayed in the multi-information display.
  - The vehicle speed is between about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph).
  - The SCBS R is not turned off.
  - The DSC is not malfunctioning.
- The SCBS R operates using ultrasonic sensors (rear) which detect obstructions at the rear by emitting ultrasonic waves and then receiving the returning waves reflected off the obstructions.
- In the following cases, the ultrasonic sensors (rear) cannot detect obstructions and the SCBS R may not operate.
  - The height of the obstruction is low such as low walls or trucks with low loading platforms.
  - The height of the obstruction is high such as trucks with high loading platforms.

- *The obstruction is small.*
  - *The obstruction is thin such as a signpost.*
  - *The obstruction is positioned away from the centre of the vehicle.*
  - *The surface of the obstruction is not pointed vertically relative to the vehicle.*
  - *The obstruction is soft such as a hanging curtain or snow stuck to a vehicle.*
  - *The obstruction is shaped irregularly.*
  - *The obstruction is extremely close.*
  - *In the following cases, the ultrasonic sensors (rear) cannot detect obstructions correctly and the SCBS R may not operate.*
    - *Something is stuck on the bumper near an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
    - *The steering wheel is turned sharply, or the brake or accelerator pedal is operated.*
    - *There is another obstruction near one obstruction.*
    - *During inclement weather such as rain, fog and snow.*
    - *High or low humidity.*
    - *High or low temperatures*
    - *Strong winds.*
    - *The path of travel is not flat.*
    - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat.*
    - *Objects such as a wireless aerial, fog light, or illuminated number plate is installed near an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
    - *The orientation of an ultrasonic sensor (rear) has deviated for reasons such as a collision.*
    - *The vehicle is affected by other sound waves such as the horn, engine noise, ultrasonic sensor of another vehicle.*
  - *In the following cases, an ultrasonic sensor (rear) may detect something as a target obstruction which could cause the SCBS R system to operate.*
    - *Driving on a steep slope.*
    - *Wheel blocks.*
    - *Hanging curtains, gate poles such as at toll gates and railroad crossing.*
    - *When travelling near objects such as foliage, barriers, vehicles, walls, and fences along a road.*
    - *When driving off-road in areas where there is grass and forage.*
    - *When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, and tunnels.*
    - *A towing bar is installed or a trailer is connected.*
  - *When the system operates, the user is notified by the multi-information display.*
  - *The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning indication (amber) turns on when the system has a malfunction.*
- Refer to Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-29.*

### ▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

“SCBS Automatic Brake” is indicated in the multi-information display after the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brakes is operated.



## SCBS Automatic Brake

### NOTE

- The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake is operating.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds one time after about 2 seconds and the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake is automatically released.

### ▼ Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) System Operation

The SCBS R system can be temporarily deactivated.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

When the SCBS R system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

### NOTE

When the SCBS R system is set to inoperable, Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) and the Smart Brake Support (SBS) are also set to inoperable.

## Smart Brake Support (SBS)\*

The SBS system alerts the driver of a possible collision using a display and warning sound if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determine that there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead while the vehicle is being driven at about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster). Furthermore, if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines that a collision is unavoidable, the automatic brake control is performed to reduce damage in the event of a collision.

In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (SBS brake assist))

### WARNING

#### **Do not rely completely on the SBS system and always drive carefully:**

*The SBS is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision, not avoid an accident. The ability to detect an obstruction is limited depending on the obstruction, weather conditions, or traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is mistakenly operated it could result in an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.*

### CAUTION

*In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:*

- *The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is on a chassis roller.*
- *When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.*

### **NOTE**

- *The SBS system operates when all of the following conditions are met:*
  - *The ignition is switched ON.*
  - *The SBS system is on.*
  - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).*
  - *The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).*
  - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is not operating.*
- *The SBS system may not operate under the following conditions:*
  - *If the vehicle is accelerated rapidly and it comes close to a vehicle ahead.*
  - *The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
  - *The brake pedal is depressed.*
  - *The steering wheel is being operated.*
  - *The selector lever is being operated.*
  - *The direction indicator is being used.*
  - *When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off.*



- When warnings and messages, such as a dirty windscreen, related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are being displayed in the multi-information display.
  - Although the objects which activate the system are four-wheeled vehicles, the radar sensor (front) could detect the following objects, determine them to be an obstruction, and operate the SBS system.
    - Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve (including guardrails and snow banks).
    - A vehicle appears in the opposite lane while cornering or rounding a curve.
    - When crossing a narrow bridge.
    - When passing under a low gate or through a tunnel or narrow gate.
    - When entering an underground parking area.
    - Metal objects, bumps, or protruding objects on the road.
    - If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.
    - When driving in areas where there is high grass or forage.
    - Two-wheeled vehicles such as motorbikes or bicycles.
    - Pedestrians or non-metallic objects such as standing trees.
  - When the system operates, the user is notified by the multi-information display.
  - The SBS warning indication (amber) turns on when the system has a malfunction.
- Refer to Taking Action on page 7-31.

### ▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the display.

#### Multi-information Display

**BRAKE!**

#### Active Driving Display

**BRAKE!**

### ▼ Stopping The Smart Brake Support (SBS) System Operation

The SBS system can be temporarily deactivated.

Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

When the SBS system is turned off, the SBS OFF indicator light turns on.



When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

#### **NOTE**

If the SBS system operation is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) system operation is turned off simultaneously.

## 360° View Monitor\*

The 360° View Monitor consists of the following functions which assist the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle using various indications in the centre display and a warning sound while the vehicle is being driven at low speeds or while parking.

- **Top view**

The top view displays an image of the vehicle from directly above on the centre display by combining the images taken from the 4 cameras set on all sides of the vehicle. The top view displays on the right side (left-hand drive)/left side (right-hand drive) of the screen when the front view or rear view screen is being displayed. The top view assists the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse.

- **Front view/front wide view**

The image from the front of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.

The view from the front assists the driver in checking the front of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front of the vehicle.

- **Side view**

The images taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle are displayed on the centre display.

The side view assists the driver in checking the front sides of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle.

- **Rear view/rear wide view**

The image from the rear of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.

The image from the rear assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the rear of the vehicle.

- **Parking sensor**

If there are any obstructions near the vehicle while the top view/side view is displayed, an obstruction detection indication turns on around the bumper in the centre display.

The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors to detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and notifies the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction using sound and an obstruction detection indication.

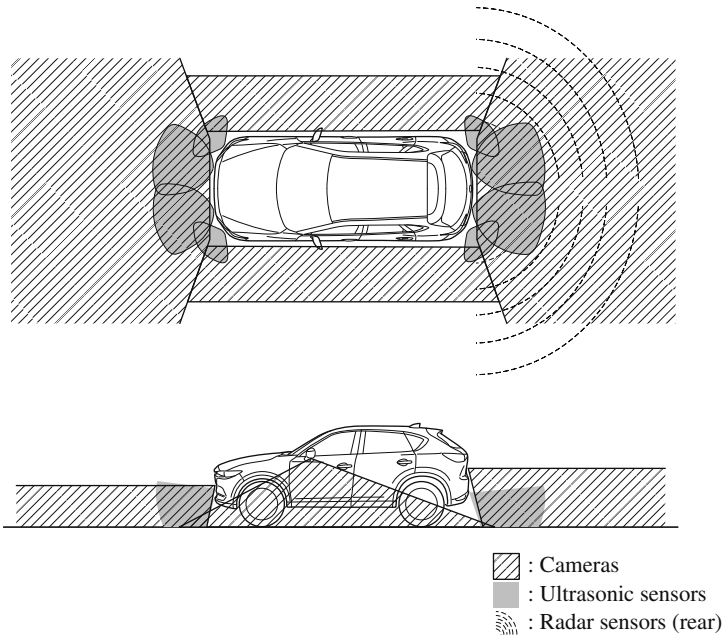
Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.

- **Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)**

If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle while the rear view/rear wide view is displayed, a warning is displayed on the centre display.

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) uses radar sensors (rear) to detect vehicles approaching from the rear left and right sides of the vehicle, and it assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle while reversing by flashing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and activating the warning sound.

Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-95.

**360°View Monitor Range****! WARNING**

**Always confirm the safety of the area around the vehicle with the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.**

*The 360°View Monitor is an auxiliary device which assists the driver in checking the safety of the area around the vehicle.*

*The shooting range of the cameras and detection range of the sensors are limited. For example, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots where an obstruction may not be visible. In addition, the extended vehicle width lines and projected vehicle path lines are only to be used as references, and the images on the screen may differ from the actual conditions.*

**! CAUTION**

➤ Do not use the 360°View Monitor under any of the following conditions.

- Icy or snow-covered roads.
- Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.

- *The front doors or the liftgate is not fully closed.*
- *The vehicle is on a road incline.*
- *The door mirrors are retracted.*
- *Do not hit the front/rear camera, front bumper, and door mirrors forcefully. The camera position or installation angle may shift.*
- *The cameras are of a waterproof structure. Do not disassemble, modify, or remove a camera.*
- *The camera cover is made of hard plastic, therefore do not apply oil film remover, organic solvents, wax, or coating agents. If any such agent gets on the camera cover, wipe it off using a soft cloth immediately.*
- *Do not rub the camera lens forcefully, or clean it with an abrasive or hard brush. Otherwise, it could scratch the camera lens and negatively affect the images.*
- *Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for repair, painting, or replacement of the front/rear camera, front bumper and door mirrors.*
- *Heed the following cautions to assure that the 360°View Monitor operates normally.*
  - *Do not modify the vehicle suspensions or lower/raise the vehicle body, or both.*
  - *Always use wheels of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for tyre replacement.*
- *When the display is cold, images may leave trails or the screen might be darker than usual, making it difficult to check the vehicle surroundings. Always confirm the safety at the front and around the vehicle visually when driving.*
- *The method for parking/stopping the vehicle using the 360°View Monitor differs depending on the road circumstances/conditions and the vehicle conditions. When and how much you turn the steering wheel will differ depending on the situation, , therefore always check the vehicle surroundings directly with your eyes while using the system.*  
*Also, before using the system, always make sure that the vehicle can be parked/stopped in the parking/stopping space.*

**NOTE**

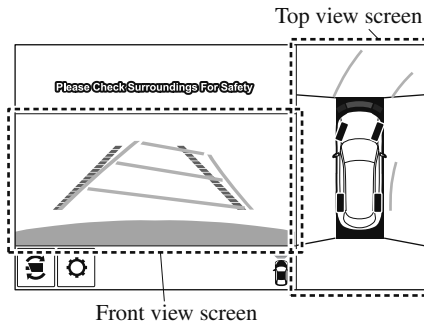
- *If there are water droplets, snow, or mud on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If the camera lens is especially dirty, wash it off with mild detergent.*
- *If the area where the camera is installed, such as the liftgate or door mirrors, has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the camera (position, installation angle) may have shifted. Always consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If the camera is subjected to excessive changes in temperature such as by pouring hot water on the camera during cold weather, the 360°View Monitor may not operate normally.*
- *If the battery voltage is low, the screen might be temporarily difficult to view, however, this does not indicate a problem.*

- The 360°View Monitor has limitations. Objects under the bumper or near both ends of the bumper cannot be displayed.
- Obstructions above the upper image range of the camera are not displayed.
- Under the following conditions, the screen might be difficult to view, however this does not indicate a problem.
  - The temperature near the lens is high/low.
  - Rainy conditions, water droplets on the camera, or high humidity.
  - Mud or foreign matter near the camera.
  - Extremely bright light such as sunlight or headlights hitting the camera lens directly.
- Because the 360°View Monitor camera uses a special lens, the distance displayed on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- Obstructions displayed on the screen may appear differently than in actuality. (Obstructions may appear fallen, larger, or longer than they actually are.)
- Do not apply stickers to a camera or the area around it. In addition, do not install accessories or an illuminated number/character number plate to the area around a camera. Otherwise, the camera may not correctly display the surrounding conditions.

## ▼ Types of Images Displayed on the Screen

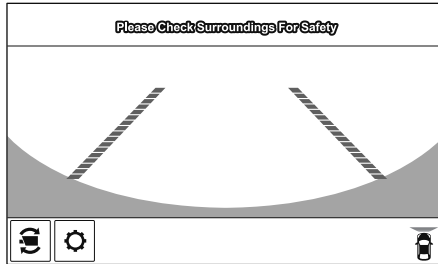
### Top view/Front view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the vehicle front.



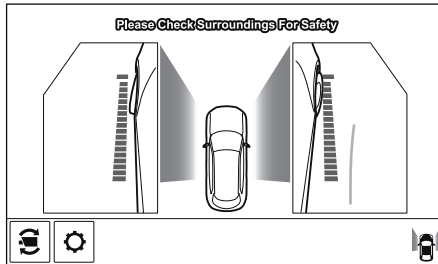
## Front wide view

Displays the image of the front of the vehicle (wide-area).



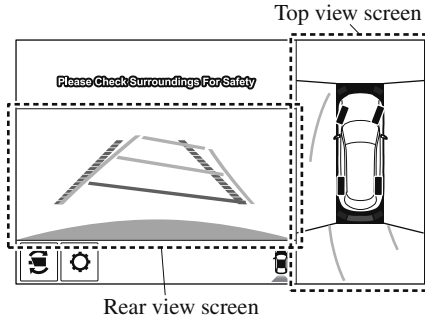
## Side view

Displays the image of the left and right sides of the vehicle.



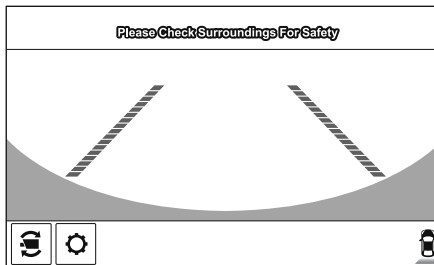
### Top view/Rear view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the rear of the vehicle.



### Rear wide view

Displays the image of the rear of the vehicle (wide-area).



### ▼ How to Use the System

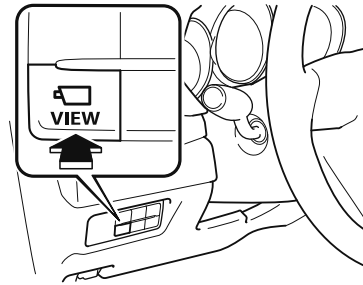
#### Top view/Front view, Front wide view, Side view

##### **Indication**

Images are displayed on the screen when the 360°View Monitor switch is pressed with all of the following conditions met.

- The ignition is switched ON.

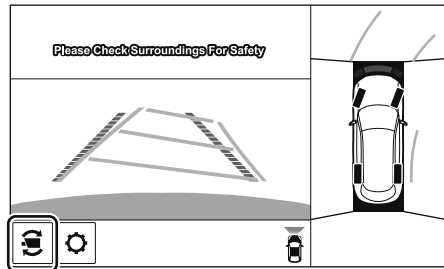
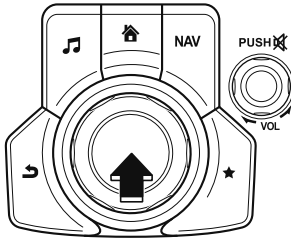
- The selector lever is in a position other than R.





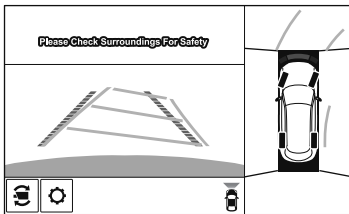
**Display switching**

You can change the displayed screen by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view is displayed.

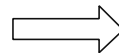
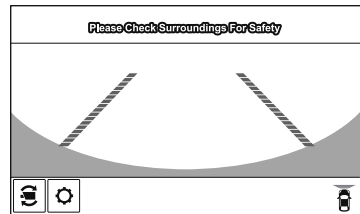


Switch camera icon

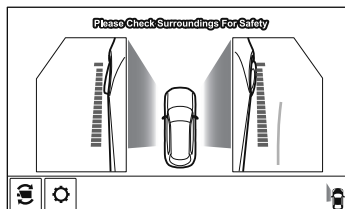
Top view/Front view



Front wide view



Side view

**NOTE**

- When the selector lever is in R position, the displayed screen does not switch to the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view.
- Display of the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view stops even with the display conditions met if any of the following conditions occurs.
  - When a switch around the commander knob is pressed.

- The selector lever is shifted to P position (displayed when the selector lever is in a position other than P).
- **(Displayed when vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph))**
  - 4 minutes and 30 seconds have passed.
  - The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster.
- **(Displayed when the vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster)**
  - The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360°View Monitor switch.
  - Four minutes and 22 seconds have passed from the point when the vehicle speed was less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph) after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360° View Monitor switch.
- The 360°View Monitor displays the previously displayed screen.
- The 360° View Monitor settings can be changed as follows.  
*Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*
  - Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction.
  - Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ignition is switched ON.

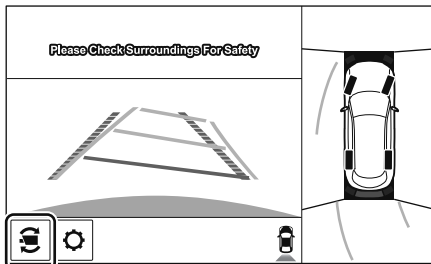
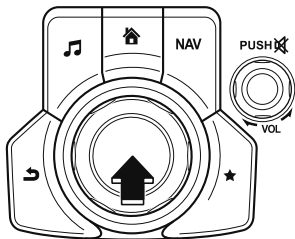
## **Top view/Rear view, Rear wide view**

The top view/rear view, rear wide view displays when all of the following conditions are met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- Selector lever is in R position.

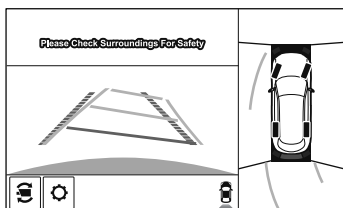
### Display switching

The displayed screen can be switched by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/rear view, rear wide view is displayed.

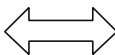
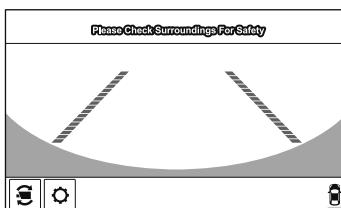


Switch camera icon

Top view/Rear view



Rear wide view



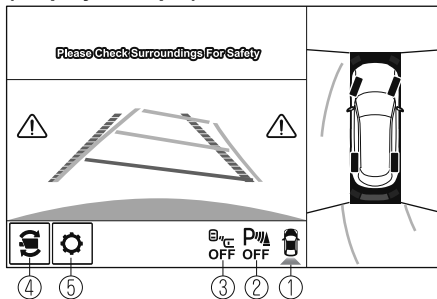
### NOTE

- The top view/rear view and rear wide view automatically display whether or not the 360° View Monitor switch is turned on or off when shifting the selector lever to R position.
  - The setting can be changed to display the top view/front view when shifting from reverse to a forward gear without operating the 360° View Monitor switch to check the front of the vehicle while parallel parking.
- Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

**Screen operation/icon**

**Always stop the vehicle when adjusting the 360°View Monitor image quality.**

Do not adjust the 360°View Monitor image quality while driving. If you adjust the 360° View Monitor image quality (such as brightness, contrast, tone, and colour density) while driving, it could lead to an unexpected accident.

**(Display example)**

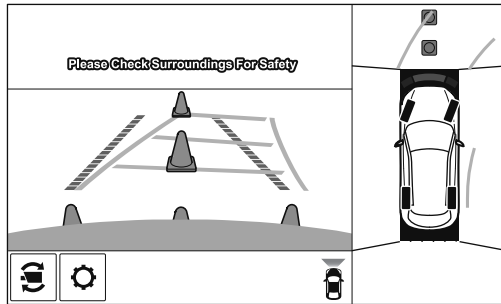
	Display/Icon	Content
①	View status icon	Indicates which image is displayed among the front view/front wide view/side view/rear view/rear wide view.
②	Parking sensor status icon	Indicates that the parking sensor has a problem or it is switched off.
③	Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) status icon	Indicates that the radar sensor (rear) has a problem or it is turned off.
④	Switch camera icon	Each time the screen is touched, the display screen switches.
⑤	Setting icon	The image quality for the 360°View Monitor can be adjusted.

## ▼ Top View/Front View

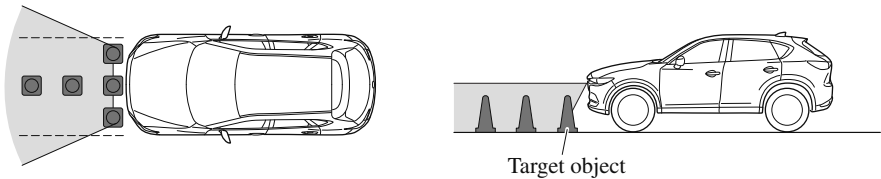
Use the top view/front view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

### Display range

(Screen display)



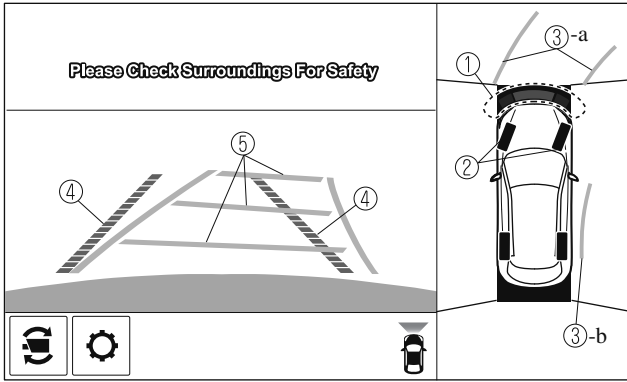
(Actual condition)



### **NOTE**

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
  - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the whole screen may be affected and it may display in that colour.
  - Obstructions displayed in the front view may not display on the top view screen.
  - If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
  - Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
  - The entire screen may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

**Viewing the screen**



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.
②	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
③	Projected vehicle path lines (amber)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the edge of the front bumper is expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
④	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper.</li> <li>• The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.</li> </ul>
⑤	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (red/amber)	Indicates the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper.</li> <li>• The amber lines indicate the points about 1 m (39 in) and 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.</li> </ul>

**CAUTION**

The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.

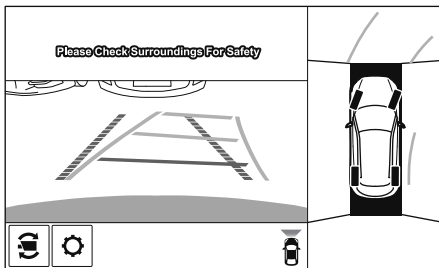
For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.

**NOTE**

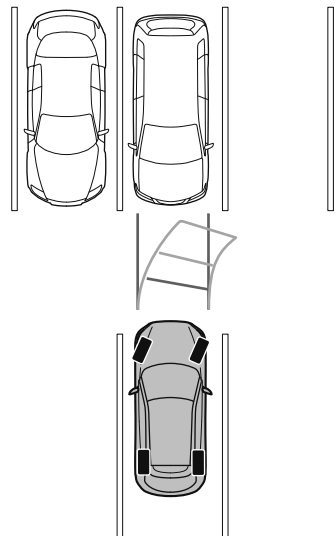
The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

**How to use the projected vehicle path line function**

(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



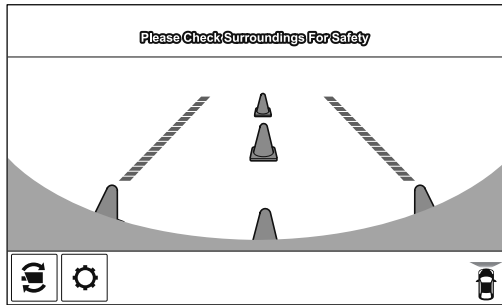
Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines. Drive the vehicle forward while turning the steering wheel so that no obstructions come within the projected vehicle path lines.

## ▼ Front Wide View

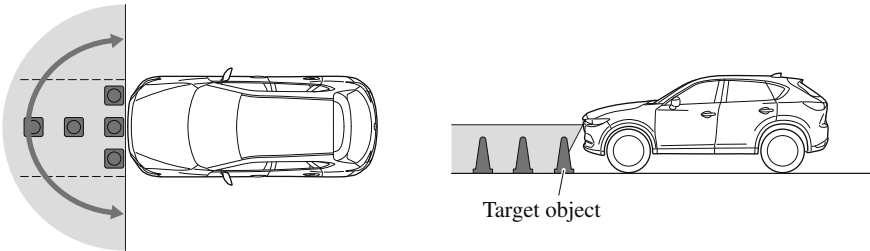
Use the front wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop or entering a T-shaped intersection and intersection.

### Display range

(Screen display)

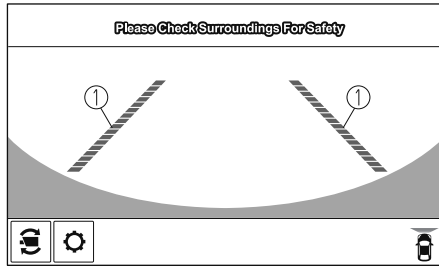


(Actual condition)





**Viewing the screen**



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	<p>Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper.</li> <li>• The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.</li> </ul>

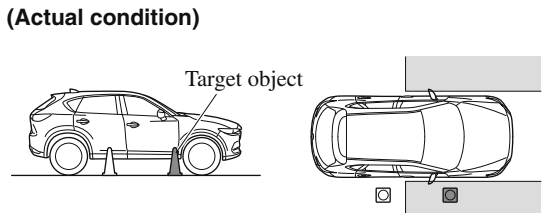
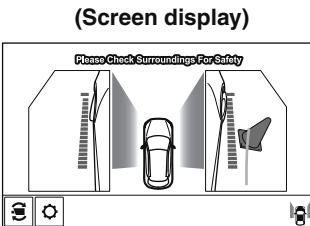
**NOTE**

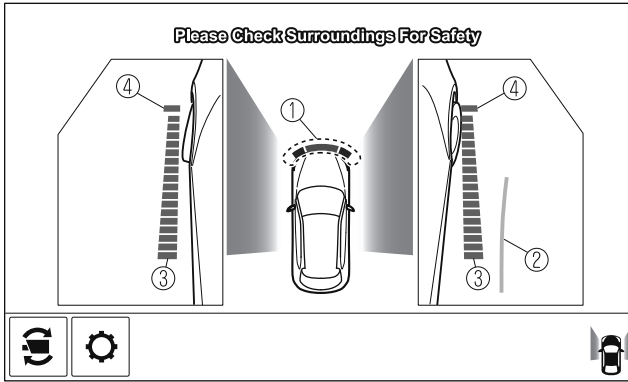
- The parking sensor obstruction detection indication does not display. Switch the screen display to the top view/front view or side view display if the parking sensor warning sound is activated.
- The front wide view screen displays the image in front of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.

**▼ Side View**

Use the side view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

**Display range**

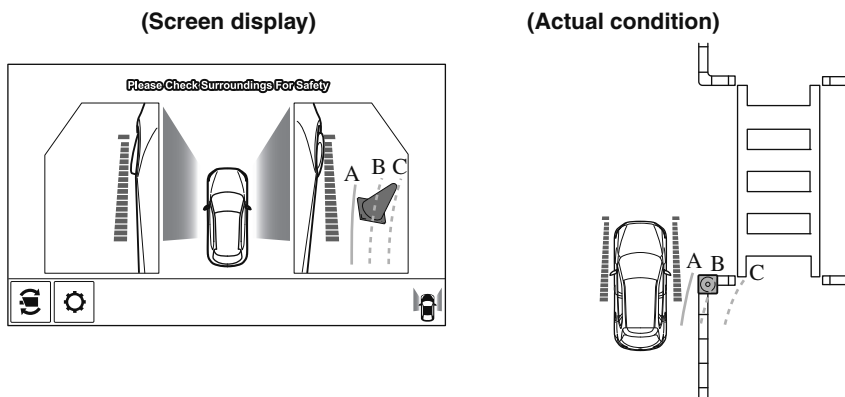


**Viewing the screen**

	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.
②	Projected vehicle path lines (amber)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. The projected vehicle path lines (amber) indicate the path the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
③	Vehicle parallel guide lines (blue)	Indicates the approximate vehicle width including the door mirrors.
④	Vehicle front end guide lines (blue)	Indicates the point about 0.25 m (9.8 in) from the front edge of the vehicle (front edge of the bumper).

**NOTE**

*The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed.  
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

**How to use the projected vehicle path line function**

Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines. Turn the steering wheel so that the projected vehicle path lines travel inside of the obstruction (A), and drive the vehicle forward until it passes the obstruction. If the projected vehicle path lines are on an obstruction (B) or outside of the obstruction (C), the vehicle may contact the obstruction when turning the vehicle sharply.

**CAUTION**

- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.*
- *Do not turn the steering wheel any more until the vehicle has passed the obstruction, even if the obstruction is not visible on the side view image. If the steering wheel is turned even more, the vehicle may contact the obstruction if it is turned sharply.*

**NOTE**

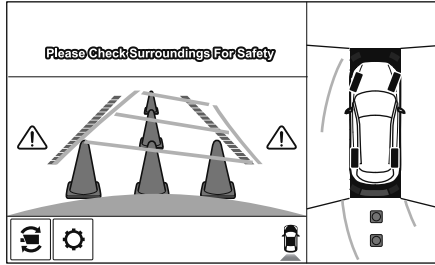
- *Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen and the actual conditions, always check the safety of the surrounding area using the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.*
- *Even though the object displayed on the screen, such as a road curb or a division line of a parking space, and the vehicle parallel guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*

## ▼ Top View/Rear View

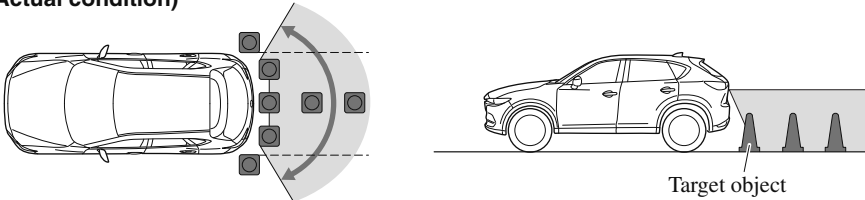
Use the top view/rear view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

### Range of displayed screen image

(Screen display)

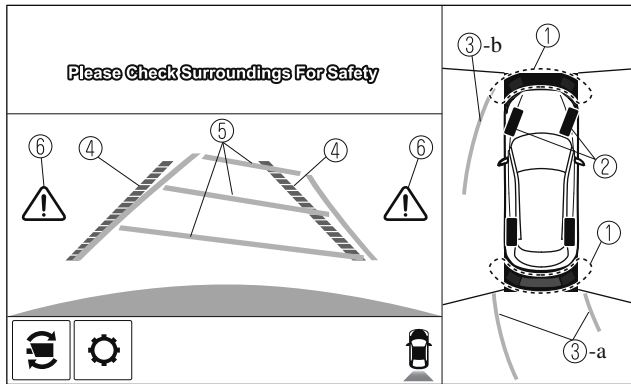


(Actual condition)



### **NOTE**

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
  - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the whole screen may be affected and it may display in that colour.
  - Obstructions displayed in the rear view may not display on the top view screen.
  - If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
  - Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
  - The entire screen may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

**Viewing the screen**

	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.
②	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
③	Projected vehicle path lines (amber)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the rear wheels are expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the outer side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
④	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper.</li> <li>• The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.</li> </ul>
⑤	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (red/amber)	These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper.</li> <li>• The amber lines indicate the points about 1 m (39 in) and 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.</li> </ul>

	Display/Icon	Content
⑥	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights	Indicates when the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) has operated. For details, refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-95.

**NOTE**

*The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

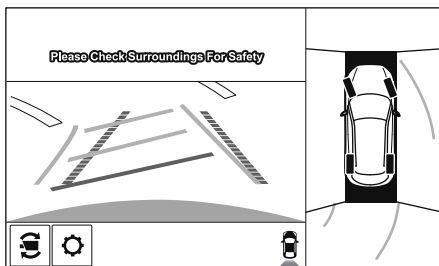
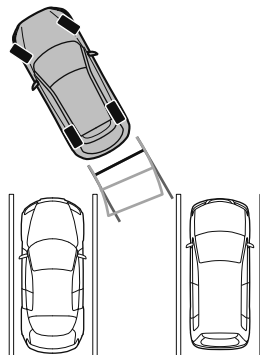
**How to use the projected vehicle path line function**

- *The front of the vehicle swings out wide when turning the steering wheel while reversing. Maintain sufficient distance between the vehicle and an obstruction.*
- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.  
For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-182.*

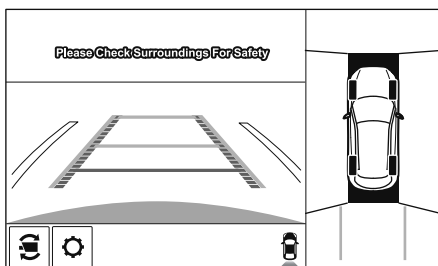
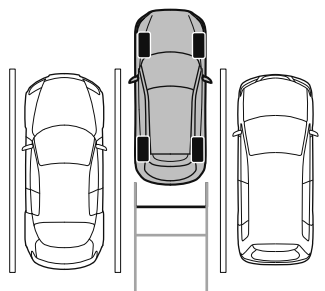
**NOTE**

- *Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen, such as indicated in the following, and the actual conditions when parking, always check the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.*
  - *Even though the back end of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen and distance guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
  - *When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, even though the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
- *The following shows an example of vehicle parking with the steering wheel turned to the left while backing up the vehicle. When backing into a parking space from the opposite direction, the steering operation is reversed.*

1. Back the vehicle into the parking space by turning the steering wheel so that the vehicle enters the centre of the parking space.

**(Screen display)****(Actual condition)**

2. After the vehicle starts entering the parking space, stop and adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal, and then continue backing up slowly.
3. Once the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are parallel, straighten the wheels and back the vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position. (If the parking space has division lines, check whether the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.)

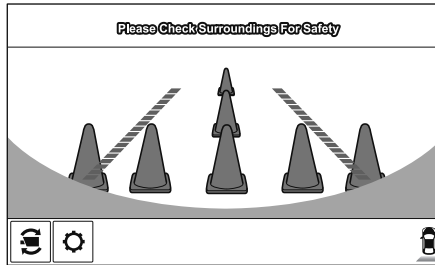
**(Screen display)****(Actual condition)**

### ▼ Rear Wide View

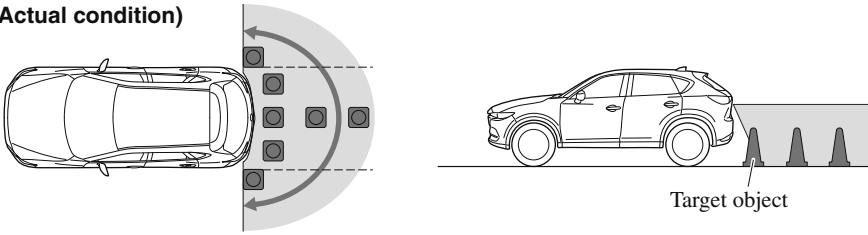
Use the rear wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

## Range of displayed screen image

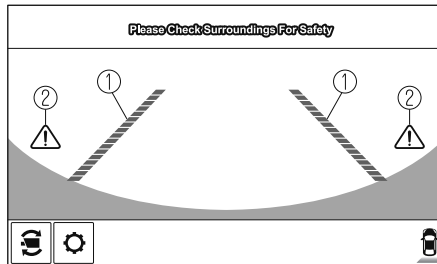
(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



## Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	<p>These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m from the rear end of the bumper.</li> <li>• The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.</li> </ul>



	<b>Display/Icon</b>	<b>Content</b>
②	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights	Indicates when the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) has operated. For details, refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-95.

**NOTE**

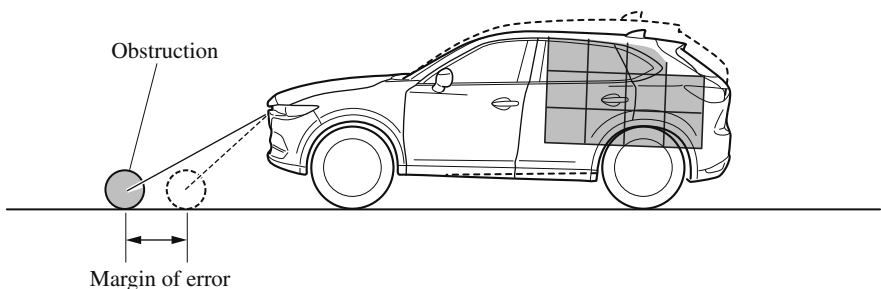
- The parking sensor obstruction detection indication does not display. Switch the screen display to the top view/rear view display if the parking sensor warning sound is activated.
- The rear wide view screen displays the image at the rear of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.

**▼ Margin of Error Between Road Surface on Screen and Actual Road Surface**

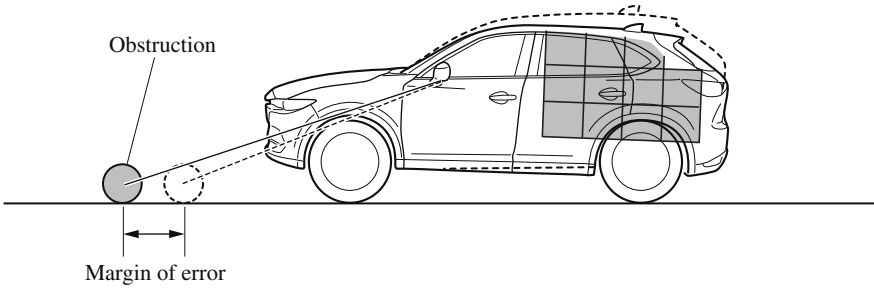
There might be some margin of error between the road surface appearing on the screen and the actual road surface. A margin of error in the perceived distance could lead to an accident, therefore be aware of the following conditions which can more easily produce errors in the perceived distance.

**The vehicle tilts due to weight of passengers and cargo.**

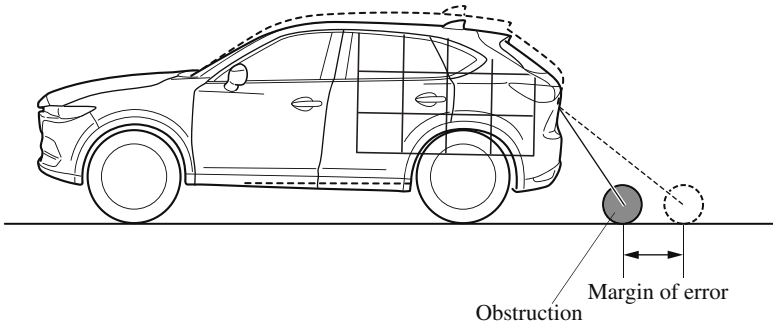
If the vehicle is tilted, obstructions picked up by a camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

**Front camera**

**Side camera**



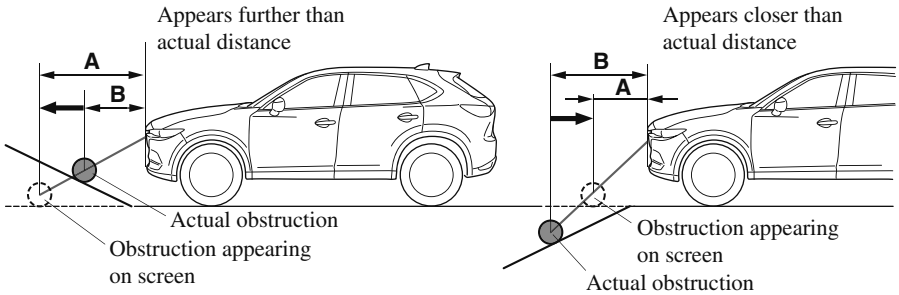
**Rear camera**



**There is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle**

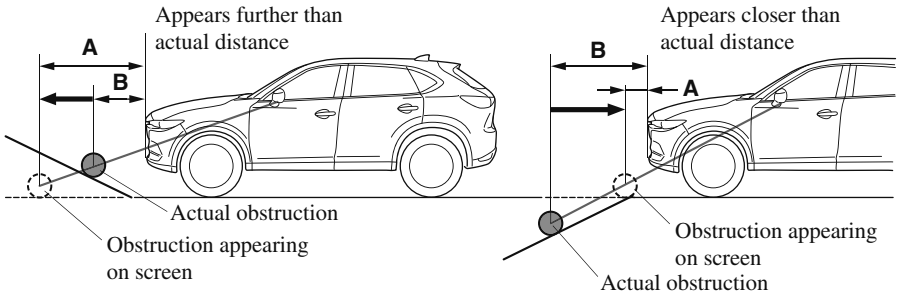
If there is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle, obstructions picked up by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

**Front camera**



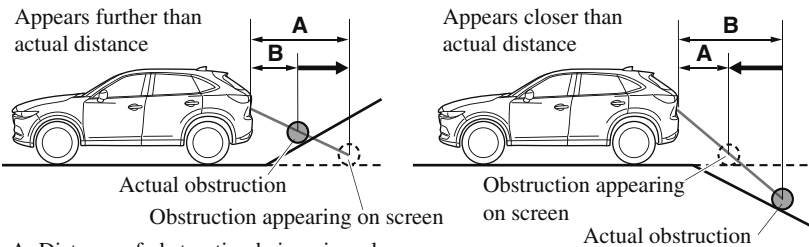
A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen  
 B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

**Side camera**



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen  
 B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

**Rear camera**



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen  
 B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

# i-ACTIVSENSE

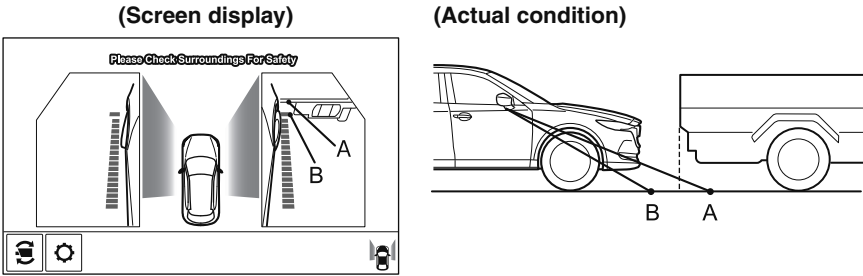
**NOTE**

If the vehicle is on a slope, obstructions taken by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

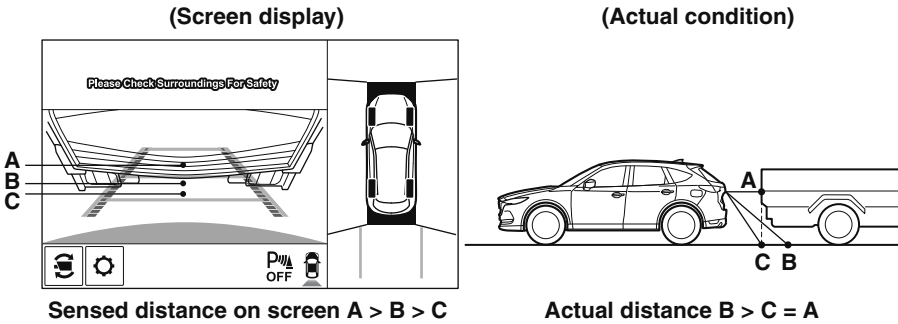
**Three-dimensional object at vehicle front or rear**

Because the vehicle front end guide lines (side camera) or the distance guide lines (rear camera) are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

**Side camera**



**Rear camera**



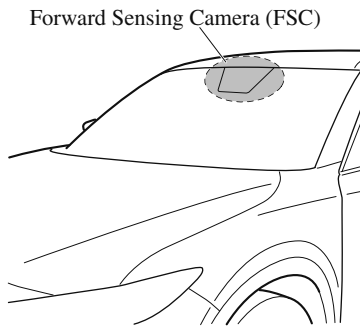
**▼ System Problem Indication**

Centre display indication	Cause	Action to be taken
“No image signal reception” is displayed	The control unit might be damaged.	Have your vehicle inspected by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Screen is pitch-black and blank	The camera might be damaged.	

## Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)\*

Your vehicle is equipped with a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC). The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is positioned near the rearview mirror and used by the following systems.

- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)



The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines the conditions ahead of the vehicle while travelling at night and detects traffic lanes. The distance in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.

### **! WARNING**

#### **Do not modify the suspension:**

*If the vehicle height or inclination is changed, the system will not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead. This will result in the system not operating normally or mistakenly operating, which could cause a serious accident.*

### **! CAUTION**

➤ *Do not apply accessories, stickers or film to the windscreen near the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*

*If the area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens is obstructed, it will cause the system to not operate correctly. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.*

➤ *Do not disassemble or modify the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*

*Disassembly or modification of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) will cause a malfunction or mistaken operation. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.*

- *Heed the following cautions to assure the correct operation of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *Be careful not to scratch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens or allow it to get dirty.*
  - *Do not remove the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cover.*
  - *Do not place objects on the instrument panel which reflect light.*
  - *Always keep the windscreen glass around the camera clean by removing dirt or fogging. Use the windscreen defroster to remove fogging on the windscreen.*
  - *Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer regarding cleaning the interior side of the windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer before performing repairs around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed to the windscreen. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for windscreen repair and replacement.*
  - *When cleaning the windscreen, do not allow glass cleaners or similar cleaning fluids to get on the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens. In addition, do not touch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens.*
  - *When performing repairs around the rearview mirror, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
  - *Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer regarding cleaning of the camera lens.*
  - *Do not hit or apply strong force to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or the area around it. If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is severely hit or if there are cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris in the area around it, stop using the following systems and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
    - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*
    - *Driver Attention Alert (DAA)*
    - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)*
    - *Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)*
    - *Smart Brake Support (SBS)*
  - *The direction in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is pointed has been finely adjusted. Do not change the installation position of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or remove it. Otherwise, it could result in damage or malfunction.*
- *Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle as the system may not operate normally.*

- *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) includes a function for detecting a soiled windscreen and informing the driver, however, depending on the conditions, it may not detect plastic shopping bags, ice or snow on the windscreen. In such cases, the system cannot accurately determine a vehicle ahead and may not be able to operate normally. Always drive carefully and pay attention to the road ahead.*

### **NOTE**

- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot detect target objects correctly, and each system may be unable to operate normally.*
  - *The height of the vehicle ahead is low.*
  - *You drive your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
  - *Headlights are not turned on during the night or when going through a tunnel.*
- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly.*
  - *Under bad weather condition, such as rain, fog and snow.*
  - *The window washer is being used or the windscreen wipers are not used when it's raining.*
  - *Ice, fog, snow, frost, rainfall, dirt, or foreign matter such as a plastic bag is stuck on the windscreen.*
  - *Trucks with low loading platforms and vehicles with an extremely low or high profile.*
  - *When driving next to walls with no patterning (including fences and longitudinally striped walls).*
  - *The tail lights of the vehicle ahead are turned off.*
  - *A vehicle is outside the illumination range of the headlights.*
  - *The vehicle is making a sharp turn, or ascending or descending a steep slope.*
  - *Entering or exiting a tunnel.*
  - *Heavy luggage is loaded causing the vehicle to tilt.*
  - *Strong light is shone at the front of the vehicle (back light or high-beam light from on-coming vehicles).*
  - *There are many light emitters on the vehicle ahead.*
  - *When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off at nighttime.*
  - *Elongated luggage or cargo is loaded onto installed roof rails and covers the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
  - *Exhaust gas from the vehicle in front, sand, snow, and water vapour rising from manholes and grating, and water splashed into the air.*
  - *When towing a malfunctioning vehicle.*
  - *The vehicle is driven with tyres having significantly different wear.*
  - *The vehicle is driven on down slopes or bumpy roads.*
  - *There are water puddles on the road.*

- *The surroundings are dark such as during the night, early evening, or early morning, or in a tunnel or indoor parking lot.*
- *The illumination brightness of the headlights is reduced or the headlight illumination is weakened due to dirt or a deviated optical axis.*
- *The target object enters the blind spot of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *A person or object bursts onto the road from the shoulder or cuts right in front of you.*
- *You change lanes and approach a vehicle ahead.*
- *When driving extremely close to the target object.*
- *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*
- *The vehicle ahead has a special shape. For example, a vehicle towing a trailer house or a boat, or a vehicle carrier carrying a vehicle with its front pointed rearward.*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot operate normally due to backlight or fog, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning indication*
  - *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning indication (amber)*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot operate normally due to high temperatures, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a malfunction. Cool down the area around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) such as by turning on the air conditioner.*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning indication*
  - *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning indication (amber)*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects that the windscreen is dirty or foggy, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a problem. Remove the dirt from the windscreen or press the defroster switch and defog the windscreen.*
  - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
  - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning indication*



- *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning indication (amber)*
- *If there are recognizable cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris on the windscreen, always have the windscreen replaced. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for replacement.*
- ***(With Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS))***
  - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises pedestrians when all of the following conditions are met:*
    - *The height of a pedestrian is about 1 to 2 meters.*
    - *An outline such as the head, both shoulders, or the legs can be determined.*
  - *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly:*
    - *Multiple pedestrians are walking, or there are groups of people.*
    - *A pedestrian is close to a separate object.*
    - *A pedestrian is crouching, lying, or slouching.*
    - *A pedestrian suddenly jumps into the road right in front of the vehicle.*
    - *A pedestrian opens an umbrella, or is carrying large baggage or articles.*
    - *A pedestrian is in a dark location such as during the night, or blends into the background by wearing clothes matching the background colour.*

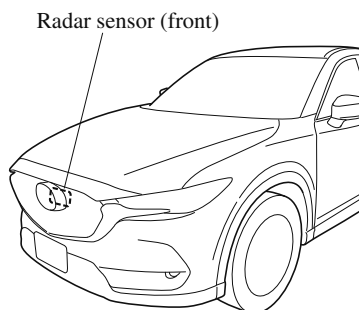
## Radar Sensor (Front)\*

Your vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor (front).  
The following systems also use the radar sensor (front).

- Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The radar sensor (front) functions by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle ahead or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.

The radar sensor (front) is mounted behind the front emblem.



If “Front radar blocked” is displayed in the multi-information display of the instrument cluster, clean the area around the radar sensor (front).



*Heed the following precautions to assure correct operation of each system.*

- *Do not adhere stickers (including transparent stickers) to the surface of the radiator grille and front emblem in and around the radar sensor (front), and do not replace the radiator grille and front emblem with any product that is not a genuine product designed for use with the radar sensor (front).*
- *The radar sensor (front) includes a function for detecting soiling of the radar sensor's front surface and informing the driver, however, depending on the conditions, it may require time to detect or it may not detect plastic shopping bags, ice or snow. If this occurs, the system may not operate correctly, therefore always keep the radar sensor (front) clean.*
- *Do not install a grille guard.*
- *If the front part of the vehicle has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the position of the radar sensor (front) may have moved. Stop the system immediately and always have the vehicle inspected at an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

- Do not use the front bumper to push other vehicles or obstructions such as when pulling out of a parking space. Otherwise, the radar sensor (front) could be hit and its position deviated.
- Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the radar sensor (front).
- For repairs, replacement or paint work around the radar sensor (front), consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
- Do not modify the suspension. If the suspension are modified, the vehicle's posture could change and the radar sensor (front) may not be able to correctly detect a vehicle ahead or an obstruction.

**NOTE**

- Under the following conditions, the radar sensor (front) may not be able to detect vehicles ahead or obstructions correctly and each system may not operate normally.
  - The rear surface of a vehicle ahead does not reflect radio waves effectively, such as an unloaded trailer or an automobile with a loading platform covered by a soft top, vehicles with a hard plastic tailgate, and round-shaped vehicles.
  - Vehicles ahead with low vehicle height and thus less area for reflecting radio waves.
  - Visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead casting off water, snow, or sand from its tyres and onto your windscreen.
  - The luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.
  - Ice, snow, or soiling is on the front surface of the front emblem.
  - During inclement weather such as rain, snow, or sand storms.
  - When driving near facilities or objects emitting strong radio waves.
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensor (front) may not be able to detect vehicles ahead or obstructions.
  - The beginning and end of a curve.
  - Roads with continuous curves.
  - Narrow lane roads due to road construction or lane closures.
  - The vehicle ahead enters the radar sensor's blind spot.
  - The vehicle ahead is running abnormally due to accident or vehicle damage.
  - Roads with repeated up and down slopes
  - Driving on poor roads or unpaved roads.
  - The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short.
  - A vehicle suddenly comes close such as by cutting into the lane.
- To prevent incorrect operation of the system, use tyres of the same specified size, manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern on all 4 wheels. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns or tyre pressures on the same vehicle (Including the temporary spare tyre).
- If the battery power is weak, the system may not operate correctly.

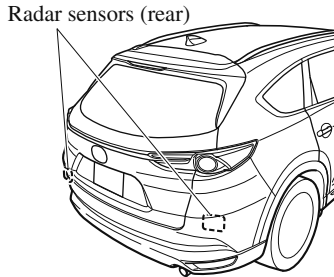
- When driving on roads with little traffic and few vehicles ahead or obstructions for the radar sensor (front) to detect, "Front radar blocked" may be temporarily displayed, however, this does not indicate a problem.*
- The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.*

## Radar Sensors (Rear)\*

Your vehicle is equipped with radar sensors (rear). The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.



The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.

Always keep the surface of the rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) clean so that the radar sensors (rear) operate normally. Also, do not apply items such as stickers.

Refer to Exterior Care on page 6-48.



*If the rear bumper receives a severe impact, the system may no longer operate normally. Stop the system immediately and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

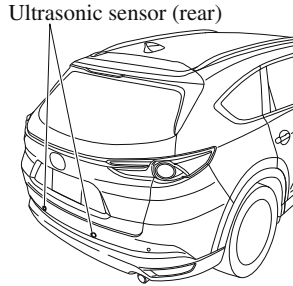
### **NOTE**

- *The detection ability of the radar sensors (rear) has limitations. In the following cases, the detection ability may lower and the system may not operate normally.*
  - *The rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) has become deformed.*
  - *Snow, ice or mud adheres to the radar sensors (rear) on the rear bumper.*
  - *Under bad weather conditions such as rain, snow and fog.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.*
  - *Stationary objects on a road or a road side such as small, two-wheeled vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, animals, and shopping carts.*

- *Vehicle shapes which do not reflect radar waves well such as empty trailers with a low vehicle height and sports cars.*
- *Vehicles are shipped with the direction of the radar sensors (rear) adjusted for each vehicle to a loaded vehicle condition so that the radar sensors (rear) detect approaching vehicles correctly. If the direction of the radar sensors (rear) has deviated for some reason, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
- *For repairs or replacement of the radar sensors (rear), or bumper repairs, paintwork, and replacement near the radar sensors, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
- *Turn off the system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.*
- *The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.*

## Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)\*

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) function by emitting ultrasonic waves which are reflected off obstructions at the rear and the returning ultrasonic waves are picked up by the ultrasonic sensors (rear).



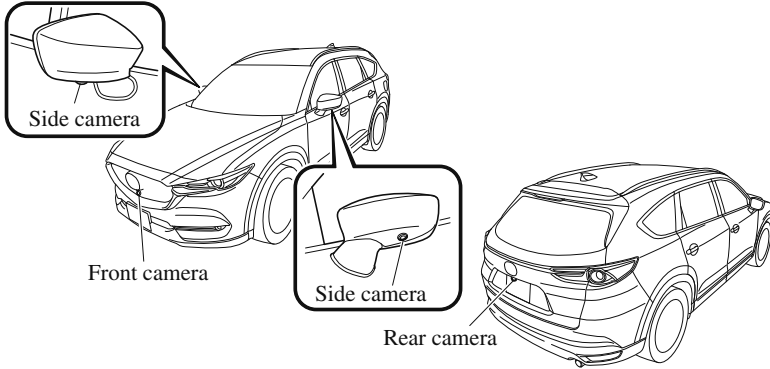
The ultrasonic sensors (rear) are mounted in the rear bumper.

## Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera

Your vehicle is equipped with a front camera, side cameras, and a rear camera. The 360° View Monitor uses each camera.

The front camera, side cameras, and rear camera shoot images of the area surrounding the vehicle.

Each camera is installed to the following positions.





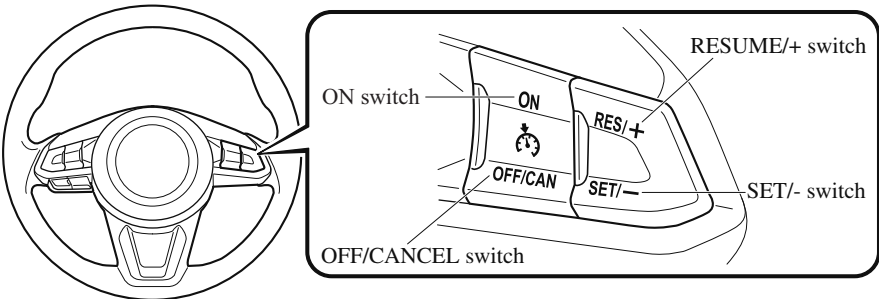
**Cruise Control\***

With cruise control, you can set and automatically maintain any speed of more than about 25 km/h (16 mph).

**! WARNING****Do not use the cruise control under the following conditions:**

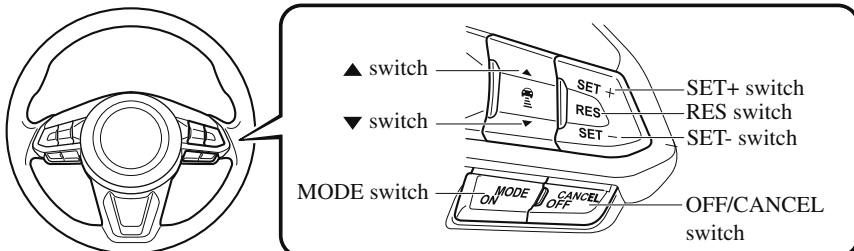
Using the cruise control under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in loss of vehicle control.

- Hilly terrain
- Steep inclines
- Heavy or unsteady traffic
- Slippery or winding roads
- Similar restrictions that require inconsistent speed

**▼ Cruise Control Switch****NOTE**

If your Mazda has the following steering switch, your Mazda is equipped with the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system.

Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) on page 4-99.



## Cruise Control

---

### ▼ Cruise Main Indication (White)/ Cruise Set Indication (Green)



The indication has 2 colours.

#### Cruise Main Indication (White)

The indication turns on (white) when the cruise control system is activated.

#### Cruise Set Indication (Green)

The indication turns on (green) when a cruising speed has been set.

### ▼ Activation/Deactivation

To activate the system, press the ON switch. The cruise main indication (white) is displayed.

To deactivate the system, press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

The cruise main indication (white) turns off.



### **Always turn off the cruise control system when it is not in use:**

Leaving the cruise control system in an activation-ready state while the cruise control is not in use is dangerous as the cruise control could unexpectedly activate if the activation button is accidentally pressed, and result in loss of vehicle control and an accident.

### **NOTE**

*When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF with the cruise control system operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.*

### ▼ To Set Speed

1. Activate the cruise control system by pressing the ON switch. The cruise main indication (white) is displayed.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 25 km/h (16 mph).
3. Set the cruise control by pressing the SET/– switch at the desired speed. The cruise control is set at the moment the SET/– switch is pressed. Release the accelerator pedal simultaneously. The cruise set indication (green) is displayed.

### **NOTE**

- *The cruise control speed setting cannot be performed under the following conditions:*
  - *The selector lever is in the P or N position.*
  - *The parking brake is applied.*
- *Release the SET/– or RES/+ switch at the desired speed, otherwise the speed will continue increasing while the RES/+ switch is pressed and held, and continue decreasing while the SET/– switch is pressed and held (except when the accelerator pedal is depressed).*
- *On a steep grade, the vehicle may momentarily slow down while ascending, or speed up while descending.*

- The cruise control will cancel if the vehicle speed decreases below 21 km/h (13 mph) when climbing a steep grade.
- The cruise control may cancel at about 15 km/h (9 mph) below the preset speed such as when climbing a long, steep grade.

The vehicle speed preset using the cruise control is displayed in the instrument cluster.

#### Multi-information Display



#### Active Driving Display



### ▼ To Increase Cruising Speed

Follow either of these procedures.

#### To increase speed using cruise control switch

Press the RES/+ switch and hold it. Your vehicle will accelerate. Release the switch at the desired speed.

Press the RES/+ switch and release it immediately to adjust the preset speed. Multiple operations will increase the preset speed according to the number of times it is operated.

#### **Increasing speed with a single RES/+ switch operation**

Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in km/h: 1 km/h (0.6 mph)  
 Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in mph: 1 mph (1.6 km/h)

#### To increase speed using accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate to the desired speed. Press the SET/– switch and release it immediately.

#### **NOTE**

*Accelerate if you want to speed up temporarily when the cruise control is on. Greater speed will not interfere with or change the set speed. Take your foot off the accelerator to return to the set speed.*

### ▼ To Decrease Cruising Speed

Press the SET/– switch and hold it. The vehicle will gradually slow. Release the switch at the desired speed.

Press the SET/– switch and release it immediately to adjust the preset speed. Multiple operations will decrease the preset speed according to the number of times it is operated.

#### **Decreasing speed with a single SET/– switch operation**

Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in km/h: 1 km/h (0.6 mph)  
 Instrument cluster display for vehicle speed indicated in mph: 1 mph (1.6 km/h)

### ▼ To Resume Cruising Speed at More Than 25 km/h (16 mph)

If the cruise control system temporarily cancelled (such as applying the brake pedal) and the system is still activated, the most recent set speed will automatically resume when the RES/+ switch is pressed. If vehicle speed is below 25 km/h (16 mph), increase the vehicle speed up to 25

## Cruise Control

---

km/h (16 mph) or more and press the RES/+ switch.

### ▼ To Temporarily Cancel

To temporarily cancel the system, use one of these methods:

- Slightly depress the brake pedal.
- Press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

If the RES/+ switch is pressed when the vehicle speed is 25 km/h (16 mph) or higher, the system reverts to the previously set speed.

### NOTE

- *If any of the following conditions occur, the cruise control system is temporarily cancelled.*
  - *The parking brake is applied.*
  - *The selector lever is in the P or N position.*
- *When the cruise control system is temporarily cancelled by even one of the applicable cancel conditions, the speed cannot be re-set.*
- *The cruise control cannot be cancelled while driving in manual mode (selector lever shifted from D to M position). Therefore, engine braking will not be applied even if the transaxle is shifted down to a lower gear. If deceleration is required, lower the set speed or depress the brake pedal.*

### ▼ To Deactivate

#### When a cruising speed has been set (cruise set indication (green) turns on)

Long-press the OFF/CANCEL switch or press the OFF/CANCEL switch 2 times.

#### When a cruising speed has not been set (cruise main indication (white) turns on)

Press the OFF/CANCEL switch.

## Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

The diesel particulate filter collects and removes most of the particulate matter (PM) in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine. PM collected by the diesel particulate filter is cleared during normal driving, however, PM may not be removed and the diesel particulate filter indicator light may illuminate under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less continuously.
- If the vehicle is repeatedly driven for a short period of time (10 minute or less) or driven while the engine is cold.
- If the vehicle is idled for a long time.

### **When “Soot Accumulation in DPF too high” is indicated**

The particulate matter (PM) cannot be removed automatically and the amount of collected PM reaches a specified amount. After the engine has sufficiently warmed up (engine coolant temperature of 80 °C or more), depress the accelerator pedal and drive the vehicle at a speed of 20 km/h or more for about 15 to 20 minutes to eliminate the PM.

### **When “DPF malfunction” is indicated**

Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### **CAUTION**

*If the vehicle continues to be driven with “Soot Accumulation in DPF too high” indicated in the display, the particulate matter (PM) increases and the indication may change to “DPF malfunction”. If the indication changes to “DPF malfunction”, have the vehicle inspected immediately at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. If the vehicle is not inspected and continues to be driven, the engine may malfunction.*

### **NOTE**

- *When “DPF malfunction” is indicated in the display, the engine output is restricted to protect the diesel particulate filter.*
- *The engine sound and exhaust gas smell may change when PM is being removed while driving.*

## Rear View Monitor

---

### Rear View Monitor\*

The rear view monitor provides visual images of the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

#### **WARNING**

***Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes:***

*Reversing the vehicle by only looking at the screen is dangerous as it may cause an accident or a collision with an object. The rear view monitor is only a visual assist device when reversing the vehicle. The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.*

#### **CAUTION**

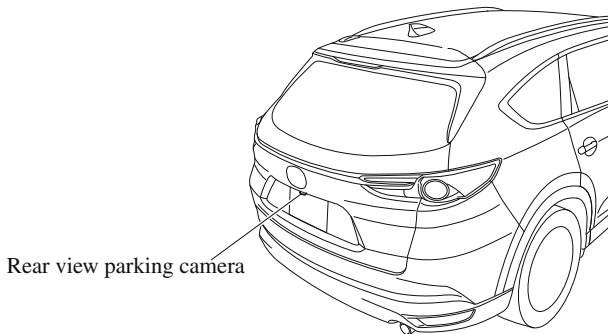
- *Do not use the rear view monitor under the following conditions: Using the rear view monitor under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in injury or vehicle damage or both.*
  - *Icy or snow-covered roads.*
  - *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*
  - *The liftgate is not fully closed.*
  - *The vehicle is on a road incline.*
- *When the display is cold, images may course across the monitor or the screen and may be dimmer than usual, which could cause difficulty in confirming the surrounding conditions of the vehicle. Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes.*
- *Do not apply excessive force to the camera. The camera position and angle may deviate.*
- *Do not disassemble, modify, or remove it as it may no longer be waterproof.*
- *The camera cover is made of plastic. Do not apply degreasing agents, organic solvents, wax, or glass coating agents to the camera cover. If any are spilled on the cover, wipe off with a soft cloth immediately.*
- *Do not rub the camera cover forcefully with an abrasive or hard brush. The camera cover or lens may be scratched which might affect the images.*

#### **NOTE**

- *If water, snow, or mud is stuck on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If it cannot be wiped off, use a mild detergent.*
- *If the camera temperature changes rapidly (Hot to cold, cold to hot), the rear view monitor may not operate correctly.*

- *When replacing the tyres, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Replacing the tyres could result in deviation of the guide lines which appear on the display.*
- *If the vehicle's front, side, or rear has been involved in a collision, the alignment of the rear view parking camera (location, installation angle) may have deviated. Always consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If “No Video Signal Available” is indicated in the display, there could be a problem with the camera. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

### ▼ Rear View Parking Camera Location



### ▼ Switching to the Rear View Monitor Display

Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) position with the ignition switched ON to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.

#### **NOTE**

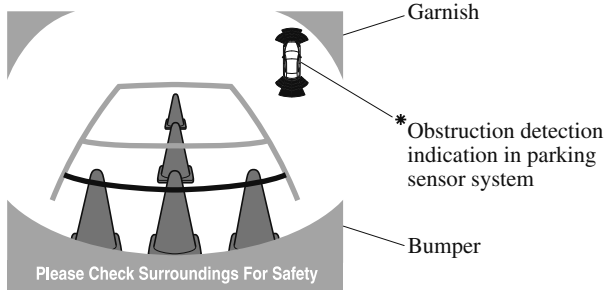
*When the selector lever is shifted from reverse (R) position to another selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.*

# Rear View Monitor

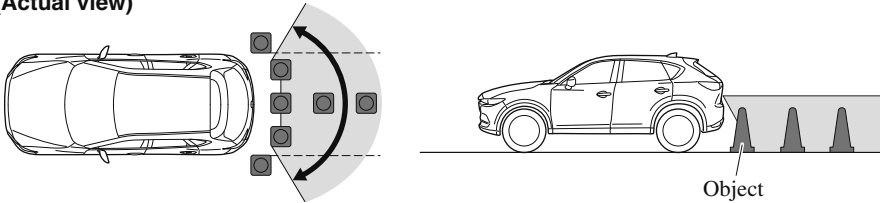
## ▼ Displayable Range on the Screen

The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.

(Screen display)



(Actual view)



## NOTE

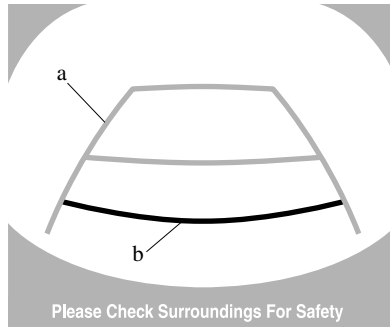
- The displayable range varies depending on the vehicle and road conditions.
- The displayable range is limited. Objects under the bumper or around the bumper ends cannot be displayed.
- The distance appearing in the displayed image is different from the actual distance because the rear view parking camera is equipped with a specific lens.
- Images displayed on the monitor from the rear view parking camera are reversed images (mirror images).
- Some optionally installed vehicle accessories may be picked up by the camera. Do not install any optional parts that can interfere with the camera view, such as illuminating parts or parts made of reflective material.
- It may be difficult to see the display under the following conditions, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.
  - In darkened areas.
  - When the temperature around the lens is high/low.
  - When the camera is wet such as on a rainy day or during periods of high humidity.
  - When foreign material such as mud is stuck around the camera.
  - When the camera lens reflects sunlight or headlight beams.
- Image display may be delayed if the temperature around the camera is low.



**▼ Viewing the Display**

Guide lines which indicate the width of the vehicle (yellow) are displayed on the screen as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle in comparison to the width of the parking space you are about to back into.

Use this display view for parking your vehicle in a parking space or garage.



a) Vehicle width guide lines (yellow)

Guide lines serve as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle.

b) Distance guide lines

These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the vehicle's rear (from the end of the bumper).

The red and yellow lines indicate the points about 50 cm (19 in) for the red line and 100 cm (39.3 in) for the yellow lines from the rear bumper (at the centre point of each of the lines).



*The guide lines on the screen are fixed lines. They are not synced to the driver's turning of the steering wheel. Always be careful and check the area to the vehicle's rear and the surrounding area directly with your eyes while backing up.*

**▼ Rear View Monitor Operation**

The operation of the rear view monitor when reversing the vehicle varies depending on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions. The amount of steering and the timing also varies depending on conditions, so confirm the surrounding conditions directly with your eyes and steer the vehicle in accordance with the conditions.

Be well aware of the above cautions prior to using the rear view monitor.

**NOTE**

*Images displayed on the monitor from the rear view parking camera are reversed images (mirror images).*

# Rear View Monitor

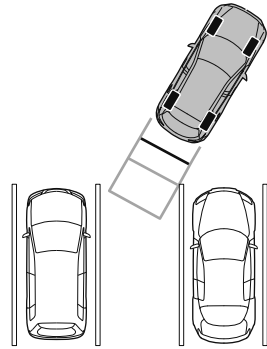
---

1. Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) position to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.
2. Confirming the surrounding conditions, reverse the vehicle.

**(Display condition)**

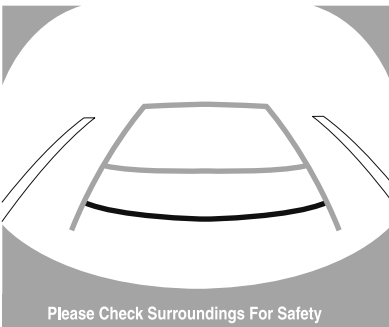


**(Vehicle condition)**

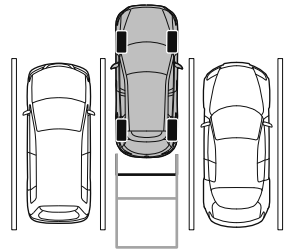


3. After your vehicle begins entering the parking space, continue backing up slowly so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal.
4. Continue to adjust the steering wheel until the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to the left and right sides of the parking space.
5. Once they are parallel, straighten the wheels and back your vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position. (If the parking space has division lines, check whether the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.)

**(Display condition)**



**(Vehicle condition)**

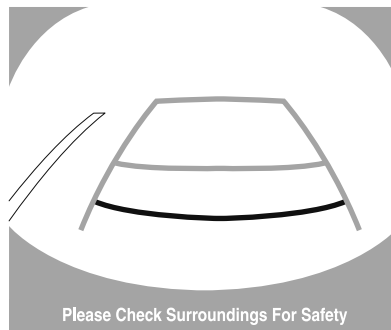


6. When the selector lever is shifted from reverse (R) position to another selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

**NOTE**

Because there may be a difference between the displayed image, such as indicated below, and the actual conditions when parking, always verify the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.

- In the image of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen, the back end and distance guide lines may appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.
- When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.

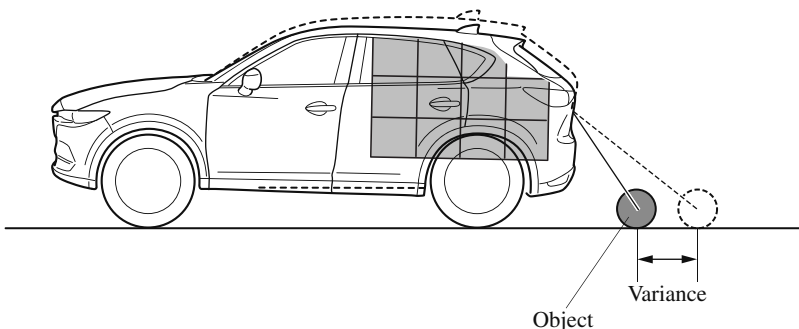


### ▼ Variance Between Actual Road Conditions and Displayed Image

Some variance occurs between the actual road and the displayed road. Such variance in distance perspective could lead to an accident. Note the following conditions that may cause a variance in distance perspective.

#### When the vehicle is tilted due to the weight of passengers and load

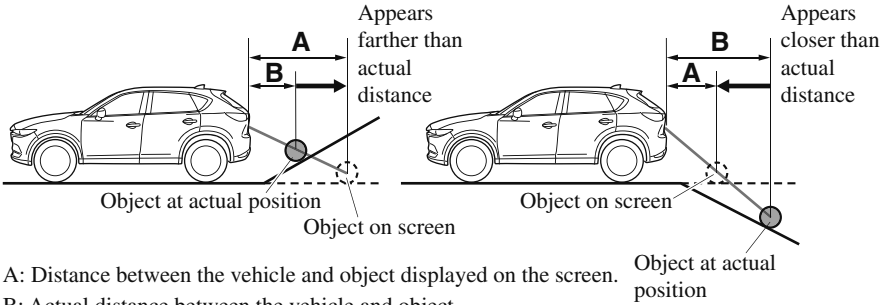
When the vehicle rear is lowered, the object displayed on the screen appears farther than the actual distance.



# Rear View Monitor

## When there is a steep grade behind the vehicle

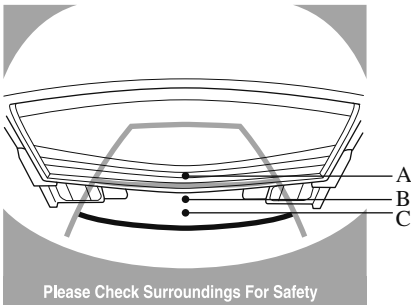
When there is a steep upgrade (downgrade) behind the vehicle, the object displayed on the screen appears farther (downgrade: closer) than the actual distance.



## Three-dimensional object on vehicle rear

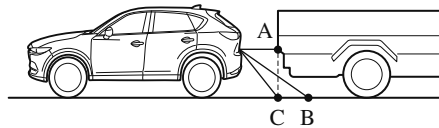
Because the distance guide lines are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

(Screen display)



Sensed distance on screen  $A > B > C$

(Actual condition)



(Actual distance)  $B > C = A$



## ▼ Picture Quality Adjustment



**Always adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while the vehicle is stopped:**

Do not adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the picture quality of the rear view monitor such as brightness, contrast, colour, and tint while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to an accident.

Picture quality adjustment must be done while the selector lever is in reverse (R) position. There are 4 settings which can be adjusted including, brightness, contrast, tint, and colour. When adjusting, pay sufficient attention to the vehicle surroundings.

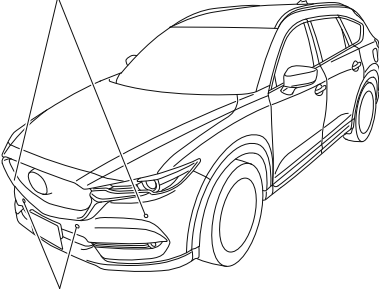
1. Select the  icon on the screen to display the tabs.
2. Select the desired tab item.
3. Adjust the brightness, contrast, tint, and colour using the slider.  
If you need to reset, press the reset button.
4. Select the  icon on the screen to close the tab.

# Parking Sensor System

## Parking Sensor System\*

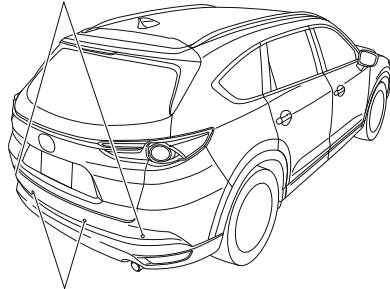
The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors which detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and a buzzer sound and detection indicator notify the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction.

Front corner sensor



Front sensor

Rear sensor



Rear corner sensor

### WARNING

**Do not rely completely on the parking sensor system and be sure to confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving:**

*This system can assist the driver in operating the vehicle in the forward and backward directions while parking. The detection ranges of the sensors are limited, therefore, driving the vehicle while relying only on the system may cause an accident. Always confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving.*

### NOTE

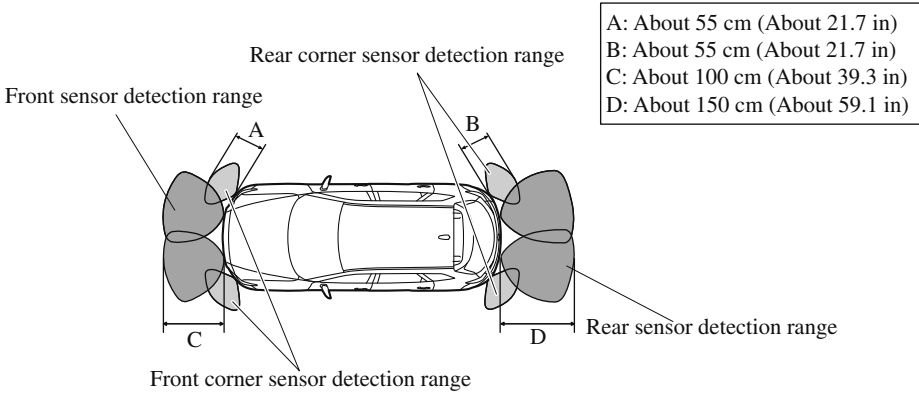
- Do not install any accessories within the detection ranges of the sensors. It may affect the system operation.
- Depending on the type of obstruction and the surrounding conditions, the detection range of a sensor may narrow, or the sensors may not be able to detect obstructions.
- The system may not operate normally under the following conditions:
  - Mud, ice, or snow is adhering to the sensor area (Returns to normal operation when removed).
  - The sensor area is frozen (Returns to normal operation when the ice is thawed).
  - The sensor is covered by a hand.
  - The sensor is excessively shocked.
  - The vehicle is excessively tilted.

- *Under extremely hot or cold weather conditions.*
- *The vehicle is driven on bumps, inclines, gravel, or grass covered roads.*
- *Anything which generates ultrasound is near the vehicle, such as another vehicle's horn, the engine sound of a motorcycle, the air brake sound of a large-sized vehicle, or another vehicle's sensors.*
- *The vehicle is driven in heavy rain or in road conditions causing water-splash.*
- *A commercially-available wing pole or an aerial for a radio transmitter is installed to the vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is moving towards a tall or square curbstone.*
- *An obstruction is too close to the sensor.*
- *Obstructions under the bumper may not be detected. Obstructions that are lower than the bumper or thin which may have been initially detected may no longer be detected as the vehicle approaches more closely to the obstruction.*
- *The following types of obstructions may not be detected:*
  - *Thin objects such as wire or rope*
  - *Things which absorb sonic waves easily such as cotton or snow*
  - *Angular shaped objects*
  - *Very tall objects, and those which are wide at the top*
  - *Small, short objects*
- *Always have the system inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if any shock is applied to the bumpers, even in a minor accident. If the sensors are deviated, they cannot detect obstructions.*
- *The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate or the indicator light does not illuminate when the park assist sensors switch is turned on. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
- *The system may have a malfunction if the beep sound which indicates a system malfunction is heard and the indicator light flashes. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
- *The beeper which indicates a system malfunction may not be heard if the ambient temperature is extremely cold, or mud, ice, or snow adheres to the sensor area. Remove any foreign material from the sensor area.*
- *When installing a trailer hitch, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

# Parking Sensor System

## ▼ Sensor Detection Range

The sensors detect obstructions within the following range.

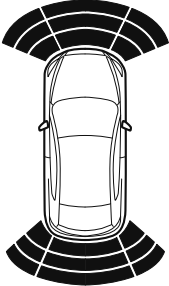
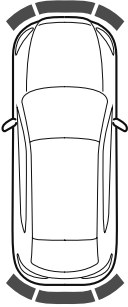
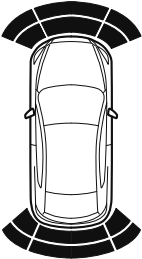
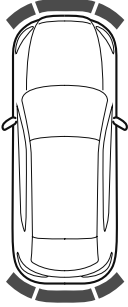
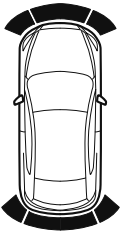
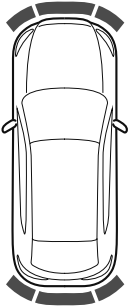


## Viewing distance display

Display		Distance between vehicle and obstruction	
Without 360° view monitor	With 360° view monitor	Front Sensor/Front Corner Sensor	Rear Sensor/Rear Corner Sensor
	Green 	Front sensor: Approx. 100—60 cm (39.3—23.6 in)	Rear sensor: Approx. 150—60 cm (59.0—23.6 in)



# Parking Sensor System

Display		Distance between vehicle and obstruction	
Without 360° view monitor	With 360° view monitor	Front Sensor/Front Corner Sensor	Rear Sensor/Rear Corner Sensor
	<p>Yellow</p> 	<p>Front sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in)</p> <p>Front corner sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—15.0 in)</p>	<p>Rear sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in)</p> <p>Rear corner sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—15.0 in)</p>
	<p>Amber</p> 	<p>Front sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in)</p> <p>Front corner sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (15.0—9.8 in)</p>	<p>Rear sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in)</p> <p>Rear corner sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (15.0—9.8 in)</p>
	<p>Red</p> 	<p>Front sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in)</p> <p>Front corner sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)</p>	<p>Rear sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in)</p> <p>Rear corner sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)</p>

# Parking Sensor System

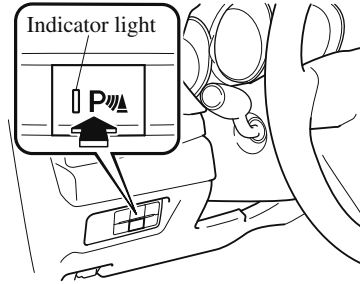
---

## ▼ Park Assist Sensor System Operation

When the parking sensor switch is pressed with the ignition switched ON, the buzzer sounds and the indicator light turns on.

When the ignition is switched ON with the parking sensor activated, the indicator light turns on.

Press the switch again to stop the operation.



## Operation conditions

The parking sensor system can be used when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The parking sensor switch is turned on.

## NOTE

- The detection indicator and buzzer of the front sensors/front corner sensors do not operate when the selector lever is in the P position.
- The detection indicator and buzzer sound do not activate when the parking brake is applied.

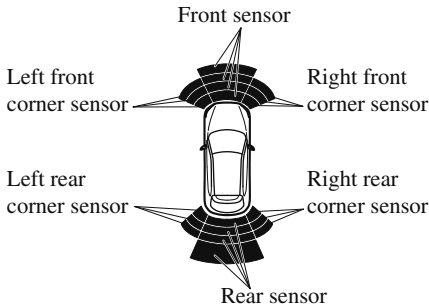
# Parking Sensor System

## ▼ Obstruction Detection Indication

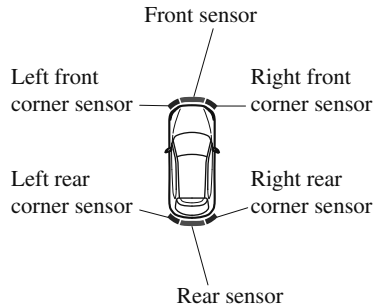
The position of a sensor which has detected an obstruction is indicated. The gauge illuminates in different areas depending on the distance to an obstruction detected by the sensor.

As the vehicle approaches closer to an obstruction, the zone in the gauge closer to the vehicle illuminates.

### Without 360° view monitor



### With 360° view monitor



### NOTE

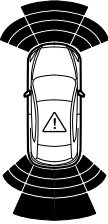

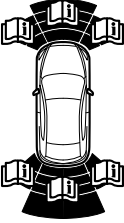
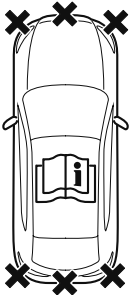
The detection indicator can switch between display and non-display.  
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

### System problem notification

If a problem occurs, the driver is notified of the problem by the following indications.

	Detection Indicator		Solution
	Without 360° view monitor	With 360° view monitor	
Disconnection			The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

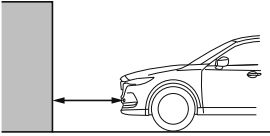
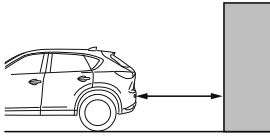
# Parking Sensor System

	Detection Indicator		Solution
	Without 360° view monitor	With 360° view monitor	
System malfunction			The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
Frost/soiling			Foreign matter may be on the sensor area corresponding to the obstruction detection indication shown. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

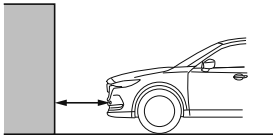
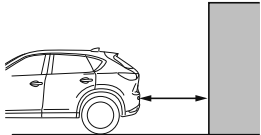
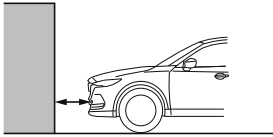
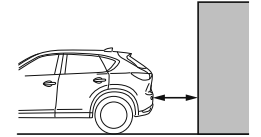
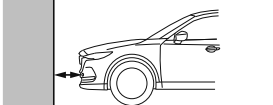
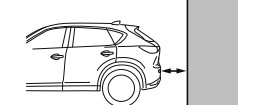
## ▼ Parking Sensor Warning BEEP

The beeper sounds as follows while the system is operating.

### Front Sensor, Rear Sensor

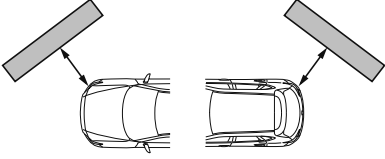
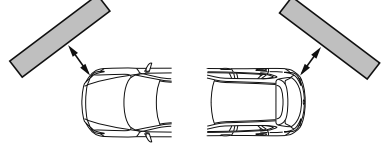
Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction		Beeper sound*1
	Front Sensor	Rear Sensor	
Farthest distance	Approx. 100—60 cm (39.3—23.6 in) 	Approx. 150—60 cm (59.0—23.6 in) 	Slow intermittent sound

# Parking Sensor System

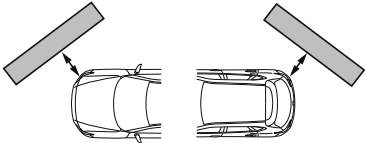
Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction		Beeper sound*1
	Front Sensor	Rear Sensor	
Far distance	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Continuous sound

\*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

## Front Corner Sensor, Rear Corner Sensor

Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
	Front/Rear Corner Sensor	
Far distance	Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—15.0 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 38—25 cm (15.0—9.8 in) 	Fast intermittent sound

# Parking Sensor System

Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
	Front/Rear Corner Sensor	
Close distance	Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in) 	Continuous sound

\*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

## NOTE

*If an obstruction is detected in a zone for 6 seconds or more, the beep sound is stopped (except for the close-distance zone). If the same obstruction is detected in another zone, the corresponding beep sound is heard.*

## ▼ When Warning Indicator/Beep is Activated

The system notifies the driver of an abnormality by activating the beep sound and the indicator light.

Indicator/Beep	How to check
The indicator light flashes when the parking sensor switch is pressed at a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
The beep sound is not heard.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.
The intermittent sound of the buzzer is heard 5 times.	Remove any foreign material from the sensor area. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
A certain obstruction detection indicator is continuously displayed.	Refer to Obstruction Detection Indication on page 4-187.

# 5

## Interior Features

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

<b>Air-Conditioning System.....</b>	<b>5-4</b>
Operating Tips.....	5-4
Vent Operation (Front).....	5-5
Front Air Conditioner.....	5-7
Vent Operation (Rear).....	5-11
Rear Air Conditioner.....	5-13
<b>Before Using the Audio System.....</b>	<b>5-16</b>
Audio Control Switch.....	5-16
AUX/USB mode.....	5-17
Aerial.....	5-19

<b>Audio Set.....</b>	<b>5-20</b>
Basic Operation Method.....	5-20
Home screen.....	5-24
Volume/Display/Sound	
Controls.....	5-25
Operating the Radio.....	5-27
Operating the Compact Disc (CD)	
Player* .....	5-29
Operating the Digital Versatile Disc	
(DVD) Player* .....	5-32
How to use AUX mode.....	5-35
How to use USB mode.....	5-36
How to use Apple CarPlay.....	5-41
How to use Android Auto™	
mode.....	5-44
Bluetooth® .....	5-48
Bluetooth® Preparation.....	5-51
Available Language* .....	5-53
Bluetooth® Audio.....	5-54
How to Use Aha™.....	5-57
How to Use Stitcher™ Radio.....	5-60
Bluetooth® Hands-Free.....	5-62
Voice Recognition.....	5-71
Settings.....	5-73
Applications.....	5-75
Troubleshooting.....	5-76
<b>Appendix.....</b>	<b>5-82</b>
Things You Need to Know.....	5-82

---

<b>Interior Equipment.....</b>	<b>5-93</b>
Sunvisors.....	5-93
Interior Lights.....	5-93
Accessory Sockets.....	5-95
USB Power Outlet.....	5-96
Cup Holder.....	5-98
Bottle Holder.....	5-99
Storage Compartments.....	5-99
Sunshade (Rear Door Window)* .....	.....
.....	5-104



# MEMO

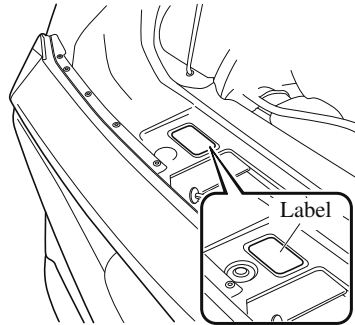
# Air-Conditioning System

## Operating Tips

- Operate the air-conditioning system with the engine running.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the fan control switch on for a long period of time with the ignition switched ON when the engine is not running.
- The airflow amount may decrease slightly while the i-stop function is operating.
- Clear all obstructions such as leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the cowl grille to improve the system efficiency.
- Use the air-conditioning system to defog the windows and dehumidify the air.
- The recirculate mode should be used when driving through tunnels or while in a traffic jam, or when you would like to shut off outside air for quick cooling of the interior.
- Use the outside air position for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then run the air-conditioning system.
- Run the air conditioner about 10 minutes at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated.
- Have the air conditioner checked before the weather gets hot. Lack of refrigerant may make the air conditioner less efficient.

The refrigerant specifications are indicated on a label attached to the inside of the engine compartment. If the wrong type of refrigerant is used, it could result in a serious malfunction of

the air conditioner. Consult a professional, government certified repairer for the inspection or repair because a special device is required for the air conditioner maintenance. For details, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



## Vent Operation (Front)

### ▼ Adjusting the Vents

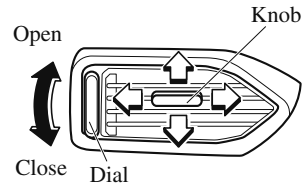
#### Directing airflow

To adjust the direction of airflow, move the adjustment knob.

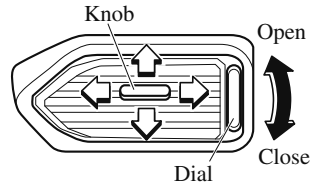
#### **NOTE**

- When using the air conditioner under humid ambient temperature conditions, the system may blow fog from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.
- The air vents can be fully opened and closed by operating the dial.

### Side Vents



### Centre Vents

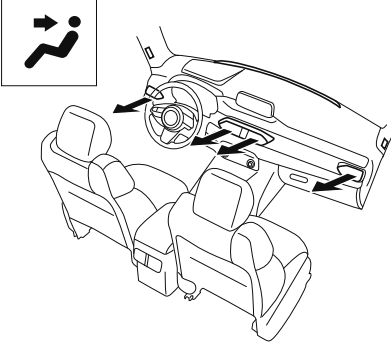


# Air-Conditioning System

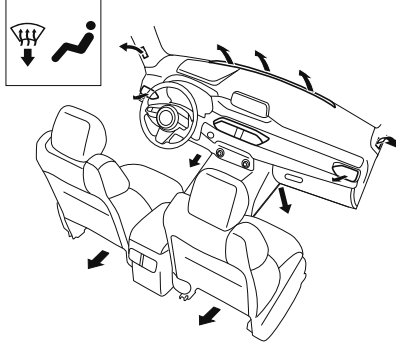
---

## ▼ Selecting the Airflow Mode

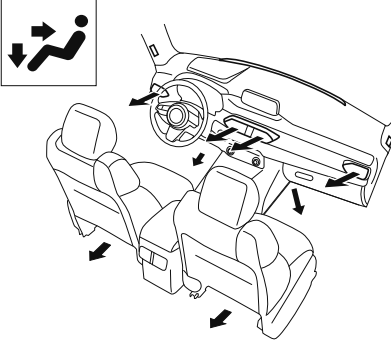
### Instrument panel Vents



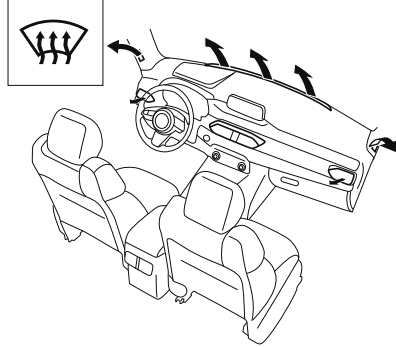
### Defroster and Floor Vents



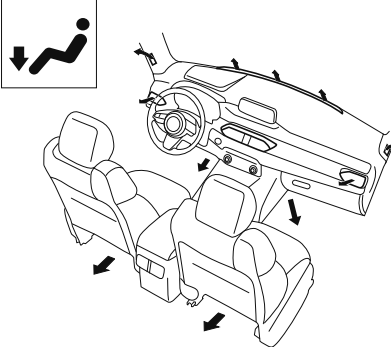
### Instrument panel and Floor Vents



### Defroster Vents



### Floor Vents



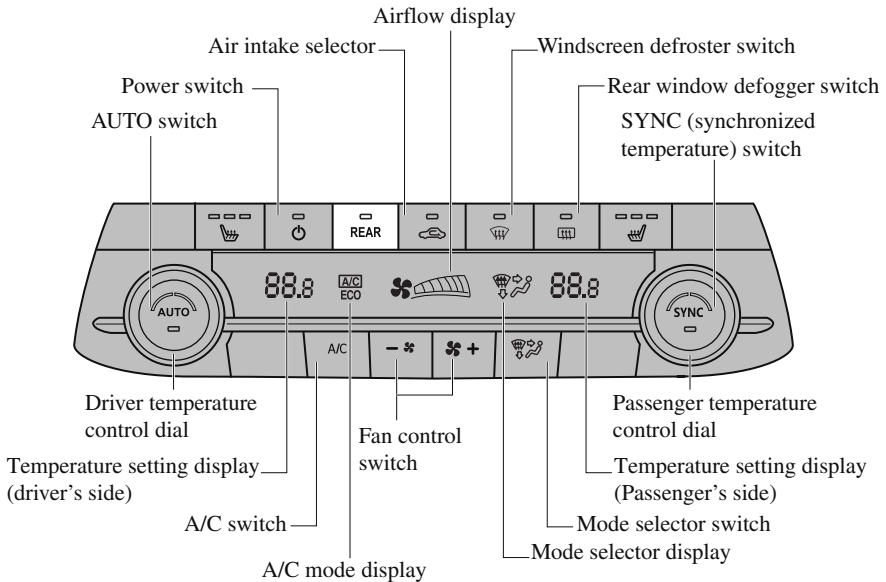
### **NOTE**

The location airflow exits the air vents and the airflow amount may change depending on the open or close status of the air vents.

# Air-Conditioning System

## Front Air Conditioner

Air-conditioning system information is displayed on the display.



### ▼ Control Switches

#### AUTO switch

By pressing the AUTO switch the following functions will be automatically controlled in accordance with the selected set temperature:

- Airflow temperature
- Amount of airflow
- Selection of airflow mode
- Outside/Recirculated air selection
- Air conditioner operation
- A/C or A/C ECO selection

#### **NOTE**

*AUTO switch indicator light*

• When on, it indicates auto operation, and the system will function automatically.

• If any of the following switches are operated while in auto control, the AUTO switch indicator turns off.

- Mode selector switch
- Fan control switch
- Windscreen defroster switch

*The functions for switches other than those operated continue to operate in auto control.*

#### **Power switch (Fan On/Off)**

The air-conditioning system turns on or off by pressing the power switch.

## Air-Conditioning System

---

### Temperature control dial

This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold.

#### **(Except Thailand)**

Turn the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature between 15 °C (60 °F) and 29 °C (84 °F).

#### **(Thailand)**

Turn the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature between 18 °C (64 °F) and 32 °C (90 °F).

- When the SYNC switch is on:  
Turn the driver temperature control dial to control the temperature throughout the entire cabin.
- When the SYNC switch is off:  
Turn the driver or front passenger temperature control dial to independently control the temperature on each side of the cabin.

### **NOTE**

- *The air-conditioning system changes to the individual operation mode (SYNC switch indicator light turns off) by turning the front passenger temperature control dial even when the SYNC switch is on, which allows individual control of the set temperature for the driver and front passenger.*
- *When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, “Lo” or “Hi” is displayed.*
- *The temperature units for the temperature setting display can be changed in conjunction with the temperature units for the outside temperature display. Refer to Outside Temperature Display on page 4-23.*




### Fan control switch

The fan has 7 speeds. The selected speed will be displayed.

### Mode selector switch

The desired airflow mode can be selected (page 5-6).

### **NOTE**

- *With the airflow mode set to the  position and the temperature control dial set at a medium temperature, heated air is directed to the feet and air at a comparably lower temperature will flow through the central, left and right vents.*
- *To set the air vent to , press the windscreen defroster switch.*
- *In the  position, the air conditioner is automatically turned on and the outside air position is automatically selected to defrost the windscreen.*

### A/C switch

Pressing the A/C switch while the AUTO switch is turned on will turn off the air conditioner (cooling/dehumidifying functions).

The on/off of the air conditioner switches each time the A/C switch is pressed.

Changes as follows each time the A/C switch is pressed.

A/C→A/C ECO→Stop

### **NOTE**

- *The air conditioner operates when the A/C switch is pressed while the air conditioner is turned off.*

# Air-Conditioning System

- The A/C ECO function is designed to economize use of the air-conditioning system. "A/C ECO" is displayed to indicate that the air-conditioning system is operating at optimum control.
- The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).

## Air intake selector

Outside or recirculated air positions can be selected. Press the switch to select outside/recirculated air positions.

### **Recirculated air position (indicator light turns on)**

Outside air is shut off. Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas) or when quick cooling is desired.

### **Outside air position (indicator light turns off)**

Outside air is allowed to enter the cabin. Use this mode for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.



### **Do not recirculate the air in the cabin during cold or rainy weather:**

*Recirculating the air in the cabin during cold and rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.*

## SYNC (Synchronized Temperature) switch

Use the SYNC switch to change the mode between the individual operation (driver

and passenger) and interconnection (simultaneous) modes.

### **Interconnection mode (indicator light turns on)**

The set temperature for the driver and front passenger is controlled simultaneously.

### **Individual operation mode (indicator light turns off)**

The set temperature can be controlled individually for the driver and front passenger.

## Windscreen defroster switch

Press the switch to defrost the windscreen and front door windows. Refer to Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging on page 5-10.

## Rear window defogger switch

Press the rear window defogger switch to defrost the rear window. Refer to Rear Window Defogger on page 4-53.

## **▼ Operation of Automatic Air Conditioner**

1. Press the AUTO switch. Selection of the airflow mode, air intake selector and amount of airflow will be automatically controlled.
2. Use the temperature control dial to select a desired temperature. If you want to set the temperature on the front passenger's side separately from the driver's side, turn the front passenger temperature control dial to switch the mode automatically to the individual operation mode and set the

# Air-Conditioning System

temperature for the front passenger's side.

To turn off the system, press the power switch.

## NOTE

### · (Except Thailand)

Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 22 °C (72 °F), and then adjust it as desired.

### · (Thailand)

Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.

· Setting the temperature to maximum hot or cold will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.

· When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until the engine has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.

## ▼ Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging

Press the windscreen defroster switch.

In this position, the outside air position is automatically selected, and the air conditioner automatically turns on. The air conditioner will directly dehumidify the air to the front windscreen and side windows on page 5-6.

Airflow amount will be increased.

## ⚠ WARNING

Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when defogging (☀ position):

Using the ☀ position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windscreen to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

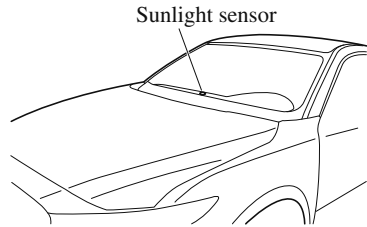
## NOTE

Use the temperature control dial to increase the air flow temperature and defog the windscreen more quickly.

## ▼ Sunlight/Interior temperature sensor

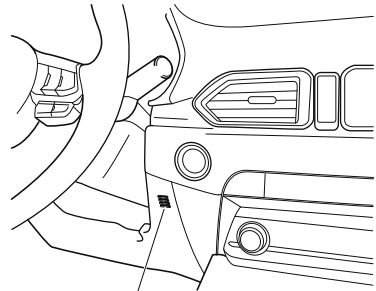
### Sunlight sensor

Do not place objects on the sunlight sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



### Interior temperature sensor

Do not cover the interior temperature sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.





## Vent Operation (Rear)

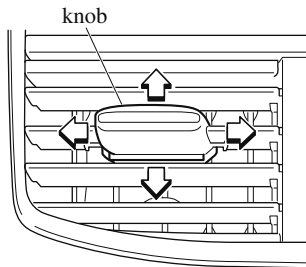
### ▼ Adjusting the Vents

#### Directing airflow

You can direct air flow by moving the adjustment knob.

#### **NOTE**

*When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.*

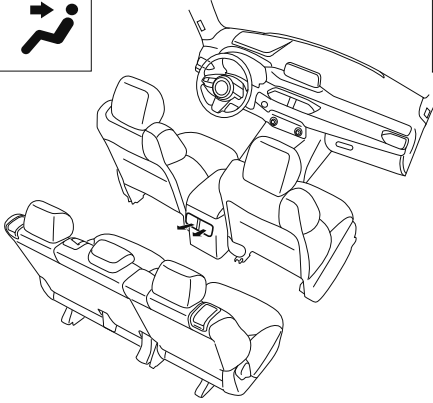


# Air-Conditioning System

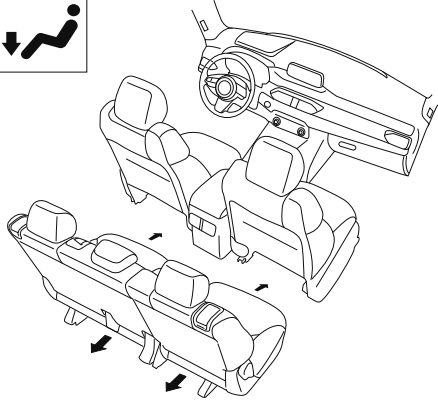
---

## ▼ Selecting the Airflow Mode

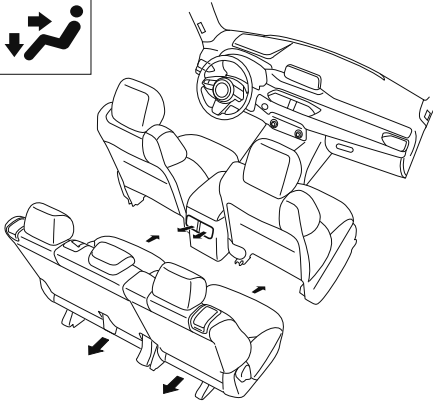
### Instrument panel Vents



### Floor Vents



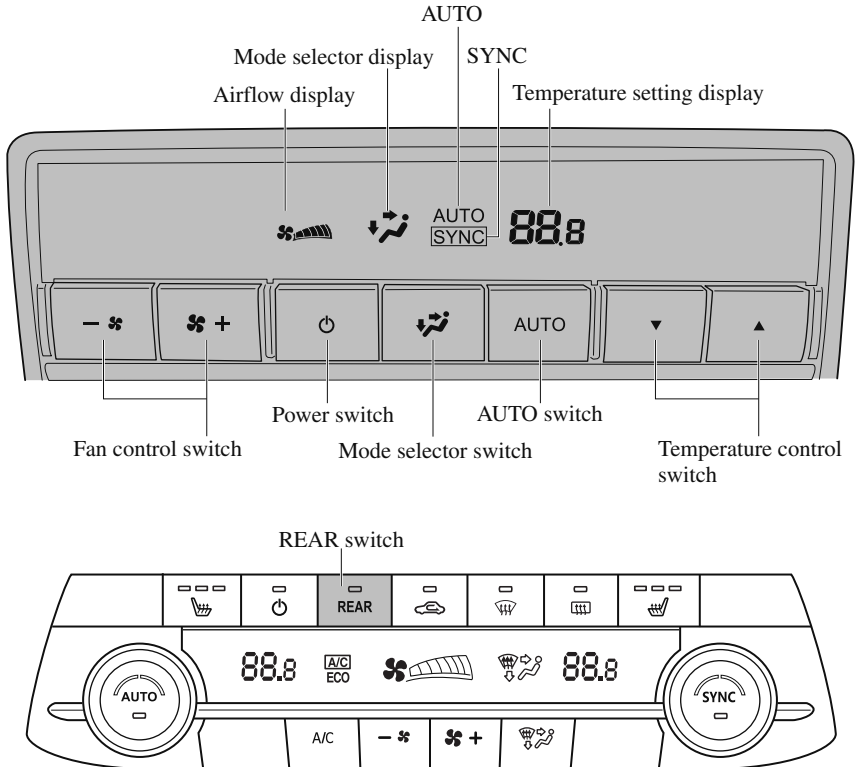
### Instrument panel and Floor Vents



# Air-Conditioning System

## Rear Air Conditioner

Air-conditioning system information is displayed on the display.



### ▼ Control Switches

#### Rear switch

Press the rear switch to operate the rear air conditioner.

The indicator illuminates to indicate that the rear air conditioner is operating.

#### AUTO switch

By pressing the AUTO switch the following functions will be automatically controlled in accordance with the set temperature:

- Airflow temperature
- Amount of airflow
- Selection of airflow mode

#### Power switch

The rear air-conditioning system turns on or off by pressing the power switch.

#### Temperature control switch

This switch controls temperature. Press ▲ for hot and ▼ for cold.

## Air-Conditioning System

---

### **(Except Thailand)**

Operate the temperature control switch to adjust the temperature between 15 °C (60 °F) and 29 °C (84 °F).

### **(Thailand)**

Operate the temperature control switch to adjust the temperature between 18 °C (64 °F) and 32 °C (90 °F).

### **NOTE**

When the temperature control switch is set to the maximum or minimum, “Hi” or “Lo” is indicated on the display.

### **Fan control switch**

The fan has five speeds. The selected speed will be displayed.

### **Mode selector switch**

The desired airflow mode can be selected. Refer to Selecting the Airflow Mode on page 5-12.

### **▼ Operation of Automatic Air Conditioner**

#### **Operation from front seats**

1. Turn the front air conditioner on.
2. Press the rear switch. The rear air conditioner operates.
3. Selection of the airflow mode, airflow amount and temperature will be automatically controlled to the same temperature setting as the front air conditioner for the driver's side.

### **NOTE**

#### **· (Except Thailand)**

Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 22 °C (72 °F), and then adjust it as desired.

#### **· (Thailand)**

Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.

- If the AUTO switch is pressed while the front A/C switch is off, the rear air conditioner operates only to circulate air.
- Setting the temperature to the maximum high or low will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.
- When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.
- When the rear air conditioner is controlled to the same temperature setting as the front air conditioner for the driver's side, “SYNC” is displayed on the rear screen.
- When operating the fan switch of the front air conditioner while the rear air conditioner is operating automatically, the airflow amount of the rear air conditioner may change.

#### **Operation from rear seats**

1. Turn the front air conditioner on.
2. Press the AUTO switch. The selection of the airflow mode and airflow amount will be automatically controlled.
3. Use the temperature control switch to set the desired temperature.

### **NOTE**

#### **· (Except Thailand)**

Set the control switch to the recommended temperature of 22 °C (72 °F), and then adjust it as desired.

- **(Thailand)**

- *Set the control switch to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.*

- *If the AUTO switch is pressed while the front A/C switch is off, the rear air conditioner operates only to circulate air.*

- *Setting the temperature to the maximum high or low will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.*

- *When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.*

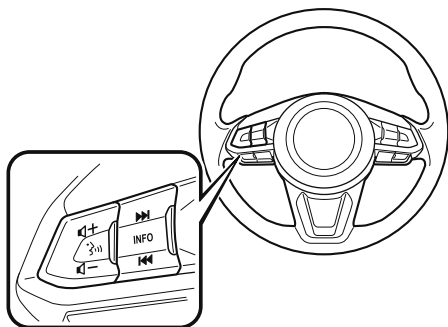
- *When the rear air conditioner is operated automatically, "AUTO" is displayed on the rear screen.*

- *When the rear air conditioner is controlled to the same temperature setting as the front air conditioner for the driver's side, "SYNC" is displayed on the rear screen.*

To turn off the system, press the Power switch.

## Before Using the Audio System

### Audio Control Switch



#### ▼ Adjusting the Volume

To increase the volume, press up the volume switch (+).

To decrease the volume, press down the volume switch (-).



#### ▼ Seek Switch

##### AM/FM radio

Press the seek switch (◀▶). The radio switches to the next/previous stored station in the order that it was stored. Press and hold the seek switch (◀▶) to seek all usable stations at a higher or lower frequency whether programmed or not.

Radio stations which have been previously stored in the favourite radio can be called up by pressing the seek switch (◀▶) while any radio station stored in the favourite radio is being received. Radio stations can be called up in the order they

were stored with each press of the switch (◀▶).



##### USB Audio/Bluetooth® Audio/CD\*

Press the seek switch (▶▶) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.

Press the seek switch (◀◀) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.

Press the seek switch (◀◀) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Press and hold the seek switch (◀◀, ▶▶) to continuously switch the tracks up or down.

##### DVD \*

Press the seek switch (▶▶) to skip forward to the beginning of the next chapter.

Press the seek switch (◀◀) to return to the beginning of the previous chapter.

##### Aha™/Stitcher™ Radio

Press the seek switch (▶▶) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.

Press and hold the seek switch (▶▶) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Like”.

Press and hold the seek switch (◀◀) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Dislike”.

# Before Using the Audio System

## AUX/USB mode

Audio can be heard from the vehicle's speakers by connecting a commercially-available portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.

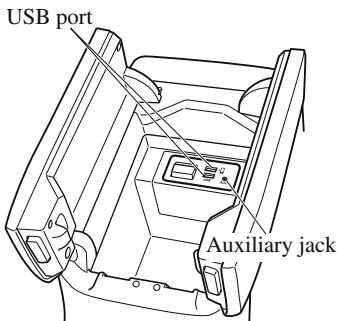
A commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5 $\phi$ ) stereo mini plug lead is required.

Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

In addition, audio can be played from the vehicle audio device by connecting a USB device to the USB port.

### NOTE

The SD card slot is for the navigation system. For vehicles with the navigation system, the SD card (Mazda genuine) with stored map data is inserted into the SD card slot and used.



- ① How to use AUX mode.....page 5-35
- ② How to use USB mode..... page 5-36
- ③ How to use Apple CarPlay .....  
..... page 5-41
- ④ How to use Android Auto™  
mode..... page 5-44

## ⚠ WARNING

**Do not adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle:** Adjusting the portable audio unit or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust the portable audio unit or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.

## ⚠ CAUTION

Depending on the portable audio device, noise may occur when the device is connected to the vehicle accessory socket. (If noise occurs, do not use the accessory socket.)

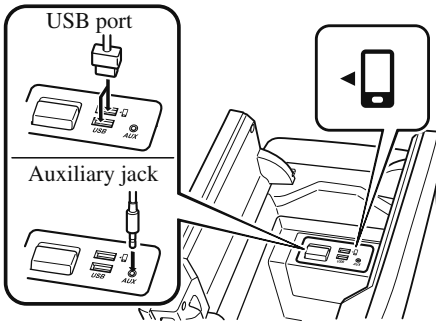
### NOTE

- This mode may not be usable depending on the portable audio device to be connected.
- Before using the auxiliary jack/USB port, refer to the instruction manual for the portable audio device.
- Use a commercially-available, non-impedance (3.5 $\phi$ ) stereo mini plug for connecting the portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack. Before using the auxiliary jack, read the manufacturer's instructions for connecting a portable audio unit to the auxiliary jack.
- To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the auxiliary input for long periods with the engine off or idling.

## Before Using the Audio System

· When connecting a device to the auxiliary jack or USB port, noise may occur depending on the connected device. If the device is connected to the vehicle's accessory socket, the noise can be reduced by unplugging it from the accessory socket.

### ▼ How to connect USB port/Auxiliary jack



### Connecting a device

1. Open the console lid.
2. Connect the connector on the device to the USB port.

### Connecting with a connector lead

1. Open the console lid.
2. Connect the device plug/connector lead to the auxiliary jack/USB port. Pass the device plug/connector lead through the notch in the console and connect.

### **! WARNING**


***Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the selector lever:***

Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the selector lever is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

### **! CAUTION**

Do not place objects or apply force to the auxiliary jack/USB port with the plug connected.

### **NOTE**

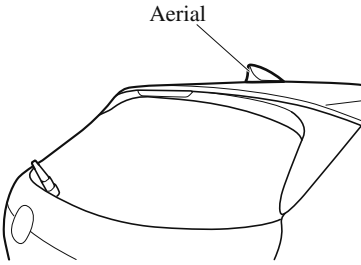
- Insert the plug into the auxiliary jack/USB port securely.
- Insert or pull out the plug with the plug perpendicular to the auxiliary jack/USB port hole.
- Insert or remove the plug by holding its base.
- Use the USB terminal indicated by the  mark when using Apple CarPlay and Android Auto™.



# Before Using the Audio System

---

## Aerial



## Basic Operation Method

### NOTE

- The explanation of functions described in this manual may differ from the actual operation, and the shapes of screens and buttons and the letters and characters displayed may also differ from the actual appearance.  
Additionally, depending on future software updates, the content may successively change without notice.
- For additional information regarding Mazda Connect, please refer to the following Website.  
<http://infotainment.mazdahandsfree.com/>

Audio Set has 3 different human interfaces.

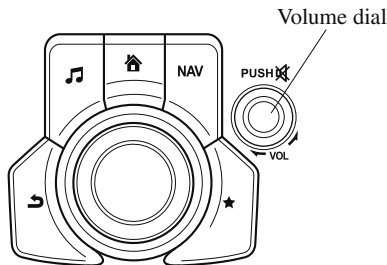
- Commander switch
- Touch panel
- Voice recognition with steering switch and microphone  
Refer to Voice Recognition on page 5-71.

### ▼ Commander switch operation

### NOTE

For safety reasons, some operations are disabled while the vehicle is being driven.

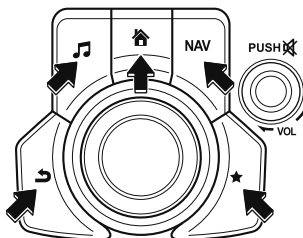
### Volume dial operation



Press the volume knob to mute and pause. However, while an audio source which cannot be paused such as FM radio is playing, only mute is available. Press the volume knob again to resume the audio.

Turn the volume dial to adjust the volume. The volume increases by turning the dial clockwise, and decreases by turning it anticlockwise.

## Switches around commander knob



The following operations can be done by pressing the switches around the commander knob.

**🏠** : Displays the home screen.

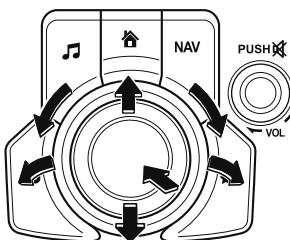
**🎵** : Displays the Entertainment screen.

**NAV** : Displays the Navigation screen (Only navigation-equipped vehicles). For operation of the Navigation screen, refer to the navigation system manual. If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed.

**★** : Displays the Favourites screen. Long-press to store particular items in Favourites. (Radio, phonebook and destination of the navigation system can be programmed.)

**↶** : Returns to previous screen.

## Commander knob operation



### (Selection of icons on screen)

1. Tilt or turn the commander knob and move the cursor to the desired icon.
2. Press the commander knob and select the icon.

### **NOTE**

*Long-press operation of the commander knob is also possible for some functions.*

# Audio Set

---

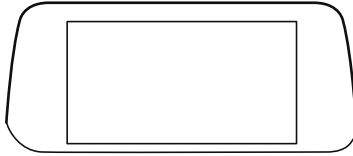
## ▼ Touch panel operation



*Do not press the screen strongly or press it with a sharp-pointed object. Otherwise, the screen could be damaged.*

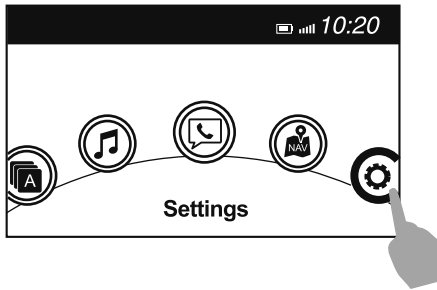
### **NOTE**

*For safety reasons, operation of the centre display is disabled while the vehicle is being driven. However, items not displayed in grey can be operated using the commander switch while the vehicle is being driven.*



## Touch & Tap

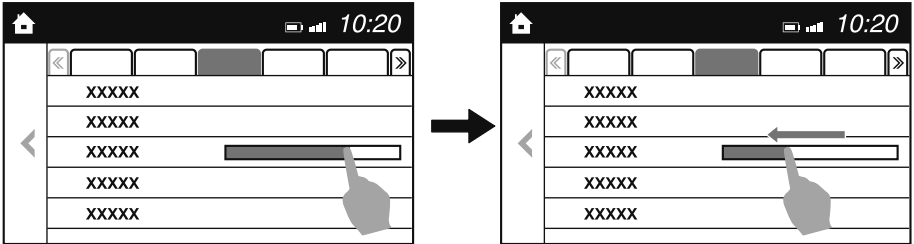
1. Touch or tap on the item indicated on the screen.
2. The operation is launched and the next item is displayed.



## Slide (USB audio only)

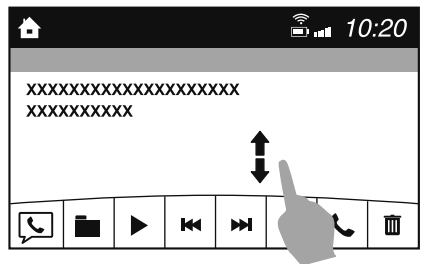
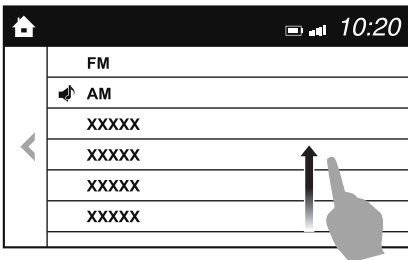
1. Touch the setting item displaying a slider bar.

2. Touch the slider with your finger and move to the desired level.




### Swipe


1. Touch the screen with your finger and move up or down.
2. Items which were not displayed can be displayed.



### **Return to previous screen**

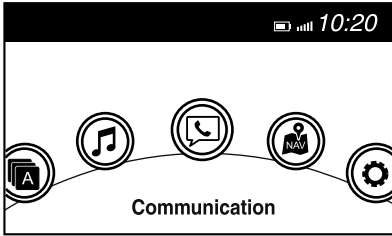
1. Touch the .

### **Displaying the home screen**

1. Touch the .

# Audio Set

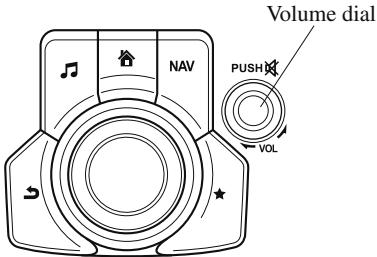
## Home screen



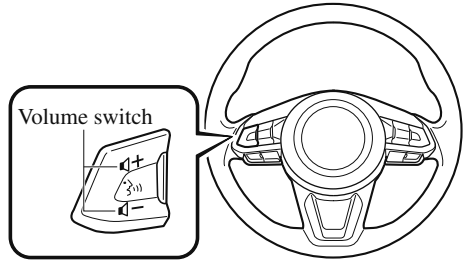
Icon	Function
	<p><b>Applications</b> Information such as average fuel economy, maintenance, and warnings can be verified. Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.</p>
	<p><b>Entertainment</b> Operates audio such as the radio and CDs. The audio source most recently used is displayed. An audio source which cannot be used at that time is skipped and the previous audio source is displayed.  To change the audio source, select the  icon displayed at the bottom of the screen.</p>
	<p><b>Communication</b> Bluetooth® related functions are available.</p>
	<p><b>Navigation</b> Navigation screen is displayed (vehicles with navigation system). If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed. The compass may not indicate the correct bearing when the vehicle is stopped or traveling at a slow speed.</p>
	<p><b>Settings</b> Overall setting menu (Such as display, sound, Bluetooth® and Language). Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.</p>

## Volume/Display/Sound Controls

### Commander switch



### Audio control switch




### ▼ Volume adjustment

Turn the commander switch volume dial. The volume switch on the steering switch can also be pressed.

#### **NOTE**

*Press the volume knob to mute and pause. However, while an audio source which cannot be paused such as FM radio is playing, only mute is available. Press the volume knob again to resume the audio.*

### ▼ Display setting

Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen. Select the **[Display]** tab to select the item you would like to change.

#### **Display OFF/Clock**

The centre display can be turned off. Select **[Turn Display Off]** to turn the display off. When **[Turn Display Off and Show Clock]** is selected the centre display turns off and the clock is displayed. The centre display can be turned back on as follows:

- Touch the centre display.
- Operate the commander switch.

### Daytime/nighttime (Mode) screen setting

The daytime or nighttime screen can be selected.

**[Auto]** : Switches screen automatically according to position lights illumination condition. However, when the light sensor detects that the surrounding area is bright such as when the position lights are turned on in the daytime, the screen is switched to the daytime screen\*<sup>1</sup>

**[Day]** : Daytime screen setting

**[Night]** : Nighttime screen setting

\*<sup>1</sup> The display is constantly on daytime screen when the illumination dimmer is cancelled.

#### **Brightness adjustment**

Adjust the centre display brightness using the slider.

#### **Contrast adjustment**

Adjust the centre display contrast using the slider.


#### **Display setting reset**

All of the screen setting values can be reset to their initial settings.

# Audio Set

1. Select **Reset**.
2. Select **Yes**.

## ▼ Audio sound adjustment

Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.

Select the **Sound** tab to select the item you would like to change.

Indication	Setting value
Bass (Low pitch sound)	+ Side: Low pitch enhancement - Side: Low pitch reduction
Treble (Treble sound)	+ Side: Treble enhancement - Side: Treble reduction
Fade (Front/Rear volume balance)	Front: Front speaker volume enhancement Rear: Rear speaker volume enhancement
Balance (Left/right volume balance)	Right: Right speaker volume enhancement Left: Left speaker volume enhancement
Guidance Volume (Volume adjustment during route guidance on navigation screen)	Left: Low volume Right: High volume
ALC*1 (Automatic volume adjustment)	Off—Adjustment at seven levels
Bose® Centerpoint*2 (Surround technology)	On/Off
Bose® AudioPilot*2 (Noise compensation technology)	On/Off
Beep (Audio operation sound)	On/Off

\*1 Standard audio

\*2 Bose® sound system

### ALC (Automatic volume adjustment)

The automatic level control (ALC) is a feature that automatically adjusts audio

volume according to the vehicle speed. The volume increases in accordance with the increase in vehicle speed, and decreases as vehicle speed decreases.

### Bose® Centerpoint (Surround technology)

Centerpoint\*3 lets vehicle owners enjoy a Bose® surround sound experience. Specifically engineered to meet the unique demands of reproducing surround sound in a vehicle.

Converts stereo signals to multiple channels allowing greater precision when reproducing the sound.

An enhanced algorithm to simultaneously create a wider, more spacious sound field. \*3 Centerpoint is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.

### Bose® AudioPilot (Noise compensation technology)

When driving, background noise can interfere with enjoying music.

AudioPilot\*4 noise compensation technology continuously adjusts the music to compensate for background noise and vehicle speed.

It reacts only to sustained noise sources and not intermittent ones, such as speed bumps.

An enhanced DSP algorithm allows faster and more effective compensation for unusual situations, such as driving on a very rough road or at high speeds.

\*4 AudioPilot is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.











## Operating the Radio

### ▼ Radio ON

Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When selecting the desired radio, the following icons are indicated in the lower part of the centre display.


#### AM/FM Radio

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the station list. Select <b>Update Station List</b> to display the frequencies of up to 10 radio stations on the auto memory preset list. Select the desired frequency.
	Displays the Favourites list. Long-press to store radio station currently being aired.
	You can search for receivable radio stations. Scanning stops at each station for about 5 seconds. Select again to continue receiving the radio station.
	You can change the radio frequency manually. Rotate the commander knob, slide the screen, or touch the radio frequency. Press ◀ or ▶ to change the radio frequency one step at a time. When ◀ or ▶ is long-pressed, the radio frequency changes continually. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Automatic radio station selection.
	When long-pressed, the radio frequency changes continually. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.


### ▼ Favourites Radio

Selected stations can be registered for convenient operation. Up to 50 stations can be registered. The Favourites list is common to AM and FM radio.

#### Registering to Favourites

Long-press the  icon to register the current radio station. The registration can

also be performed using the following procedure.

1. Select the  icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select **Add/Edit Radio Favourites**.
3. Select **Add <active station>**.
4. The station is added to the bottom of the Favourites list.

# Audio Set

---

## **NOTE**

*If the battery is disconnected, your Favourites list will be not deleted.*

## **Selecting radio station from Favourites**

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select the radio frequency to tune in the radio station.

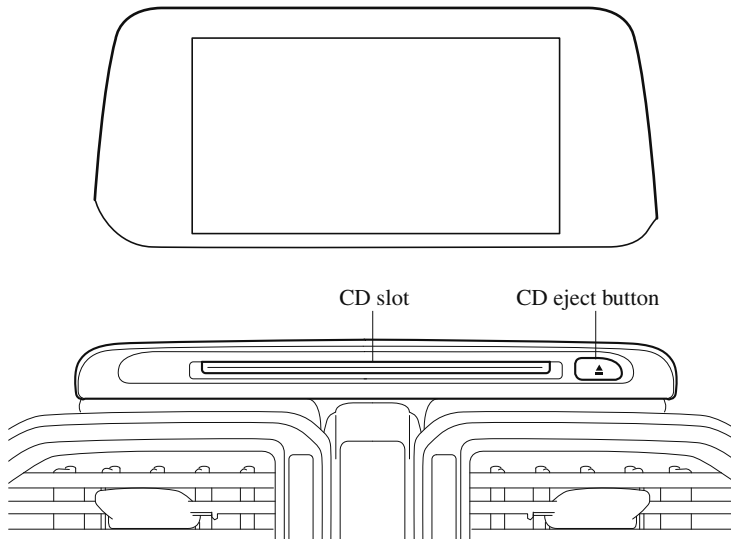
## **Deleting from Favourites**

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select **Add/Edit Radio Favourites**.
3. Select **Delete**.
4. Select the radio frequency you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.

## **Changing Favourites list order**

1. Select the ★ icon to display the Favourites list.
2. Select **Add/Edit Radio Favourites**.
3. Select **Move**.
4. Select a radio frequency. The selected radio station can be moved.
5. Slide the radio station or move it using the commander switch, then select **OK**.

## Operating the Compact Disc (CD) Player\*



Type	Playable data
Music/MP3/WMA/AA C CD player	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Music data (CD-DA)</li><li>• MP3/WMA/AAC file</li></ul>

### **NOTE**

*If a disc has both music data (CD-DA) and MP3/WMA/AAC files, playback of the 2 or 3 file types differs depending on how the disc was recorded.*

### **Inserting the CD**

Insert the CD into the slot, label-side up. The auto-loading mechanism will set the CD and begin play.

### **NOTE**



*There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the CD.*







### **Ejecting the CD**





Press the CD eject button (▲) to eject the CD.

# Audio Set


## ▼ Playback

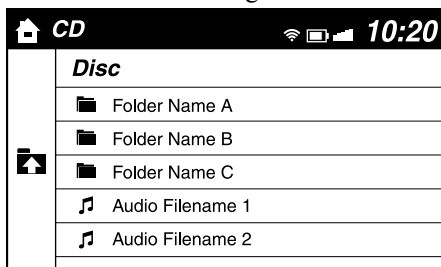
Select the  icon on the home screen with a CD inserted and display the Entertainment screen. When  is selected, the following icons are indicated in the lower part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	<p><b>(Music CD)</b> Displays the track list of the CD. Select the track you want to play.</p> <p><b>(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)</b> Displays the top level folder/file list. Select the folder you want to select. The files in the selected folder are displayed. Select the file you want to play.</p>
	<p><b>(MP3/WMA/AAC CDs only)</b> Displays the file list of the folder currently being played. Select the song you want to listen to.</p>
	<p><b>(Music CD)</b> Replays the song currently being played repeatedly. Select it again to cancel.</p> <p><b>(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)</b> Replays the song currently being played repeatedly. When selected again, the songs in the folder are played repeatedly. Select it again to cancel.</p>
	<p><b>(Music CD)</b> Plays songs on the CD in random order. Select it again to cancel.</p> <p><b>(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)</b> Plays songs in the folder in random order. When selected again, the songs on the CD are played in random order. Select it again to cancel.</p>
	<p><b>(Music CD)</b> The beginning of each track on a CD is played to aid in searching for a desired track. When selected again, the operation is cancelled and the song currently being played continues.</p> <p><b>(MP3/WMA/AAC CD)</b> The beginning of each track in a folder is played to aid in searching for a desired track. When selected again, the operation is cancelled and the song currently being played continues.</p> <p>If the audio is operated during scan-play, the track being scan-played is played normally. Then, the audio operation is performed.</p>


Icon	Function
	<p>If selected within a few seconds of a song which has started to play, the previous song is selected.</p> <p>If more than a few seconds have elapsed after a song has begun to play, the song currently being played is replayed from the beginning.</p> <p>Long-press to fast reverse. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.</p>
	<p>Plays a CD. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.</p>
	<p>Advances to the beginning of the next song.</p> <p>Long-press to fast forward. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.</p>
	<p>Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level.</p> <p>Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.</p>

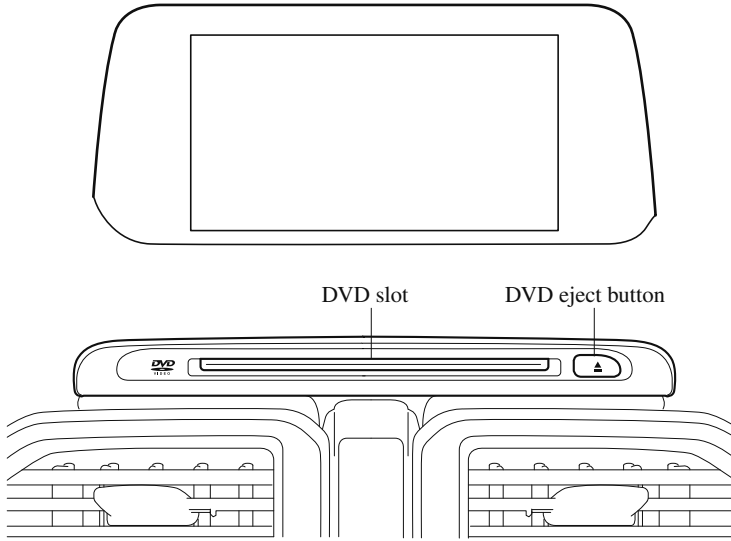
**Example of use (When searching for a song from the top level of an MP3/WMA/AAC CD)**

1. Select the  icon to display the folder/file list at the top level.
2. When the folder is selected, folders/file lists in the folder are displayed.
3. Select the desired song.



**NOTE**

- Select  to move to a folder one level higher.
- The appearance of the repeat and shuffle icons changes depending on the type of operation in which the function is used.

**Operating the Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) Player\***

Type	Playable data
DVD VIDEO/ DVD-VR player	DVD VIDEO/DVD-VR file

**Inserting the DVD**

Insert the DVD into the slot, label-side up. The DVD is inserted automatically and the top menu screen of the DVD disc and controller are displayed.


***NOTE***











*There will be a short lapse before play begins while the player reads the digital signals on the DVD.*

**Ejecting the DVD**

Press the DVD eject button (▲) to eject the DVD.


▼ **Playback**

Select the  icon on the home screen with a DVD inserted and display the Entertainment screen. When **DVD** is selected, the DVD top menu screen and the controller are displayed. When starting the playback by operating the controller, the following icons are displayed at the bottom of the screen.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Returns to the DVD menu screen.
	Returns to the beginning of the previous chapter if the icon is selected within a few seconds after the playback of the current chapter has started. Returns to the beginning of the current chapter if the icon is selected a few seconds after the playback of the current chapter has started. Long-press during playback to fast reverse. Long-press during pause to play in reverse in slow motion. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Plays the DVD. Select again to pause the playback.
	Advances to the beginning of the next chapter. Long-press during playback to fast forward. Long-press during pause to play in slow motion. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Changes camera angle each time the icon is selected (usable DVDs only).
	Changes display/non-display of the sub titles (usable DVDs only).
	Changes the parental lock setting. Parental lock level and PIN code setting changes are possible.
	Pauses the playback and displays the DVD setting screen. Select <b>Audio Settings</b> to adjust the sound quality. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25. Select <b>Aspect Ratio</b> to change the aspect ratio (horizontal to vertical ratio of the screen). 16:9 Widescreen, 4:3 Letterbox, and 4:3 Pan-scan are available.
	Adjusts the screen. Displays the video setting screen at the bottom of the screen.

# Audio Set


## NOTE

- For safety reasons, images are not displayed while the vehicle is being driven.
- Slide the  of the controller to move the controller.
- If the mode is switched to DVD mode once the DVD playback has stopped, the playback restarts without displaying the DVD menu screen.


## ▼ Setting DVD functions

Sound quality and aspect ratio settings can be performed.

### Setting sound quality


1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Audio Settings** to adjust the sound quality.  
Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.

### Setting aspect ratio

1. Select the  icon.
2. Select **Aspect Ratio**.
3. Select a desired aspect ratio.

## ▼ Setting image quality

Brightness, contrast, tint, colour density can be adjusted.

When the  icon is selected, the following tabs are displayed at the bottom of the screen.


Tab	Function
<b>Brightness</b>	Screen brightness can be adjusted using the slider.
<b>Contrast</b>	Screen contrast can be adjusted using the slider.
<b>Tint</b>	Colour tone of the screen can be adjusted using the slider.



Tab	Function
<b>Colour</b>	Screen colour can be adjusted using the slider.
<b>Reset</b>	Screen settings can be reset to initial values. Select <b>Reset</b> .



## How to use AUX mode

### ▼ Playback

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
2. Select **AUX** to switch to the AUX mode. The following icons are displayed in the lower part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.

### NOTE

- If a device is not connected to the auxiliary jack, the mode does not switch to the AUX mode.
- Adjust the audio volume using the portable audio device, commander switch, or audio control switch.
- Audio adjustments can also be made using the portable audio device's volume setting.
- If the connection plug is pulled out from the auxiliary jack while in AUX mode, noise may occur.

# Audio Set

## How to use USB mode


Type	Playable data
USB mode	MP3/WMA/AAC/OGG file










This unit does not support a USB 3.0 device. In addition, other devices may not be supported depending on the model or OS version.


The recommended capacity of the USB memory is 32 GB or less.

USB devices formatted to FAT32 are supported (USB devices formatted to other formats such as NTFS are not supported).

### ▼ Playback

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
2. Select **[USB 1]** or **[USB 2]** to switch the USB mode. The following icons are displayed in the lower part of the centre display.


Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Category list is displayed.
	Current track list is displayed. Select a desired track to play it.
	Plays the current track repeatedly. Select it again to play the tracks in the current track list repeatedly. When selected again, the function is cancelled.
	Tracks in the current track list are played randomly. Select it again to cancel.
	Starts playing a track similar to the current track using Gracenote®'s More Like This™. Select the desired song from the category list to cancel More Like This™.
	If selected within a few seconds from the beginning of a song which has started to play, the previous song is selected. If more than a few seconds have elapsed, the song currently being played is replayed from the beginning. Long-press to fast reverse. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Track is played. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.
	Advances to the beginning of the next song. Long-press to fast forward.

Icon	Function
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.

**NOTE**

- If a file name in the USB memory is too long, it could cause operation problems such as not being able to playback the song.  
(Recommended: Within 80 characters)
- The album art may not display depending on the album art size.
- To move to the desired location on the track, move the slider indicating the playback time.
- The appearance of the repeat and shuffle icons changes depending on the type of operation in which the function is used.

**Category list**

Select the  icon to display the following category list.  
 Select a desired category and item.

Category	Function
Playlist*1	Displays playlists on the device.
Artist	Displays the artist name list. All the tracks or tracks for each album of the selected artist can be played.
Album	Displays the album name list.
Song	All the tracks in the device are displayed.
Genre	Displays the genre list. All the tracks or tracks per album or artist in the selected genre can be played.
Audiobook*2	Displays the audiobook list. Chapters can be selected and played.
Podcast*2	Displays the podcast list. Episode can be selected and played.
Apple Music Radio*2	Displays Apple Music Radio stations. A station can be selected and played.
Folder*3	Displays the folder/file list.


\*1 Playlist folders of Apple devices are not supported.

\*2 Apple device only

\*3 USB-Sticks and USB-Android™ device only

**Example of use (to play all tracks in USB device)**

**(Method 1)**

1. Select  to display the category list.

2. Select **[Song]**.  
All the tracks in the USB device are displayed.
3. Select a desired track.

## Audio Set


---

The selected track is played. All the tracks in the USB device can be played by continuing playback.

### **NOTE**

*Only the tracks in the desired category selected in Step 2 are played.*

### **(Method 2)\*1**

1. Select  to display the category list.
2. Select **Folder**.  
All the folders in the USB device are displayed.
3. Select **All Songs**.  
All the tracks in the USB device are displayed.
4. Select a desired track.  
The selected track is played. All the tracks in the USB device can be played by continuing playback.

\*1 Can be operated using an Android™ device or USB flash memory.

### **NOTE**

*Only the tracks in the desired folder selected in Step 3 are played.*

## ▼ Gracenote® Database

When a USB device or Bluetooth® device is connected to this unit and the audio is played, the album name, artist name, genre and title information are automatically displayed if there is a match in the vehicle's database compilation to the music being played. The information stored in this device uses database information in the Gracenote® music recognition service.



*For information related to the most recent Gracenote® database which can be used and how to install it, go to the Mazda Hands Free Website:  
<http://www.mazdahandsfree.com>*

### Introduction

Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype are either a registered trademark or a trademark of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.



### Gracenote® End User License Agreement

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote

## Audio Set

---

Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.


The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you “AS IS.” Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

### Updating the database

The Gracenote® media database can be updated using USB device.

1. Connect a USB device containing the software for updating Gracenote®.
2. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
3. Select the **System** tab and select **Music Database Update**.
4. Select **Search**. The list of the update package stored in the USB device and the version are displayed.
5. Select the package to use the update.
6. Select **Install**.

### **NOTE**

*Gracenote® can be downloaded from the Mazda Hands-free Website.*

## How to use Apple CarPlay

### ▼ What is Apple CarPlay?

Apple CarPlay allows you to make calls, send or receive messages, and listen to music using your iPhone with the vehicle's audio system, or search for destinations using the maps. In addition, voice recognition operation is possible using Siri.

#### **CAUTION**

➤ *YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY ("THE APPLICATION") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.*

*TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.*


# Audio Set

➤ When using Apple CarPlay, please avoid distraction and use Apple CarPlay responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.

## NOTE


- Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and its use is subject to your agreement to the Apple CarPlay terms of use, which are included as part of the Apple iOS terms of use.
- When using Apple CarPlay, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your iPhone. For further details, refer to Apple's Privacy Policy.

## ▼ Switching to Apple CarPlay

Connect the iPhone by inserting the Apple-genuine connector cord to the USB terminal indicated by the  mark.




Refer to How to connect USB port/Auxiliary jack on page 5-18.

## NOTE

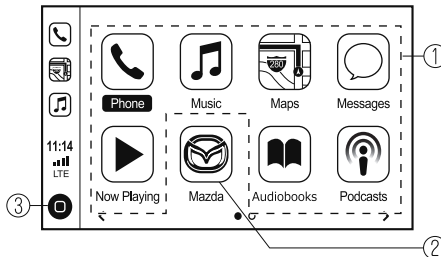
- When you switch your iPhone connection from Bluetooth® to the vehicle's USB terminal, the system switches to Apple CarPlay. The applications which was being used via Bluetooth® connection can be used continuously. However, the available functions of the applications using Bluetooth® connection and those on Apple CarPlay may differ.
- If the iPhone is connected to the USB terminal not indicated by the  mark, the system operates in USB mode.

## Display of Apple CarPlay Screen

Use any of the following methods to display the Apple CarPlay screen in the centre display.

- Select  on the home screen.
- Long press  on the commander switch.
- Select  on the home screen, and select **Apple CarPlay** from the Applications screen.



Apple CarPlay home screen








**NOTE**

*The icons and icon positions displayed on the Apple CarPlay home screen may differ depending on the connected iPhone and iOS version.*

No.	Icon	Explanation
①	Icon for connected iPhone	Launches the Apple CarPlay application. Refer to the help information available with each application for the method of using each application.
②		Switches to the Mazda Connect home screen.
③		Displays the Apple CarPlay home screen.

**Convenient Ways to Use Apple CarPlay**

Item	Operation method
Activating the voice recognition function (Siri)*1	Activate Siri using any of the following two methods to operate Apple CarPlay by voice. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press the talk button on the audio control switch.</li> <li>• Press and hold .</li> </ul>
To display the NowPlaying screen	When music is playing in Apple CarPlay and a screen other than the NowPlaying screen is being displayed, press  on the commander switch to display the NowPlaying screen.
To display the MAP screen	When using map route guidance in Apple CarPlay and a screen other than the MAP screen is being displayed, press <b>NAV</b> on the commander switch to display the MAP screen.
To return to Mazda Connect screen	Press and hold  on the commander switch.

\*1 The voice recognition function of Mazda Connect cannot be used while Apple CarPlay is connected.

**To End Apple CarPlay**

To end Apple CarPlay, disconnect the Apple-genuine connector cord from the USB terminal and disconnect the iPhone from the connector cord.

**NOTE**

*If the connector cord is disconnected from the USB terminal during music playback using Apple CarPlay, the audio source selection will no longer be available and the vehicle's audio device will be muted.*

### How to use Android Auto™ mode

#### ▼ What is Android Auto™?

Android Auto™ is an application which allows the operation of an Android™ Smartphone using the vehicle's audio. Android Auto™ functions such as the phone, messages, music, and map can be used with the vehicle's audio system.




➤ *YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF ANDROID AUTO™ ("THE APPLICATION") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY GOOGLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE. TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.*

➤ When using Android Auto™, please avoid distraction and use Android Auto™ responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.

**NOTE**


- Android Auto™ is provided by Google and its use is subject to your agreement to the Android Auto™ terms of use.
- When using Android Auto™, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your smart phone. For further details, refer to Google's Privacy Policy.

**▼ How to use the Android Auto™ mode**

Insert an Android™ Smartphone-genuine connector cord into the USB terminal indicated by the  icon to connect the Smartphone.




Refer to How to connect USB port/Auxiliary jack on page 5-18.

**NOTE**

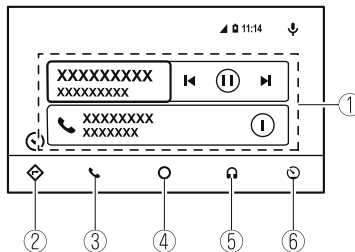
- When an Android™ Smartphone connected to Bluetooth® is connected to the vehicle's USB terminal, Bluetooth® is used by Android Auto™ and the system switches to Android Auto™ mode.
- If the Android™ Smartphone is connected to a USB terminal with no  icon indicated, the system operates in USB mode.

**Display of Android Auto™ Mode Screen**

Use any of the following methods to display the Android Auto™ mode screen in the centre display.

- Select  on the home screen, and select **Android Auto** from the Applications screen.
- Select  on the home screen.
- Press and hold  on the commander switch.






Android Auto™ mode home screen







## Audio Set

### NOTE

The media displayed on the Android Auto™ home screen may differ depending on the use conditions and version of the connected Android™ Smartphone.

No.	Icon	Explanation
①	—	Displays the use history of each application. The displayed contents differ depending on the application that has been started and its status.
②		Switches to the map application.
③		Switches to the call mode.
④		Displays the Android Auto™ home screen.
⑤		Switches to the Music application.
⑥		Switches to the Mazda Connect home screen.

### Convenient ways to use Android Auto™ mode

Item	Operation method
Operation using voice recognition*1	Any of the following methods can be used to start the voice recognition mode and operate Android Auto™ by voice. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Speak the words, “OK Google”.</li> <li>• Select the  icon on the Android Auto™ screen.</li> <li>• Press and hold the talk button on the audio remote control switch.</li> </ul>
To display the NowPlaying screen	When music is playing in Android Auto™ and a screen other than the NowPlaying screen is being displayed, press  on the commander switch to display the NowPlaying screen.
To display the MAP screen	When using map route guidance in Android Auto™ and a screen other than the MAP screen is being displayed, press <b>NAV</b>  on the commander switch to display the Android Auto™ MAP screen.
To return to the Mazda Connect screen	Press and hold  on the commander switch.

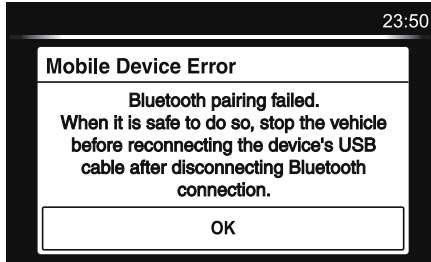
\*1 The voice recognition function of Mazda Connect cannot be used while Android Auto™ is connected.

### To end Android Auto™

To end the Android Auto™ mode, disconnect the Android™-genuine connector cord from the USB terminal or disconnect the Android™ Smartphone from the connector cord.

### **If Android Auto™ cannot be connected**

When the message, “Mobile Device Error”, is displayed and Android Auto™ cannot be connected.



Make sure that the Android™ Smartphone in question is compatible with Android Auto™. Before trying to reconnect your Android™ Smartphone to the connector cord, do the Bluetooth® device pairing again.

### **If the Android Auto™ connection setting cannot be changed**

Depending on your Android™ Smartphone, the connection setting may have been in charging mode only when the connector cord is connected.

In this case, switch off the Android Auto™ connection setting once, and then switch it back on while connected to USB mode.

The connection setting can be changed to the Android Auto™ connection in the **Devices** tab on the Settings screen (page 5-73).

## Audio Set

---

### Bluetooth®

#### ▼ Introduction

##### Bluetooth® Hands-Free outline

When a Bluetooth® device (mobile phone) is connected to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit via radio wave transmission, a call can be made or received by pressing the talk button, pick-up button, or hang-up button on the audio remote control switch, or by operating the centre display.

##### Bluetooth® audio outline

When a portable audio unit equipped with the Bluetooth® communication function is paired to the vehicle, you can listen to music stored on the paired portable audio device from the vehicle's speakers. It is not necessary to connect the portable audio device to the vehicle's external input terminal. After programming, operate the vehicle audio control panel to play/stop the audio.

#### **NOTE**

- *For your safety, a device can be paired only when the vehicle is parked. If the vehicle starts to move, the pairing procedure will end. Park the vehicle in a safe place before pairing.*
- *The communication range of a Bluetooth® equipped device is about 10 meters (32 ft) or less.*
- *Basic audio operation is available using voice commands even if Bluetooth® is not connected.*
- *For safety reasons, operation of the centre display is disabled while the vehicle is being driven. However, items not displayed in grey can be operated using the commander switch while the vehicle is being driven.*

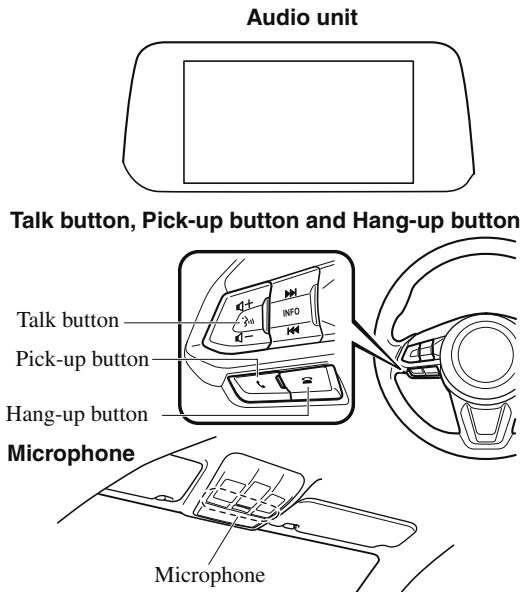


*Some Bluetooth® mobile devices are not compatible with the vehicle. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for information regarding Bluetooth® mobile device compatibility.*

#### **Applicable Bluetooth® specification (Recommended)**

Ver. 1.1/1.2/2.0 + EDR/2.1 + EDR/3.0 (conformity)

## ▼ Component Parts



### **Microphone (hands-free)**

The microphone is used for speaking voice commands or when making a Hands-free call.

### **Talk button**

Activates the voice recognition. In addition, it skips the voice guidance.

### **Pick-up button**

Responds to incoming calls. In addition, after selecting a contact or dialing a number, it places the call when the button is pressed.

### **Hang-up button**

Ends the call or refuses an incoming call. In addition, it ends the voice recognition operation.

### **Commander switch**

The commander switch is used for volume adjustment and display operation. Tilt or turn the commander knob to move the cursor. Press the commander knob to select the icon.

## Audio Set

---

### Volume adjustment


The volume dial of the commander switch is used to adjust the volume. Turn the dial to the right to increase volume, to the left to decrease it.

The volume can also be adjusted using the volume button on the steering wheel.

#### **NOTE**

- Press the volume dial to switch the audio MUTE on and off.
- If the volume is lower compared to other audio modes, increase the volume from the device side.

Conversation volume and the volume of the voice guidance and ringtone can each be set in advance.

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Adjust the **Phone Volume** and the **VR and Ringtone** using the slider.



## Bluetooth® Preparation


### ▼ Device pairing

To use Bluetooth® audio and Hands-Free, the device equipped with Bluetooth® has to be paired to the unit using the following procedure. A maximum of 7 devices including Bluetooth® audio devices and hands-free mobile phones can be paired.

#### NOTE

- The Bluetooth® system may not operate for 1 or 2 minutes after the ignition is switched to ACC or ON. However, this does not indicate a problem. If the Bluetooth® system does not connect automatically after 1 or 2 minutes have elapsed, make sure that the Bluetooth® setting on the device is normal and attempt to reconnect the Bluetooth® device from the vehicle side.
- If Bluetooth®-enabled devices are used in the following locations or conditions, connection via Bluetooth® may not be possible.
  - The device is in a location hidden from the centre display such as behind or under a seat, or inside the glove compartment.
  - The device contacts or is covered by a metal object or body.
  - The device is set to power-saving mode.

### Pairing Procedure

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the **Devices** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.

4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select **Add New Device** to display the message and switch to the device operation.
6. Using your device, perform a search for the Bluetooth® device (Peripheral device).
7. Select “Mazda” from the device list searched by the device.
8. **(Device with Bluetooth® version 2.0)** Input the displayed 4-digit pairing code into the device.

#### **(Device with Bluetooth® version 2.1 or higher)**

Make sure the displayed 6-digit code on the audio is also displayed on the device, and touch the **Yes**.

- Connection permission and phonebook access permission for your mobile device may be required depending on the mobile device.
9. If pairing is successful, the functions of the device connected to Bluetooth® are displayed.
  10. **(Devices compatible with Mazda E-mail / SMS function)** SMS (Short Message Service) messages, and E-mail for the device are downloaded automatically. A download permission operation for your device may be required depending on the device.

#### NOTE

- When Call history and messages are downloaded automatically, each automatic download setting must be on. Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-70.

After a device is registered, the system automatically identifies the device. By

## Audio Set

activating Bluetooth® Hands-Free again, or by activating Bluetooth® Hands-Free first after switching the ignition from OFF to ACC, the device connection condition is indicated in the centre display.


### IMPORTANT note about pairing and automatic reconnection:

- **If pairing is redone on the same mobile phone device, first clear “Mazda” displayed on the Bluetooth® setting screen of the mobile device.**
- When the OS of the device is updated, the pairing information may be deleted. If this happens, reprogramme the pairing information to the Bluetooth® unit.
- Before you pair your device, make sure that Bluetooth® is “ON”, both on your phone and on the vehicle.

### ▼ Device selection

If several devices have been paired, the Bluetooth® unit links the device last paired. If you would like to link a different paired device, it is necessary to change the link. The order of device priority after the link has been changed is maintained even when the ignition is switched off.

### Connecting other devices

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the **Devices** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select the name of the device you would like to connect.
6. **Phone And Audio** selection  
Connects both devices as hands-free and Bluetooth® audio.

#### **Phone Only** selection

Connects as a hands-free device.


#### **Audio Only** selection

Connects as Bluetooth® audio.

### NOTE


- *The following functions can be used for the Hands-free or audio.*
  - *Hands-free: Phone calls and E-mail/SMS*
  - *Audio: Bluetooth® audio, Aha™, Stitcher™ radio*

### Disconnecting a device


1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the **Devices** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select the device name which is currently connected.
6. Select **Disconnect**.

### ▼ Deleting a device

#### Selecting and deleting devices

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the **Devices** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Turn the Bluetooth® setting on.
5. Select the device name which you would like to delete.
6. Select **Remove Paired Device**.
7. Select **Yes**.


#### Deleting all devices

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the **Devices** tab.

3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Select **Bluetooth Settings**.
5. Select **Remove All Paired Devices**.
6. Select **Yes**.

### ▼ Changing PIN code

PIN code (4 digits) can be changed.

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
2. Select the **Devices** tab.
3. Select **Bluetooth**.
4. Select **Bluetooth Settings**.
5. Select **Change Paircode**.
6. Input the new PIN code to be set.
7. Select **✓**.

### Available Language\*

The language can be changed.  
Refer to Settings on page 5-73.

#### **NOTE**

*Depending on the language, it may only be available for the screen display, but not for the voice recognition.*

# Audio Set

## Bluetooth® Audio

### Applicable Bluetooth® specification (Recommended)

Ver. 1.1/1.2/2.0 + EDR/2.1 + EDR/3.0  
(conformity)

### Response profile

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0/1.2
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0/1.3/1.4

A2DP is a profile which transmits only audio to the Bluetooth® unit. If your Bluetooth® audio device corresponds only to A2DP, but not AVRCP, you cannot operate it using the control panel of the vehicle's audio system. In this case, only the operations on the mobile device are available the same as when a portable audio device for a non-compliant Bluetooth® device is connected to the AUX terminal.

Function	A2DP	AVRCP		
		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.3	Ver. 1.4
Playback	X	X	X	X
Pause	X	X	X	X
File (Track) up/down	—	X	X	X
Reverse	—	—	X	X
Fast-forward	—	—	X	X
Text display	—	—	X	X
Repeat	—	—	De- pends on de- vice	De- pends on de- vice

Function	A2DP	AVRCP		
		Ver. 1.0	Ver. 1.3	Ver. 1.4
Shuffle	—	—	De- pends on de- vice	De- pends on de- vice
Scan	—	—	De- pends on de- vice	De- pends on de- vice
Folder up/ down	—	—	—	De- pends on de- vice

X: Available

—: Not available


### NOTE

- The battery consumption of Bluetooth® audio devices increases while Bluetooth® is connected.
- If a general mobile phone device is USB connected during music playback over the Bluetooth® connection, the Bluetooth® connection is disconnected. For this reason, you cannot have music playback over a Bluetooth® connection and music playback using a USB connection at the same time.
- If a device which supports AVRCP Ver. 1.6 or higher is connected, song information may not display correctly.
- The system may not operate normally depending on the Bluetooth® audio device.


▼ **Switching to Bluetooth® audio mode**

To listen to music or voice audio recorded to a Bluetooth® audio device, switch to the Bluetooth® audio mode to operate the audio device using the audio system control panel. Any Bluetooth® audio device must be paired to the vehicle's Bluetooth® unit before it can be used.

Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-51.

1. Turn on the Bluetooth® audio device's power.
2. Switch the ignition to ACC or ON.
3. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen.
4. When **[Bluetooth]** is selected, switches to the Bluetooth® audio mode to begin playback.




**NOTE**

- If the Applications screen is not displayed on the device, Bluetooth® audio may not play on the centre display.
- If Bluetooth® audio is used after using Aha™ or Stitcher™ radio, the application on the mobile device has to be closed first.
- If the Bluetooth® audio device does not begin playback, select the  icon.
- If the mode is switched from Bluetooth® audio mode to another mode (radio mode), audio playback from the Bluetooth® audio device stops.







▼ **Playback**

To listen to a Bluetooth® audio device over the vehicle's speaker system, switch the mode to Bluetooth® audio mode. (Refer to “Switching to Bluetooth® audio mode”)

After switching to the Bluetooth® audio mode, the following icons are displayed in the lower part of the display. Icons which can be used differ depending on the version of the Bluetooth® audio device which you are currently using.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	<b>(AVRCP Ver. 1.4 only)</b> Displays the top level folder/file list. Select the folder which you want to select. The files in the selected folder are displayed. Select the file you want to play.
	<b>(AVRCP Ver. 1.3 or higher)</b> Replays the song currently being played repeatedly. When selected again, the songs in the folder are played repeatedly. Select it again to cancel. Icons change when the song is repeated or the folder is repeated.

# Audio Set

Icon	Function
	<b>(AVRCP Ver. 1.3 or higher)</b> Plays songs in the folder in random order. When selected again, the songs on the device are played in random order. Select it again to cancel. Icons change during folder shuffle or device shuffle.
	Scans the titles in a folder and plays the beginning of each song to aid in finding a desired song. When selected again, the beginning of each song on the device is played. When selected again, the operation is cancelled and the song currently being played continues.
	Returns to the beginning of the previous song. Long-press to fast reverse. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Plays the Bluetooth® audio. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.
	Advances to the beginning of the next song. Long-press to fast forward. It stops when you remove your hand from the icon or the commander knob.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.

## ▼ Bluetooth® Audio Device Information Display

When connecting a Bluetooth® audio device, the unit searches the following information from the database stored in the vehicle and it is displayed on the screen. The database information stored in this device uses database information in the Gracenote® music recognitions service.

	AVRCP Ver. lower than 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.4 or higher
Device name	X	X	X
Remaining battery charge of device	X	X	X
Song name	—	X	X
Artist name	—	X	X
Album name	—	X	X

	AVRCP Ver. lower than 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.3	AVRCP Ver. 1.4 or higher
Playback time	—	X	X
Genre name	—	X	X
Album art image	—	X	X

X: Available

—: Not available

### NOTE

*Some information may not display depending on the device, and if the information cannot be displayed, “Unknown - - -” is indicated.*

Refer to Gracenote® Database on page 5-39 for the method of updating the database.

## How to Use Aha™

### ▼ What is Aha™?

Aha™\*1 is an application which can be used to enjoy various Internet content such as Internet radio and podcasts.

Stay connected to your friends activities by getting updates from Facebook and Twitter. Using the location-based service, nearby services and destinations can be searched or real-time local information can be obtained.


For details on Aha™, refer to “<http://www.aharadio.com/>”.

\*1 Aha™, the Aha™ logo, and the Aha™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Harman International Industries, Inc., used with permission.





### NOTE

- The service content provided by Aha™ varies depending on the country in which the user resides. In addition, the service is not available in some countries.
- To operate Aha™ from your Bluetooth® device, perform the following in advance:
  - Install the Aha™ application to your device.
  - Create an Aha™ account for your device.
  - Log onto Aha™ using your device.
  - Select the preset station on your device.
- If the Applications screen is not displayed on the device, Aha™ may not play on the centre display.










### ▼ Playback

Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When aha is selected, the following icons are displayed at the bottom of the centre display. The displayed icon differs depending on the selected station.

In addition, icons other than the following icons may be displayed.


Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the main menu. Use to switch to other stations.
	Displays the content list. Use to switch to other desired content on the station.
	<b>Like</b> *1 Evaluates the current content as “Like”.

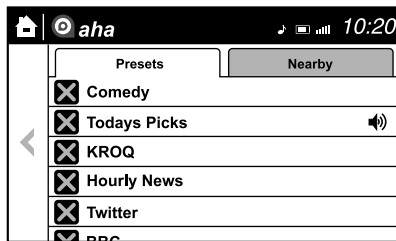
# Audio Set

Icon	Function
	<b>Dislike*1</b> Evaluates the current content as “Dislike”.
	Reverses for 15 seconds.
	<b>Map (vehicles with navigation system)</b> Displays the destination searched by the location based services on the navigation system.
	<b>Call</b> A call can be made to the telephone number of a shop searched using the Location Based Services. Available when a device is connected as a Hands-Free.
	Returns to the previous content.
	Pauses playback of the content. When selected again, playback resumes.
	Goes to the next content.
	Fast-forwards for 30 seconds.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.

\*1 Some stations may use alternate variations of Like and Dislike, based on station type or provider.

## Main menu

Select the  icon.



Switch the tab and select the station category.

Tab	Function
Presets	Displays the preset station list set on the device. Select the preset station name to play the station content.



Tab	Function
Nearby	Select the desired station. Guidance is provided to the searched destination near the vehicle's position. You can designate desired categories previously set using the filter setting on your device.

**NOTE**

The available Location Based Services may differ because the services depend on the content provided by Aha™.

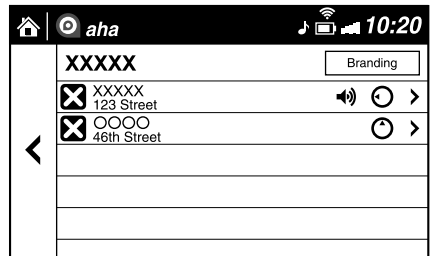
**Example of use (Location Based Services)**

1. Select the desired station from the “Nearby” tab on the main menu. The destination name or address playback starts in the order of the destination name list.



2. When the location icon is selected, the currently displayed destination is displayed on the navigation system (vehicles with navigation system).
3. When the phone icon is selected, a phone call is placed to the currently displayed destination.
4. Select the list icon to display the content list.

Selection of other destinations from the list can be made.



# Audio Set

## How to Use Stitcher™ Radio

### ▼ What is Stitcher™ Radio?

Stitcher™\*1 radio is an application which can be used to listen to Internet radio or stream podcasts.

Recommended content is automatically selected by registering content which you put into your favourites, or by pressing the Like or Dislike button.


For details on Stitcher™ Radio, refer to “<http://stitcher.com/>”.







\*1 Stitcher™, the Stitcher™ logo, and the Stitcher™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Stitcher, Inc., used with permission.




### NOTE

- To operate Stitcher™ Radio from your Bluetooth® device, perform the following in advance:
  - Install the Stitcher™ Radio application to your device.
  - Create a Stitcher™ Radio account for your device.
  - Log onto Stitcher™ Radio using your device.
- If the Applications screen is not displayed on the device, Stitcher™ may not play on the centre display.


### ▼ Playback

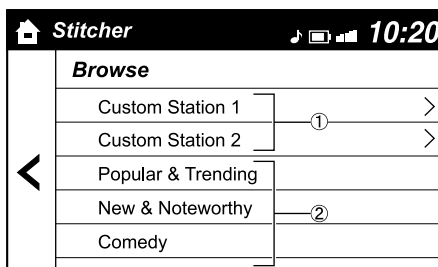
Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Entertainment screen. When Stitcher is selected, the following icons are indicated in the bottom part of the centre display.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Entertainment menu. Use to switch to a different audio source.
	Displays the station list. Use to switch to other stations.
	<b>Dislike</b> Evaluates the current programme as “Dislike”.
	<b>Like</b> Evaluates the current programme as “Like”.
	Adds the current station to your favourites or deletes the current station from your favourites.
	Reverses for 30 seconds.

Icon	Function
	Plays the station. Select it again to pause playback.
	Goes to the next station.
	Displays sound settings to adjust audio quality level. Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.

### Station list

- Select the  icon to display the station list.
  - Favourites station name: Select to display the programme registered to your favourites.
  - Category name: A recommended category selected from your favourites by Stitcher™ is displayed.  
Select it to display the category programme.



- Select the programme name to play it.

### Add to your favourites

If the current programme has not been registered to your favourites, it can be registered to your favourites.

- Select the ★ icon to display the favourites station which the registration can be added.
- Select the station name which you want to register.
- Select **[OK]** to add the programme to the selected favourites station.

### NOTE

- Multiple favourites stations can be selected and registered.
- Favourites stations registered by oneself as well those set by default are displayed.

### Delete from your favourites

If the current programme has already been registered to your favourites, the programme can be deleted from your favourites.

- Select the ★ icon.

2. The programme is automatically deleted from the favourites station.

## Bluetooth® Hands-Free

### ▼ Making a Call

For Mazda Connect, making calls is possible using any of the following 6 methods:


- Phonebook downloaded from Bluetooth® device (mobile phone) (voice recognition function can be used)
- Favourites
- Call record
- Dialing a telephone number (voice recognition function can be used)
- “Redial” - Voice recognition command for making a call to the latest outgoing call record.
- “Call back” - Voice recognition command for making a call to the latest incoming call record.

### Phonebook Usage

Telephone calls can be made by saying the contact name in the downloaded phonebook or the name of a person whose phone number has been registered in the Bluetooth® Hands-Free. Refer to Import contact (Download Phonebook).

1. Press the talk button.
2. Wait for the beep sound.
3. **Say:** “Call XXXXX... (Ex. “John”) Mobile”. (You can also say, “Home”, “Work”, or “Other” instead of “Mobile”, depending on how you set up your contact information.)
4. Follow the voice guidance to make the call, or simple press the pick-up button on the steering switch during or after the guidance to make the call.

## Screen operation

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Contacts** to display the contact list.
3. Select the contact you would like to call to display the details for the contact.
4. Select the desired phone number to make the call.

## Import contact (Download Phonebook)

Phonebook data from your device (Mobile phone) can be sent and registered to your Bluetooth® Hands-Free phonebook using Bluetooth®.


### (Automatic downloading)

The “Auto Download Contacts” setting must be on. When hands-free is connected to the device, the phonebook is downloaded automatically.

Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-70.

### (Manually downloading)

If the “Auto Download Contacts” setting is off, download the phonebook using the following procedure.

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Contacts** to display the contact list.
3. Select **Edit Contacts**.
4. Select **Import All Contacts** or **Import Selected Contact** to switch to the device operation.
5. If **Import All Contacts** is selected, select **Download**.

6. Download will be started from the mobile phone.


### NOTE

- If “Import All Contacts” is performed after saving the phonebook to the Bluetooth® unit, the phonebook will be overwritten.
- A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be registered to the phonebook.
- Phonebook, incoming/outgoing call record, and favourite memories are exclusive to each mobile phone to protect privacy.
- Contacts with no telephone number are not registered.

### Favourites Contacts

A maximum of 50 contacts can be registered. It will take less time to make a call after registering the telephone number. In addition, you do not have to look for the person you want to call in the phonebook.

### Registering to your favourites

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Favourites** to display the favourites list.
3. Select **Add/Edit Communication Favourites**.
4. Select **Add New Contact** or **Add New Contact Details**.
5. Select from the displayed list.


### NOTE

When “Add New Contact” is selected, information such as the selected person’s name is also registered. In addition, when “Add New Contact Details” is selected, only the telephone number of the selected person is registered.


# Audio Set

---


## Calling a favourite

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Favourites** to display the favourites list.
3. **(If only one phone number is registered to contact)**  
Select the contact information you would like to call. Go to Step 5.  
**(If multiple phone numbers are registered to contact)**  
Select the contact you would like to call to display the screen indicating the details for the contact. Go to Step 4.
4. Select the phone number you would like to call.
5. Select **Yes**.

## Deleting a favourite


1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Favourites** to display the favourites list.
3. Select **Add/Edit Communication Favourites**.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. Select the contact information which you would like to delete.
6. Select **Delete**.

## Changing the display order of your favourites list

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Favourites** to display the favourites list.
3. Select **Add/Edit Communication Favourites**.
4. Select **Move**.
5. The contact can be moved after it is selected.

6. Slide the contact or move it using the commander switch, then select **OK**.

## Changing contact name of your favourites

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Favourites** to display the favourites list.
3. Select **Add/Edit Communication Favourites**.
4. Select **Rename**.
5. Select the contact to display the keyboard screen.
6. If a new name is input and **OK** is selected, the contact name is stored.



### **NOTE**

*If the contact is long-pressed when the favourites list is displayed, the contact information can be edited (deleted, moved).*

## Telephone Number Input

### **NOTE**


*Practice this while parked until you are confident you can do it while driving in a non-taxing road situation. If you are not completely comfortable, make all calls from a safe parking position, and only start driving when you can devote your full attention to driving.*

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. When **Dial Phone** is pressed, the dial pad is displayed.
3. Input the telephone number using the dial pad.
4. Select  to make the call.

### **Numeral or symbol entry**

Use the dial pad.

Long-press the  to input +.

Select  to delete the currently input value.

Long-press  to delete all input values.

### **Redial Function**

Makes a call to the last person called (latest person on outgoing call record) from the mobile phone/vehicle.

1. Press the talk button.
2. Wait for the beep sound.
3. **Say:** “Redial”

### **Call back Function**

Makes a call to the last person who called your (latest person on incoming call record) mobile phone/vehicle.

1. Press the talk button.
2. Wait for the beep sound.
3. **Say:** “Call back”

# Audio Set

## ▼ Receiving an Incoming Call










When an incoming call is received, the incoming call notification screen is displayed. The “Incoming Call Notifications” setting must be on.

Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-70.

To accept the call, press the pick-up button on the audio control switch or select **[Answer]** on the screen.

To reject the call, press the hang-up button on the audio control switch or select **[Ignore]** on the screen.

The following icons are displayed on the screen during a call. Icons which can be used differ depending on use conditions.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Communication menu.
	Ends the call.
	<b>Transferring a call from hands-free to a mobile phone</b> Communication between the Bluetooth® unit and a device (mobile phone) is cancelled, and an incoming call will be received by the device (mobile phone) like a standard call.
	<b>Transferring a call from a device (mobile phone) to hands-free</b> Communication between devices (mobile phone) can be switched to Bluetooth® Hands-Free.
	<b>Mute</b> The microphone can be muted during a call. When selected again, the mute is cancelled.
	To make a 3-way call, select the contacts from the following: <b>[Call History]</b> : Call History is displayed. <b>[Contacts]</b> : The phonebook is displayed. <b>[Dial]</b> : The dial pad is displayed. Input the phone number. The device may be unusable depending on the contractual content.
	The call on hold is made to make a 3-way call. The device may be unusable depending on the contractual content.
	Switches the call on hold.
	<b>DTMF (Dual Tone Multi-Frequency Signal) Transmission</b> This function is used when transmitting DTMF via the dial pad. The receiver of a DTMF transmission is generally a home telephone answering machine or a company's automated guidance call centre. Input the number using a dial pad.



**NOTE**

- If the ignition is switched off during a hands-free call, the line is transferred to the device (Mobile phone) automatically.
- If the DTMF code has two or more digits or symbols, each one must be transmitted individually.

▼ **Call Interrupt**

A call can be interrupted to receive an incoming call from a third party.

When **Hold + Answer** is selected or the pick-up button on the steering wheel is pressed, the current call is held and the system switches to the new incoming call.

When **End + Answer** is selected, the current call is ended and the system switches to the new incoming call (GSM network only).

When **Ignore** is selected or the hang-up button on the steering wheel is pressed, an incoming call is refused.

**NOTE**

- The function may not be available depending on the contractual content of the mobile device.
- The function may not be operable depending on the type of the telephone network and the mobile device.

▼ **Receiving and Replying to Messages (available only with E-mail/SMS compatible phones)**

SMS (Short Message Service) messages, and E-mail received by connected devices can be downloaded, displayed, and played (read by the system).

Additionally, replies can also be made to calls and messages in the received messages.

**Downloading messages**

Up to 20 new messages can be downloaded and displayed from a connected device.

**NOTE**

*For E-mail, 20 messages for each account can be downloaded.*


**(Automatic downloading)**

The “Auto Download Email” (E-mail) or “Auto Download SMS” (SMS) setting must be on. A message is downloaded automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.

Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-70.

**(Manually downloading)**

When the “Auto Download Email” (E-mail) or “Auto Download SMS” (SMS) setting is off, the message is downloaded using the following procedure.

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **Email** or **SMS** to display the Inbox.
3. Select **Update Inbox**.
4. Download will be started from the mobile phone.

**NOTE**

- Attached data is not downloaded.
- Messages up to 1 kilobyte (E-mail)/ 140-bytes (SMS) can be downloaded.
- A message list is created for each device.

# Audio Set







- If the connected device does not correspond to MAP 1.0, the AT command is used to download. The downloaded message indicates that it is already read.
  - Downloading using the AT command may not function depending on the connected device.
  - If an iPhone is connected, the following functions cannot be used.
    - Downloading past messages
    - Replying to messages
- \*iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

## Receiving messages

### (Method 1)


When a device receives a message, a message received notification is displayed.




The following icons are displayed in the lower part of the details on the message. Icons which can be used differ depending on use conditions.

Icon	Function
	Displays the Communication menu.
	Displays the inbox.
	Plays back a message. When selected again, playback is temporarily stopped.
	Displays the previous message.
	Displays the next message.
	Only replies to the sender of the currently displayed message. Select the sentence on the displayed reply screen and select the sentence for sending from the preset message. Select <b>[Send]</b> .

The “Email Notifications” (E-mail) or “SMS Notifications” (SMS) setting must be on.  
Refer to Communication Settings on page 5-70.  
Select **[Read]** and display the message.

### (Method 2)


1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **[Notifications]** and display the new message list for E-mail and SMS.
3. Select the message you would like to display.

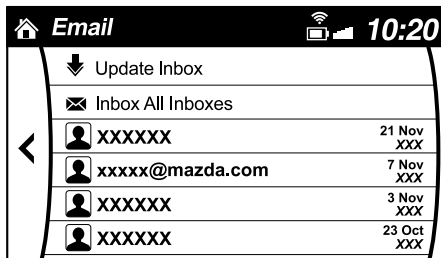
Icon	Function
	<b>(Only E-mail)</b> Replies to all members including CC. Select the sentence on the displayed reply screen and select the sentence for sending from the preset message. Select <b>[Send]</b> .
	Makes a call to a person who sent a message. For E-mail, this function may not work depending on the device.
	Deletes a message. The messages stored in a device is also deleted.

**NOTE**

*Up to 3 preset messages can be selected.*

**Example of use (verify unread E-mail)**

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **[Email]** to display the inbox.





3. Select the unread message displayed in bold.
4. The details of the message are displayed and replying to the message, making a call, or playback can be performed.




**Changing account for displaying (E-mail only)**

1. Select **[Inbox]**.
2. Select the account which you would like to display. Only the messages for the selected account are displayed in the inbox.

**Editing preset messages**


1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.
2. Select **[Settings]**.
3. Select **[Preset Messages]**.
4. Select the preset message which you would like to edit. The keyboard screen is displayed.
5. When the message is input and  is selected, the message is stored as a preset message.

**NOTE**

- Select the  icon to change the language.
- Select the  icon to switch between capitalized and lower-case characters.
- Select the  icon to return to the previous screen without storing the edit.

# Audio Set

## ▼ Communication Settings

Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Communication screen.

Select **Settings** to change the setting.

Item	Setting	Function
Bluetooth®	—	Go to Bluetooth® setting menu. Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-51.
Incoming Call Notifications	On/Off	Notifies when an incoming call is received.
Auto Download SMS	On/Off	Downloads SMS automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
SMS Notifications	On/Off	Notifies when a new SMS is received.
Auto Download Email* <sup>1</sup>	On/Off	Downloads E-mail automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Email Notifications	On/Off	Notifies when a new E-mail is received.
Auto Download Call History	On/Off	Downloads Call History automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Auto Download Contacts* <sup>1</sup>	On/Off	Downloads the phonebook automatically when the Bluetooth® unit is connected to the device.
Ringtone	Fixed/ In-band/Off	The type of ring tone can be changed. Three selections are available including the standard ring tone set on the vehicle, the ring tone registered to your Bluetooth® device, or no ring tone.
Phone Volume	Adjusts using the slider.	Adjusts the conversation volume.
VR and Ringtone	Adjusts using the slider.	Adjusts the voice guidance and ringtone volume.
Contacts Sort Order	First Name, Last Name	Displays the contact information in alphabetical order of the first name.
	Last Name, First Name	Displays the contact information in alphabetical order of the last name.
Preset Messages	—	Edits the preset message. Refer to Receiving and Replying to Messages (available only with E-mail/SMS compatible phones) on page 5-67.
Reset	—	Initializes all Communication Settings.

\*1 Depending on the device, it may be necessary to acquire download permission on the device side.

## Voice Recognition

### ▼ Basic Operation Method

#### Activating Voice Recognition

Press the talk button.

#### Ending Voice Recognition

Use one of the following methods:

- Press the hang-up button.
- Say, “Cancel”.
- Operate the commander switch or the centre display (only when vehicle is stopped).

#### Skipping Voice Guidance (for faster operation)

Press and release the talk button.

#### Troubleshooting for Voice Recognition

If you do not understand an operation method while in the voice recognition mode, say “Tutorial” or “Help”.

#### Commands useable anytime during voice recognition

“Go Back” and “Cancel” are commands which can be used at anytime during voice recognition.

#### **Returning to previous operation**

To return to the previous operation, say, “Go Back” while in voice recognition mode.

#### **Cancel**

To put the Bluetooth® Hands-Free system in standby mode, say, “Cancel” while in voice recognition mode.

#### To prevent a deterioration in the voice recognition rate and voice quality, the following points should be observed:

- The voice recognition cannot be performed while voice guidance or the beep sound is operating. Wait until the voice guidance or the beep sound is finished before saying your commands.
- Phone related commands are available only when your phone is connected via Bluetooth®. Make sure your phone is connected via Bluetooth® before you operate phone related voice commands.
- Music play commands, such as Play Artist and Play Album can be used only in USB audio mode.
- Do not speak too slowly or loudly (no loud voice).
- Speak clearly, without pausing between words or numbers.
- Dialects or different wording other than hands-free prompts cannot be recognised by voice recognition. Speak in the wording specified by the voice commands.
- It is not necessary to face the microphone or approach it. Speak the voice commands while maintaining a safe driving position.
- Close the windows to reduce loud noises from outside the vehicle, or turn down the airflow of the air-conditioning system while Bluetooth® Hands-Free is being used.
- Make sure the vents are not directing air up towards the microphone.

#### **NOTE**

*If the voice recognition performance is not satisfactory.*

*Refer to Troubleshooting on page 5-76.*

# Audio Set

---

## ▼ Voice Command List

### Voice command

When the talk button is pressed and the following command is spoken, the audio or navigation can be operated. The commands in the ( ) can be omitted. The specified name and number are put into the {}.

### Standard command

Voice command	Function
Help	Usable commands can be verified.
Tutorial	Basic voice commands and methods of use can be verified.
(Navigate/Take me/Drive) Home	Set the destination to Home.

### Communication (phone) related command

Voice command	Function
Call {name in phonebook} (mobile/home/work/other) Example: "Call John Mobile"	Call to the contact in the downloaded phonebook. Refer to Making a Call on page 5-62.
Redial	Call to the last contact you called. Refer to Making a Call on page 5-62.
Callback	Call to the last contact who called you. Refer to Making a Call on page 5-62.

### Entertainment (audio) related command

Voice command	Function	Corresponding audio source
(Go to/Play) Bluetooth (Audio)	Switches the audio source to BT audio. Can also switch to each audio source by similarly using commands such as FM, AM, or USB.	All
Play Artist {Artist name}	Plays the selected artist.	USB

### Navigation related command\*

For the navigation screen voice commands, refer to the separate navigation system manual.


### **NOTE**

- Some commands cannot be used depending on the grade and specification.
- Some commands cannot be used depending on the device connection conditions and the use conditions.
- The commands are examples of the available commands.

## Settings

**NOTE**

Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.

Select the  icon on the home screen and display the Settings screen.

Switch the tab and select the setting item you want to change.

You can customize settings in the setup display as follows:

Tab	Item	Function
AD-Disp	Height Brightness Control Other	Refer to Active Driving Display on page 4-27.
Display	Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.	
Safety	360° View Monitor Distance Recognition Support System Other	Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.
Sound	Refer to Volume/Display/Sound Controls on page 5-25.	
Clock	Adjust Time	Displays the currently set time is displayed. Press <b>+</b> to advance the hour/minute, and select <b>-</b> to move the hour/minute back. AM/PM can only be selected with the 12-hour clock display.
	GPS Sync	Synchronizes with GPS when turned on. When turned off, the time can be changed from “Adjust Time”.
	Time Format	Changes the display between 12 and 24-hour clock time.
	Time Zone Select	When it's not synchronized with GPS, select the region you want to specify.
	Daylight Savings Time	Turns the daylight saving time setting on/off. When ON, the time advances 1 hour. When OFF, it returns to normal time.
Vehicle	Rain Sensing Wiper Door Locks Other	Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

# Audio Set

Tab	Item	Function
Devices	Bluetooth	Refer to Bluetooth® Preparation on page 5-51.
	Android Auto	An Android Auto™ mode connection can be set on or off when connecting an Android™ Smartphone. The setting takes effect directly after switching on/off. Displays in grey and cannot be selected if an Android™ Smartphone is not connected.
	Apple CarPlay	An Apple CarPlay connection can be set on or off when connecting an iPhone. For the setting to take effect, it is necessary to connect the iPhone again. Displays in grey and cannot be selected if an iPhone is not connected.
	Network Management	Wi-Fi™ is used to obtain Navi POI/Real Time Traffic function (Such as gas prices, weather, nearest restaurant)
System	Tool Tips	Turns button explanations ON/OFF.
	Language	Changes the language.
	Temperature	Changes the setting between Fahrenheit and Celsius.
	Distance	Changes the setting between miles and kilometres.
	Music Database Update	Used to update Gracenote®. Gracenote® is used with USB Audio and Bluetooth® Audio, and provides: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Supplementary music information (Such as song name, artist name)</li> <li>Voice recognition assistance for Play Artist and Play Album</li> </ol> Gracenote® can be downloaded from the Mazda Handsfree Website. Refer to Gracenote® Database on page 5-39.
	Factory Reset	Memory and settings are initialized to the factory settings. The initialization launches by selecting the <b>Yes</b> button.
About	Agreements and Disclaimers	Verify the disclaimer and agree.
	Version Information	Can verify the current audio unit OS version and Gracenote® Database version.



## Applications

**NOTE**

Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.


Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Applications screen. The following information can be verified.

Top screen		Item	Function
Fuel Economy Monitor		Fuel Consumption Display Control Status Display Effectiveness Display Ending Screen Display	Refer to Fuel Economy Monitor on page 4-71.
Vehicle Status Monitor	Warning Guidance	Warnings currently active can be verified.	Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-23.
	Maintenance	Scheduled Maintenance Tyre Rotation Oil Change	Refer to Maintenance Monitor on page 6-7.
Apple CarPlay		—	Refer to How to use Apple CarPlay on page 5-41.
Android Auto		—	Refer to How to use Android Auto™ mode on page 5-44.


# Audio Set

## Troubleshooting

### Apple CarPlay use-related issues

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Apple CarPlay cannot launch even though an Apple-genuine connector cord is inserted into the USB port and it is connected to my iPhone.	You used the wrong USB port.	Use the USB port displaying the  mark to start Apple CarPlay.
The error message, "Mobile device error" is displayed after connecting my iPhone to the USB port.	There is mis-communication between the vehicle's audio system and your iPhone.	Disconnect the connector cord from the USB port once and then reconnect it.
The icon of the application I want to use is not displayed on the home screen of Apple CarPlay.	Only applications compatible with Apple CarPlay are displayed on the screen.	Contact the application's supplier.
Voice recognition using Siri is poor or incorrect for commands or contact names.	There are many possible reasons for this such as: 1. Poor network connectivity 2. Road noise/sound of air blowing from air conditioner 3. Incorrect iPhone language setting	1. Use the commander switch to complete the task or wait until there is sufficient network connectivity before using Siri again. 2. For better voice recognition, speak loud and clear. 3. Make sure that the iPhone language is set correctly (Example: US English vs UK English). If you are still having difficulty using Siri, visit the Apple support site or contact Apple.
There is a difference in the audio volume between Bluetooth® audio and Apple CarPlay.	—	Check the volume of the audio on the device connected via Bluetooth®. The volume on some devices connected via Bluetooth® can be adjusted.

### Android Auto™ use-related issues

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
The Android Auto™ mode does not launch even though the Android™-genuine connector cord is inserted into the USB port and it is connected to my Android™ Smartphone.	The Android Auto™ application has not been downloaded to your Android™ Smartphone.	To use Android Auto™ with your vehicle, the Android Auto™ application is required on your Android™ Smartphone. Download the Android Auto™ application from the Google Play™.
	You used the wrong USB port.	Use the USB port displaying the  mark to start the Android Auto™ mode.

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
The error message, "Mobile device error" is displayed after connecting my Android™ Smartphone to the USB port.	There is mis-communication between the vehicle's audio system and your Android™ Smartphone.	Disconnect the connector cord from the USB port once and then reconnect it.
	Your Android™ Smartphone cannot be paired because another device is connected via Bluetooth®.	Disconnect the other device's Bluetooth® connection, disconnect the connector cord of the Android™ Smartphone from the USB terminal once, and then reconnect it.
The icon of the application I want to use is not displayed on the home screen while in Android Auto™ mode.	Only applications compatible with Android Auto™ are displayed on the screen.	Contact the application's supplier.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Voice recognition is poor or incorrect.</li> <li>· Voice recognition responds slowly or it does not work.</li> </ul>	—	If you are having difficulty using the voice recognition, visit the Android Auto™ support site or contact Google™.
There is a difference in the audio volume between Bluetooth® audio and Android Auto™.	—	Check the volume of the audio on the device connected via Bluetooth®. The volume on some devices connected via Bluetooth® can be adjusted.

### **Bluetooth® Device pairing, connection problems**

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Unable to perform pairing	—	Make sure that the Bluetooth® device is compatible with the Bluetooth® unit, and that Bluetooth® and Find Mode*1 are on and the airplane mode is off in the Bluetooth® device setting. Turn off the power of the Bluetooth® device once, then turn it back on. If pairing is still not possible after this, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

# Audio Set

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Pairing cannot be performed again	The pairing information paired to the Bluetooth® unit or device is not recognised correctly.	<p>Perform pairing using the following procedure:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delete the applicable Bluetooth® device on the Mazda Connect.</li> <li>Delete “Mazda” from the Bluetooth® search screen of the Bluetooth® device.</li> <li>Perform pairing again.</li> </ol> <p>If pairing is not possible after trying the procedure, turn off the power of the Bluetooth® device once, then turn it back on. If pairing is still not possible after this, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>
It takes time for automatic connection	There are a lot of paired Bluetooth® devices.	<p>Delete the pairing information for unused Bluetooth® devices.</p> <p>If it takes time for an automatic connection even though the above operation has been done, do a manual connection.</p>
Unable to perform pairing	The Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device may turn off automatically after a period of time has elapsed depending on the device.	Check whether the Bluetooth® function and the Find Mode/Visible setting*1 on the device are turned on and pairing or reconnect.
Does not connect automatically when starting the engine		
Automatically connects, but then disconnects suddenly		
Disconnects intermittently	The device is in a location in which radio wave interference can occur easily, such as inside a bag in a rear seat, in a rear pocket of a pair of pants.	Move the device to a location in which radio wave interference is less likely to occur.

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Does not connect automatically when starting the engine	The pairing information is updated when the device OS is updated.	Perform pairing using the following procedure: 1. Delete the applicable Bluetooth® device on the Mazda Connect. 2. Delete “Mazda” from the Bluetooth® search screen of the Bluetooth® device. 3. Perform pairing again. If pairing is not possible after trying the procedure, turn off the power of the Bluetooth® device once, then turn it back on. If pairing is still not possible after this, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

\*1 Setting which detects the existence of a device external to the Bluetooth® unit.

**NOTE**

- When the OS of the device is updated, the pairing information may be deleted. If this happens, reprogramme the pairing information to the Bluetooth® unit.
- If you pair your phone which has already been paired to your vehicle more than once in the past, you need to delete “Mazda” on your mobile device. Then, execute the Bluetooth® search on your mobile device once again, and pair to a newly detected “Mazda”.
- Before you pair your device, make sure that Bluetooth® is “ON”, both on your phone and on the vehicle.
- If Bluetooth®-enabled devices are used in the following locations or conditions, connection via Bluetooth® may not be possible.
  - The device is in a location hidden from the centre display such as behind or under a seat, or inside the glove compartment.
  - The device contacts or is covered by a metal object or body.
  - The device is set to power-saving mode.
- Different Bluetooth®-enabled devices can be used for Bluetooth® Hands-Free and Bluetooth® audio. For example, device A can be connected as a Bluetooth® Hands-Free device and device B can be connected as a Bluetooth® audio device. However, the following may occur when they are used at the same time.
  - The Bluetooth® connection of the device is disconnected.
  - Noise occurs in the Hands-Free audio.
  - Hands-Free operates slowly.

# Audio Set

## Voice recognition related problems

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
Poor voice recognition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Excessive, slow speech.</li> <li>Excessive, forceful speech (shouting).</li> <li>Speaking before the beep sound has ended.</li> <li>Loud noise (speaking or noise from outside/inside vehicle).</li> <li>Airflow from A/C is blowing against the microphone.</li> <li>Speaking in off-standard expressions (dialect).</li> </ul>	Regarding the causes indicated on the left, be careful with how you speak. In addition, when numbers are spoken in a sequence, recognition ability will improve if no stop is placed between the numbers.
False recognition of numbers		
Poor voice recognition	There is a malfunction in the microphone.	A poor connection or malfunction with the microphone may have occurred. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.
Phone-related voice recognition is disabled	There is a problem with the connection between the Bluetooth® unit and the device.	If there is any malfunction after checking the pairing situation, check for device pairing or connection problems.
Names in the phonebook are not easily recognised	The Bluetooth® system is under a condition in which recognition is difficult.	By carrying out the following measures, the rate of recognition will improve. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clear memory from the phonebook which is not used very often.</li> <li>Avoid shortened names, use full names. (Recognition improves the longer the name is. By not using names such as “Mum”, “Dad”, recognition will improve.)</li> </ul>
When operating the audio, a song name is not recognised	Song names cannot be recognised by voice.	—
You want to skip guidance	—	Guidance can be skipped by quickly pressing and releasing the talk button.

## Regarding problems with calls

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
When starting a call, vehicle noise from the other party can be heard	For about 3 seconds after starting a call, the Bluetooth® unit's Noise Suppression function requires time to adapt to the call environment.	This does not indicate a problem with the device.

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
The other party cannot be heard or the speaker's voice is quiet	The volume is set at zero or low.	Increase the volume.

**Other problems**

Symptom	Cause	Solution method
The indication for the remaining battery is different between the vehicle and the device	The indication method is different between the vehicle and the device.	—
When a call is made from the vehicle, the telephone number is updated in the incoming/outgoing call record but the name does not appear	The number has not been registered into the phonebook.	If the number has been registered into the phonebook, the incoming/outgoing call record is updated by the name in the phonebook when the engine is restarted.
The cell phone does not synchronize with the vehicle regarding the incoming/outgoing call record	Some types of cell phones do not synchronize automatically.	Operate the cell phone for synchronization.
It takes a long time to complete the function for changing the language	A maximum of 60 seconds is required.	—

# Appendix

## Things You Need to Know

### **WARNING**

**Always adjust the audio while the vehicle is stopped:**

Do not adjust the audio control switches while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the audio while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Even if the audio control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

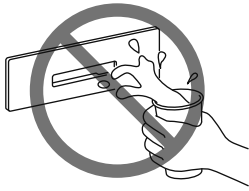
### **CAUTION**

For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

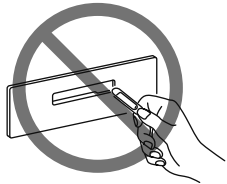
### **NOTE**

- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the audio system on for a long period of time when the engine is not running.
- If a cellular phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system, however, this does not indicate that the system has been damaged.

Do not spill any liquid on the audio system.



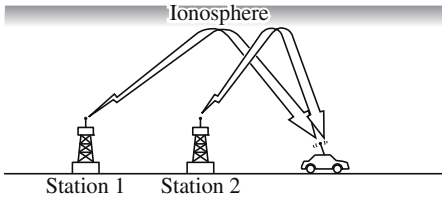
Do not insert any objects, other than CDs, into the slot.



### ▼ **Radio Reception**

#### AM characteristics

AM signals bend around such things as buildings or mountains and bounce off the ionosphere. Therefore, they can reach longer distances than FM signals. Because of this, 2 stations may sometimes be picked up on the same frequency at the same time.

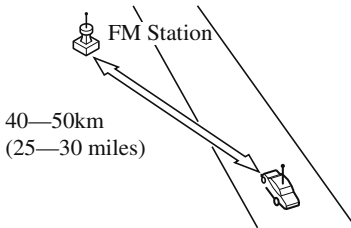


#### FM characteristics

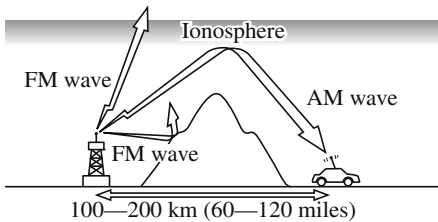
An FM broadcast range is usually about 40—50 km (25—30 miles) from the source. Because of extra coding needed to break the sound into 2 channels, stereo FM



has even less range than monaural (non-stereo) FM.



Signals from an FM transmitter are similar to beams of light because they do not bend around corners, but they do reflect. Unlike AM signals, FM signals cannot travel beyond the horizon. Therefore, FM stations cannot be received at the great distances possible with AM reception.

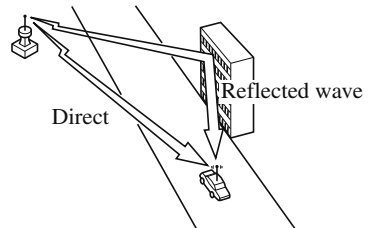


Atmospheric conditions can also affect FM reception. High humidity will cause poor reception. However, cloudy days may provide better reception than clear days.

### **Multipath noise**

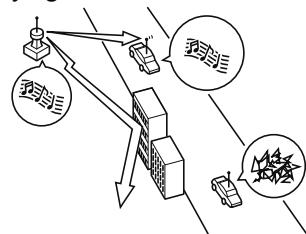
Since FM signals can be reflected by obstructions, it is possible to receive both the direct signal and the reflected signal at the same time. This causes a slight delay in reception and may be heard as a broken sound or a distortion. This problem may

also be encountered when in close proximity to the transmitter.



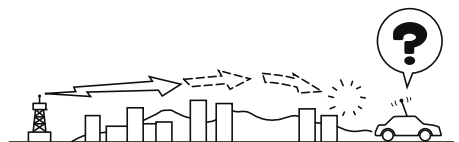
### **Flutter/Skip noise**

Signals from an FM transmitter move in straight lines and become weak in valleys between tall buildings, mountains, and other obstacles. When a vehicle passes through such an area, the reception conditions may change suddenly, resulting in annoying noise.



### **Weak signal noise**

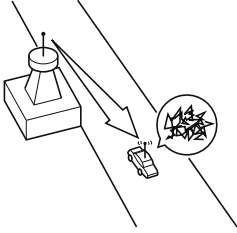
In suburban areas, broadcast signals become weak because of distance from the transmitter. Reception in such fringe areas is characterised by sound breakup.



# Appendix

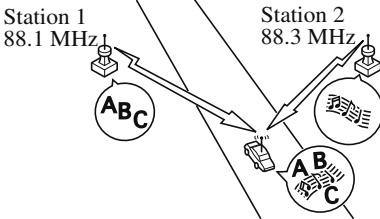
## Strong signal noise

This occurs very close to a transmitter tower. The broadcast signals are extremely strong, so the result is noise and sound breakup at the radio receiver.



## Station drift noise

When a vehicle reaches the area of 2 strong stations broadcasting at similar frequencies, the original station may be temporarily lost and the second station picked up. At this time there will be some noise from this disturbance.



## ▼ Operating Tips for CD Player

### Condensation phenomenon

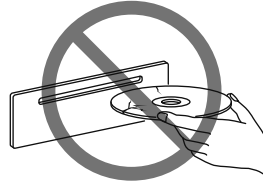
Immediately after turning on the heater when the vehicle is cold, the CD or optical components (prism and lens) in the CD player may become clouded with condensation. At this time, the CD will eject immediately when placed in the unit. A clouded CD can be corrected simply by wiping it with a soft cloth. Clouded optical components will clear naturally in about

an hour. Wait for normal operation to return before attempting to use the unit.

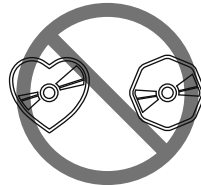
### Handling the CD player

The following precautions should be observed.

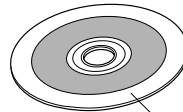
- Do not use deformed or cracked CDs. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



- Do not use non-conventional discs such as heart-shaped, octagonal discs, etc. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



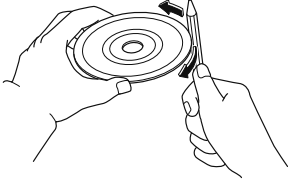
- If the memory portion of the CD is transparent or translucent, do not use the disc.



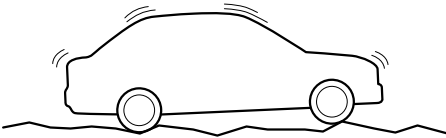
Transparent

- A new CD may have rough edges on its inner and outer perimeters. If a disc with rough edges is used, proper setting will not be possible and the CD player will not play the CD. In addition, the disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction. Remove the rough edges in advance by

using a ball-point pen or pencil as shown in the following figure. To remove the rough edges, rub the side of the pen or pencil against the inner and outer perimeter of the CD.



- When driving over uneven surfaces, the sound may jump.



- CDs bearing the logo shown in the illustration can be played. No other discs can be played.



- Use discs that have been legitimately produced. If illegally-copied discs such as pirated discs are used, the system may not operate properly.
- Be sure never to touch the signal surface when handling the CDs. Pick up a CD

by grasping the outer edge or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.



- Do not stick paper or tape on the CD. Avoid scratching the reverse side (the side without a label). The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- Dust, finger smudges, and dirt can decrease the amount of light reflected from the signal surface, thus affecting sound quality. If the CD should become soiled, gently wipe it with a soft cloth from the centre of the CD to the edge.
- Do not use record sprays, antistatic agents, or household spray cleaners. Volatile chemicals such as benzine and thinner can also damage the surface of the CD and must not be used. Anything that can damage, warp, or fog plastic should never be used to clean CDs.
- The CD player ejects the CD if the CD is inserted upside down. Also dirty and/or defective CDs may be ejected.
- Do not insert cleaning discs in the CD player.
- Do not insert any disc with a peel-off seal affixed to it.
- This unit may not be able to play certain CD-R/CD-RWs made using a computer or music CD recorder due to disc characteristics, scratches, smudges, dirt, etc., or due to dust or condensation on the lens inside the unit.
- Storing CDs in the vehicle exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature may

## Appendix

---

damage the CD-R/CD-RWs, and make them unplayable.

- CD-R/CD-RW exceeding 700 MB cannot be played.
- This unit may not be able to play certain discs made using a computer due to the application (writing software) setting used. (For details, consult the store where the application was purchased.)
- It is possible that certain text data, such as titles, recorded on a CD-R/CD-RW may not be displayed when musical data (CD-DA) is playing.
- The period from when a CD-RW is inserted to when it begins playing is longer than a normal CD or CD-R.
- Completely read the instruction manual and cautions for CD-R/CD-RWs.
- Do not use discs with cellophane tape adhering, partially peeled off labels, or adhesive material exuding from the edges of the CD label. Also, do not use discs with a commercially-available CD-R label affixed. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.

### ▼ Operating Tips for MP3

MP3 stands for MPEG Audio Layer 3, which is standardised voice compression established by the ISO\*<sup>1</sup> working group (MPEG).

Use of MP3 allows for audio data to be compressed to approximately a tenth of the source data size.

This unit plays files with the extension (.mp3) as MP3 files.

\*<sup>1</sup> International Organisation for Standardisation

### CAUTION

*Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.*

### **NOTE**

*Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue-generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, lead and/or any other media), broadcasting/streaming via the Internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit <http://www.mp3licensing.com>.*

- This audio system handles MP3 files that have been recorded on CD-R/CD-RW/CD-ROMs.
- When naming an MP3 file, be sure to add an MP3 file extension (.mp3) after the file name.
- The number of characters which can be displayed is restricted.

### ▼ Operating Tips for WMA

WMA is short for Windows Media\*<sup>1</sup> Audio and is the audio compression format used by Microsoft\*<sup>1</sup>.

Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3. This unit plays files with the extension (.wma) as WMA files.

\*1 Windows Media and Microsoft are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation U.S. in the United States and other countries.

 **CAUTION**

*Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.*

- WMA files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension “.wma” to the end of the file name, and then write it to the disc/memory.

**▼ Operating Tips for AAC**

AAC stands for Advanced Audio Coding, which is standardised voice compression established by the ISO\*1 working group (MPEG). Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3.

This unit plays files with the extensions (.aac/.m4a/.wav) as the AAC files.

 **CAUTION**

*Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.*

- AAC files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension “.aac”, “.m4a”, or “.wav” to the end of the file name, and then write it to the disc/memory.

\*1 International Organisation for Standardisation

**▼ Operating Tips for OGG**

OGG is the audio compression format for Xiph. Org Foundation.

Audio data can be created and stored at a higher compression ratio than MP3. This unit plays files with the extension (.ogg) as OGG files.

 **CAUTION**

*Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.*

- OGG files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.
- The file extension may not be provided depending on the computer operating system, version, software, or settings. In this case, add the file extension “.ogg” to the end of the file name, and then write it to the memory.

# Appendix

## ▼ Operating Tips for DVD Player

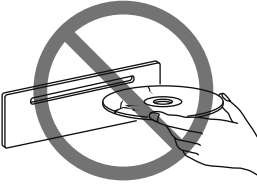
### Condensation phenomenon

Immediately after turning on the heater when the vehicle is cold, the DVD or optical components (prism and lens) in the DVD player may become clouded with condensation. At this time, the DVD will eject immediately when placed in the unit. A clouded DVD can be corrected simply by wiping it with a soft cloth. Clouded optical components will clear naturally in about an hour. Wait for normal operation to return before attempting to use the unit.

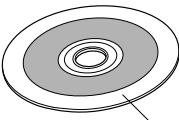
### Handling the DVD player

The following precautions should be observed.

- Do not use deformed or cracked DVDs. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.



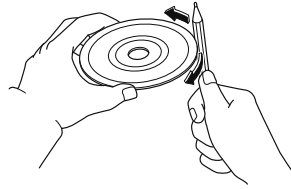
- Do not use non-conventional discs such as heart-shaped, etc. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- If the memory portion of the DVD is transparent or translucent, do not use the disc.



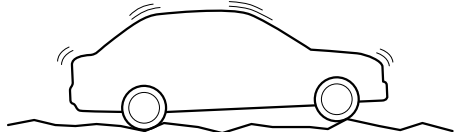
Transparent

- A new DVD may have rough edges on its inner and outer perimeters. If a disc

with rough edges is used, proper setting will not be possible and the DVD player will not play the DVD. In addition, the disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction. Remove the rough edges in advance by using a ball-point pen or pencil as shown below. To remove the rough edges, rub the side of the pen or pencil against the inner and outer perimeter of the DVD.



- When driving over uneven surfaces, the sound may jump.



- DVDs bearing the logo shown in the illustration or DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RW written with video data (DVD-Video/DVD-VR file) can be played.



- Use discs that have been legitimately produced. If illegally-copied discs such as pirated discs are used, the system may not operate properly.
- Be sure never to touch the signal surface when handling the DVDs. Pick up a

DVD by grasping the outer edge or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.



- Do not stick paper or tape on the DVD. Avoid scratching the reverse side (the side without a label). The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- Dust, finger smudges, and dirt can decrease the amount of light reflected from the signal surface, thus affecting sound quality. If the DVD should become soiled, gently wipe it with a soft cloth from the centre of the DVD to the edge.
- Do not use record sprays, antistatic agents, or household spray cleaners. Volatile chemicals such as benzine and thinner can also damage the surface of the DVD and must not be used. Anything that can damage, warp, or fog plastic should never be used to clean DVDs.
- The DVD player ejects the DVD if the DVD is inserted upside down. Also dirty and/or defective DVDs may be ejected.
- Do not insert cleaning discs in the DVD player.
- Do not insert any disc with a peel-off seal affixed to it.
- This unit may not be able to play certain DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RWs made using a computer or DVD recorder due to disc characteristics, scratches, smudges, dirt, etc., or due to

dust or condensation on the lens inside the unit.

- Storing DVDs in the vehicle exposed to direct sunlight or high temperature may damage the DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RWs, and make them unplayable.
- This unit may not be able to play certain discs made using a computer due to the application (writing software) setting used. (For details, consult the store where the application was purchased.)
- Completely read the instruction manual and cautions for DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RWs.
- Do not use discs with cellophane tape adhering, partially peeled off labels, or adhesive material exuding from the edges of the DVD label. Also, do not use discs with a commercially-available DVD-R label affixed. The disc may not eject resulting in a malfunction.
- The conditions in which a DVD video can be played may be pre-determined depending on the intentions of the disc software creator. Functions may not operate as the user intends because this DVD player operates according to the design intentions of the software creator. Always refer to the instructions accompanying the disc to be played.
- Manufactured under license by Dolby Laboratories, Inc.. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

**NOTE**








- *Video data (DVD-Video/DVD-VR files) written to DVD/DVD-R/DVD+R/DVD-RW/DVD+RW can be played.*

# Appendix

- This unit is compatible for playback of dual-layer DVD/DVD-R.
- Regional number for this unit is [3].
- DVD-Video/DVD-VR files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files or folder names may not display correctly.

## Mark indicating on disc

Marks indicated on discs or packages are as follows:

Mark		Meaning
NTSC	PAL	Indicates a colour TV system (broadcast system depends on market).
		Indicates the number of audio tracks. The number indicates the number of audio recordings.
		Indicates the number of subtitled languages. The number indicates the number of recorded languages.
		Number of angles. The number indicates the number of recorded angles.
		Indicates the screen modes which can be selected. “16:9” indicates a wide screen and “4:3” indicates a standard screen.
		Indicates the region code for which a disc can be played. ALL indicates global applicability, and a number indicates applicability based on region.

## Glossary

### DVD-Video

DVD-Video is a video image storing standard determined by the DVD forum. “MPEG2”, a global standard in digital compression technologies, has been adopted which compresses on average about 1/40th of the image data and stores it. In addition, a variable-rate coding technology, which changes the assigned information amount according to the shape of the screen image, has been adopted. Audio information can be stored using Dolby digital instead of PCM (Pulse Code Modulation) and more realistic sounding audio can be enjoyed.

In addition, various, supplementary functions such as multi-language availability are provided for enhanced enjoyment.

### DVD-VR

DVD-VR is short for DVD Video Recording Format; video image storing standard determined by the DVD forum.

### Multi-angle

One of the DVD player's functions. Because scenes can be recorded in multiple angles (camera position), users can choose a desired angle.

### Multi-language

As a function of the DVD player, audio or subtitles for the same video images can be stored in multiple languages and the language can be selected freely.

### Region code

DVD players and discs are assigned codes for each market region and only discs



manufactured for that specific region can be played.

A disc cannot be played if the region code assigned to the player is not indicated on the disc.

In addition, even if a region code is not indicated on the disc, disc playback may be prohibited depending on the region. In this case, a disc may not be playable in this DVD player.

### ▼ Operating Tips for USB device

This unit plays audio files as follows:

Extension	Playback with this unit
.mp3	MP3
.wma	WMA
.aac	AAC
.m4a	
.wav	WAV
.ogg	OGG



*Do not use an audio file extension on files other than audio files. In addition, do not change the audio file extension. Otherwise, the unit will not recognise the file correctly resulting in noise or a malfunction.*

### NOTE

- Playback may not be possible depending on the type and condition of the USB flash memory even if the audio file complies with the standard.
- A copyright protected WMA/AAC file cannot be played in this unit.
- If a file name in the USB memory is too long, it could cause operation problems such as not being able to playback the song.

*(Recommended: Within 80 characters)*

- The order of the music data stored in the device may differ from the playback order.
- To prevent loss or damage of stored data, we recommend that you always back up your data.
- If the current consumption of the connected device exceeds the following current value, it may not operate or recharge.
  - Apple device is connected : 2,100 mA
  - Device compatible with BC1.2 is connected : 1,500 mA
  - Device other than the above is connected : 500 mA
- Do not pull out the USB device while in the USB mode (only pull it out while in FM/AM radio or CD mode).
- The device will not operate if the data is password protected.

MP3/WMA/AAC/OGG files written under specifications other than the indicated specification may not play normally or files/folder names may not display correctly.

### ▼ Agreements and disclaimers related to Apple CarPlay

This unit is compatible with Apple CarPlay which can operate an iPhone using the vehicle's audio device.

- \* iPhone, Siri and Apple Music are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- \* Apple CarPlay is trademarks of Apple Inc.

# Appendix

---

\* iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.

May not be compatible depending on the model or OS version.



- *For the purposes of safety, do not operate your iPhone while driving.*
- *Disconnect the iPhone when it is not in use. If the device is left in the cabin, it could be damaged or the battery may deteriorate due to the excessive temperature or humidity inside the cabin.*
- *If the iPhone battery has deteriorated, it may not recharge or play audio even if it is connected to this unit.*
- *Before use, carefully read the user instructions for the iPhone.*

### **NOTE**

*To prevent loss or damage of stored data, we recommend that you always back up your data.*

### **▼ Operating Tips for Android™**

Requires the Android Auto app on Google Play and an Android compatible smartphone running Android™ 5.0 Lollipop or higher.



- *For the purposes of safety, do not operate your Android™ Smartphone while driving.*

➤ *Disconnect the Android™ Smartphone when it is not in use. If the device is left in the cabin, it could be damaged or the battery may weaken due to the excessive temperature or humidity inside the cabin.*

➤ *If the Android™ Smartphone battery has deteriorated, it may not recharge or play audio even if it is connected to this unit.*

➤ *Before use, carefully read the user instructions for the Android™ Smartphone.*

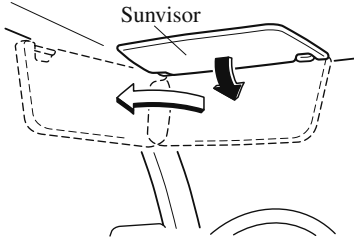
### **NOTE**

*To prevent loss or damage of stored data, we recommend that you always back up your data.*

\* Google, Android, Android Auto and other related marks are trademarks of Google LLC.

## Sunvisors

When you need a sunvisor, lower it for use in front or swing it to the side.

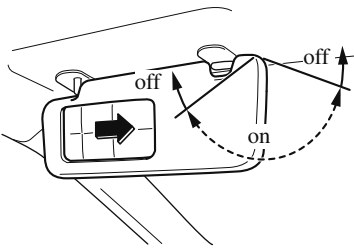


## ▼ Vanity Mirrors

To use the vanity mirror, lower the sunvisor.

The vanity mirror light will illuminate when you open the cover.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, the vanity mirror will only illuminate in the tilt range shown in the figure.



## Interior Lights

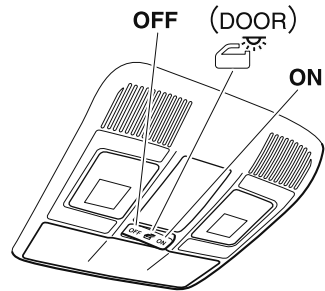
### NOTE

- Do not leave the lights on for long periods while the engine is turned off. Otherwise the battery power could be depleted.

### Overhead Lights

Switch Position	Overhead Lights
OFF	Light off
DOOR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· Light is on when any door is open</li> <li>· Light is on or off when the illuminated entry system is on</li> </ul>
ON	Light on

### Front

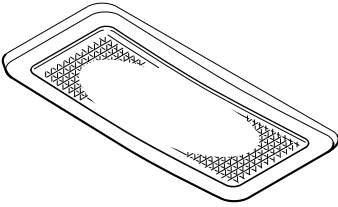


### Centre



# Interior Equipment

## Rear



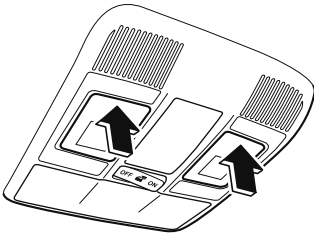
### NOTE

The rear overhead light and the centre map lights also turn on and off when the front overhead light switch is operated.

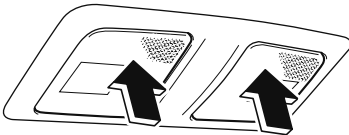
### Map Lights

When the overhead light switch is in the door or off position, press the lens to illuminate the map lights, and then press the lens again to turn them off.

## Front



## Centre



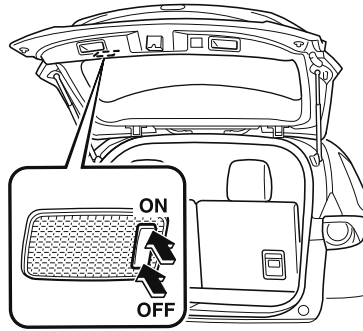
### NOTE

- Once the centre map lights have been turned off, they will turn on and off depending on the position to which the front overhead light is switched.

- The map lights will not turn off even if the lens is pressed in the following cases:

- The front overhead light switch is in the ON position.
- The front overhead light switch is in the door position with the door open.
- The illuminated entry system is on.

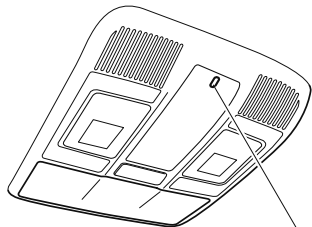
### Luggage Compartment Lights



Switch Position	Luggage Compartment Light
OFF	Light off
ON	Light on when the liftgate is open

### Ambient Light\*

The ambient lights continuously turn on when the ignition is switched ON. The ambient lights dim when the position lights or headlights are turned on.



Ambient light

**NOTE**

- The ambient lights turn on or off in conjunction with the illuminated entry system when the ignition is switched OFF.
- The ambient light illumination level can be changed while the position lights or headlights are turned on.  
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

**▼ Illuminated Entry System**

The overhead lights turn on when any of the following operations is done with the overhead light switch in the DOOR position.

The ambient light turns on regardless of the overhead light switch position.

- The driver's door is unlocked with the ignition is switched OFF.
- The ignition is switched OFF with all doors closed.

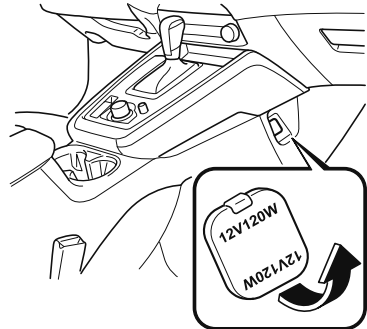
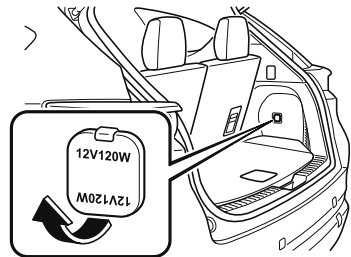
**NOTE**

- The illumination time differs depending on the operation.
- **Battery saver**  
If an interior light is left on with the ignition switched OFF, the light is turned off automatically after about 30 minutes to prevent battery depletion.
- The operation of the illuminated entry system can be changed.  
Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

**Accessory Sockets**

Only use genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent requiring no greater than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON.

**Front****Rear****⚠ CAUTION**

➤ To prevent accessory socket damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:

- Do not use accessories that require more than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).
- Do not use accessories that are not genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent.

## Interior Equipment

- Close the cover when the accessory socket is not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the accessory socket.
- Correctly insert the plug into the accessory socket.
- Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the accessory socket.
- Noise may occur on the audio playback depending on the device connected to the accessory socket.
- Depending on the device connected to the accessory socket, the vehicle's electrical system may be affected, which could cause the warning light to illuminate. Disconnect the connected device and make sure that the problem is resolved. If the problem is resolved, disconnect the device from the socket and switch the ignition off. If the problem is not resolved, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### NOTE

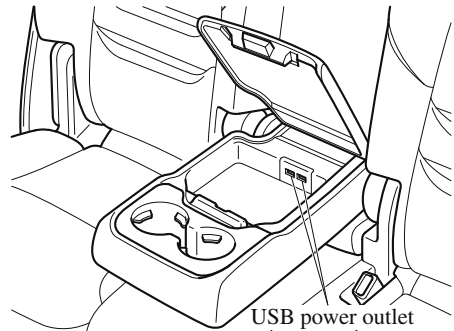
To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the socket for long periods with the engine off or idling.

## USB Power Outlet

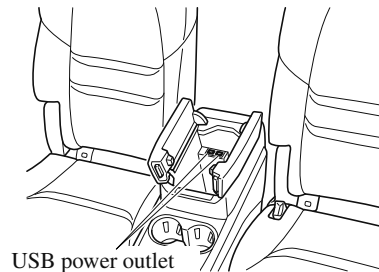
The USB power outlets can be used regardless of whether the ignition is switched to ACC or ON.

Only use USB devices that have a maximum power consumption of 10.5W (DC5V, 2.1A) or below.

### 6:4 split adjustable-type bench seat type



### Captain seat and second-row seat console type



### CAUTION

- To prevent USB power outlets damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:
  - Do not use USB devices that require more than 10.5 W (DC 5 V, 2.1 A).

- Close the lid when the USB power outlets are not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the USB power outlets.
- Correctly connect the USB connector into the USB power outlets.

## NOTE

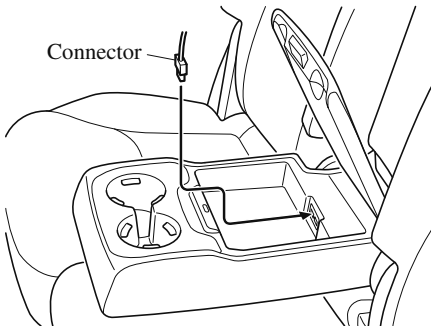
- The USB power outlets are designed only for charging and they cannot be used for connecting to the vehicle's audio system.
- To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the USB power outlets for long periods with the engine off or idling.

## How to connect

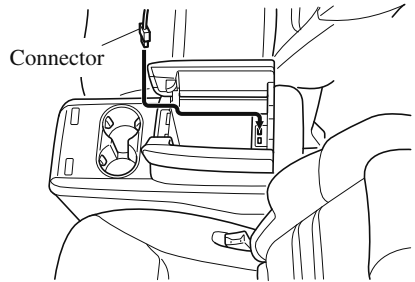
The groove in the armrest box can be used to pass the cord of the device into the box to connect it to the USB power outlets.

1. Open the lid.
2. Route the cord through the groove in the armrest box and insert the USB connector into the USB power outlets.

## 6:4 split adjustable-type bench seat type



## Captain seat and second-row seat console type



# Interior Equipment

## Cup Holder

### **⚠ WARNING**

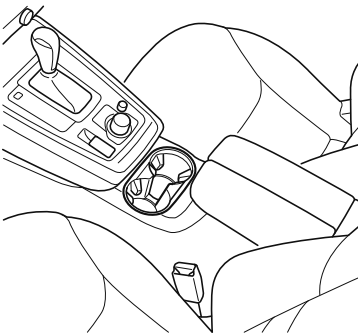
**Never use a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving:**

Using a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. If the contents spill, you could be scalded.

**Do not put anything other than cups or drink cans in cup holders:**

Putting objects other than cups or drink cans in a cup holder is dangerous. During sudden braking or manoeuvring, occupants could be hit and injured, or objects could be thrown around the vehicle, causing interference with the driver and the possibility of an accident. Only use a cup holder for cups or drink cans.

### ▼ Front



### ▼ Rear

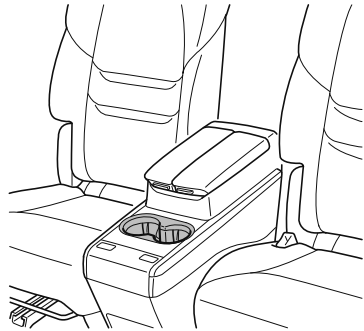
#### Second-row seat

Cup holders are located in the armrest/second-row seat console.

#### 6:4 split adjustable-type bench seat type

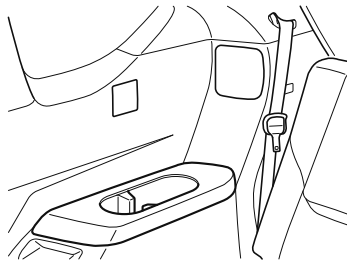


#### Captain seat and second-row seat console type



#### Third-row seat

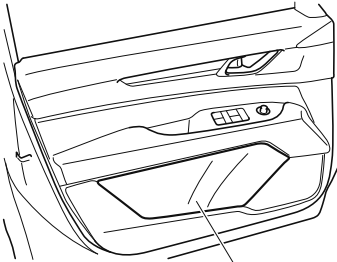
Cup holders are located in the third-row seat side trims.





## Bottle Holder

Bottle holders are on the inside of the doors.



Bottle holder

### CAUTION

Do not use the bottle holders for containers without caps. The contents may spill when opening/closing the door or while driving the vehicle.

## Storage Compartments

### WARNING

**Keep storage boxes closed when driving:**  
Driving with the storage boxes open is dangerous. To reduce the possibility of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, keep the storage boxes closed when driving.

**When loading cargo, make sure that it is completely secured:**

If the cargo is not completely secured, it may move or collapse while driving or during sudden braking, resulting in injury or an accident.

**Do not put articles in storage spaces with no lid:**

Putting articles in storage spaces with no lid is dangerous as they could be thrown around the cabin if the vehicle is suddenly accelerated and cause injury depending on how the article is stored.

### CAUTION

Do not leave lighters or eyeglasses in the storage boxes while parked under the sun. A lighter could explode or the plastic material in eyeglasses could deform and crack from high temperature.

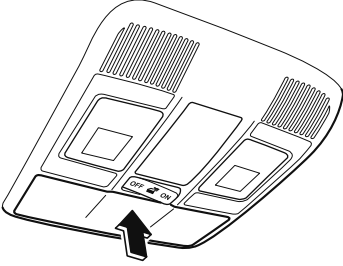
### ▼ Overhead Console

This console box is designed to store eyeglasses or other accessories.

# Interior Equipment

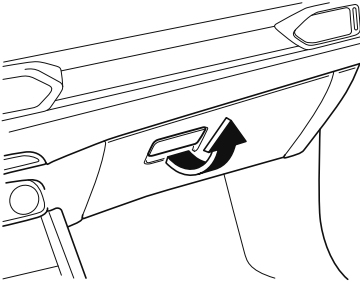
---

Push and release to open.



## ▼ Glove Compartment

To open the glove compartment, pull the latch toward you.

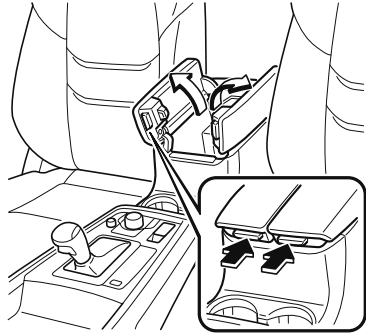


To close the glove compartment, firmly press in the centre of the glove compartment lid.

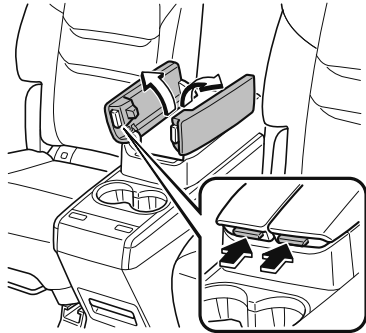
## ▼ Centre Console\*

To open, push the button.

## Front



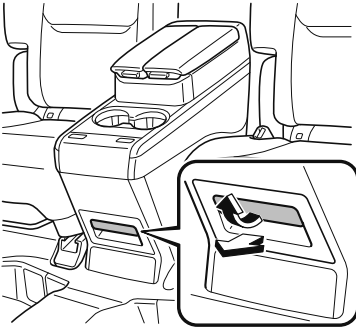
## Rear



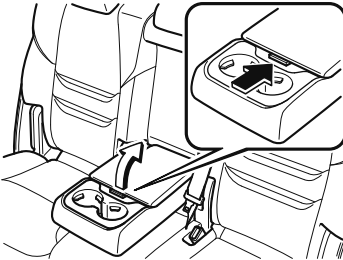
## ▼ (Second-row Seat Console Box with Armrest) Storage Box\*

**⚠ CAUTION**

*Store the armrests when the storage box is not in use. Otherwise, your foot might get caught when changing seats and fall down resulting in injury.*

**▼ Armrest Box\***

To open, push the button and pull up the lid.



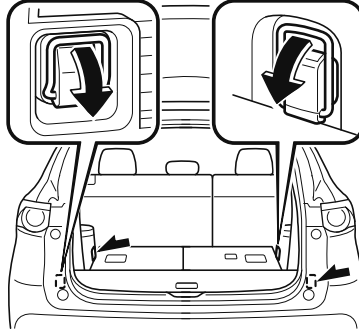
# Interior Equipment

---

## ▼ Luggage Compartment

### Cargo Securing Loops

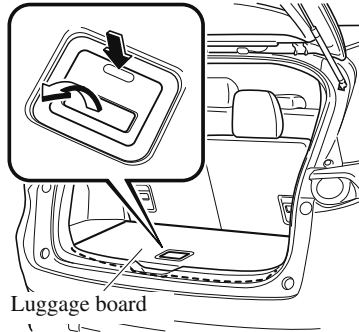
Use the loops in the luggage compartment to secure cargo with a rope or net. The tensile strength of the loops is 169 N (17 kgf, 38 lbf). Do not apply excessive force to the loops as it will damage them.



### Cargo Sub-Compartment

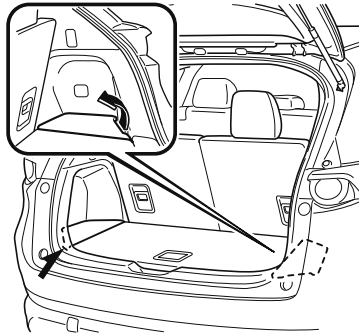
#### Centre cargo sub-compartment

Raise the luggage board to put small items in the cargo sub-compartment.



## Side cargo sub-compartment

Insert your hand into the clearance and open the sideboard to put small items in the cargo sub-compartment.



### NOTE

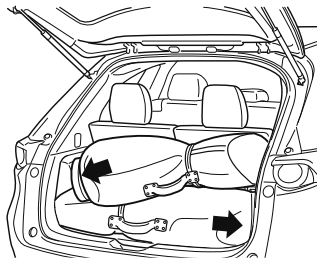
#### Loading golf bags

*(Some golf bags may not fit using the following methods depending on their sizes.)*

*Up to two golf bags can be carried in the luggage compartment.*

*Bottom: Place the first golf bag in the luggage compartment with the bottoms pointed to the right.*

*Top: Place the second golf bag with its bottom pointed to the left in the luggage compartment.*



The arrows indicate the bottoms of the golf bags.

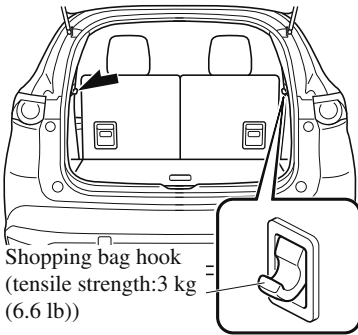
## ▼ Shopping Bag Hook

The shopping bag hook can be used for hanging shopping bags.

# Interior Equipment

## ⚠ CAUTION

Do not hang excessive weight on the shopping bag hook as it could be damaged.



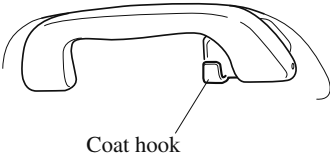
## ▼ Rear Coat Hooks

## ⚠ WARNING

**Never hang heavy or sharp objects on the assist grips and coat hooks:**

Hanging heavy or sharp-ended objects such as a coat hanger from the assist grips or coat hooks is dangerous as they can fly off and hit an occupant in the cabin if a curtain air bag was to deploy, which could result in serious injury or death.

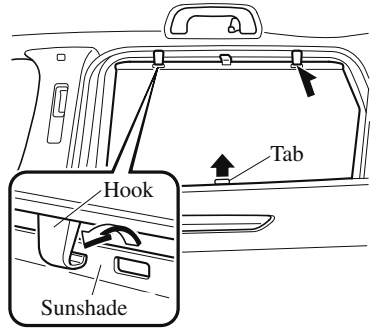
Always hang clothes on the coat hooks and the assist grips without hangers.



## Sunshade (Rear Door Window)\*

The sunshades are equipped to the windows on both sides of the second-row seats.

Hold the tab and pull the sunshade upward and hook the slots.



To return the sunshade to its original position, unhook the sunshade and retract it slowly.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Securely hook the sunshade. Otherwise, the sunshade may retract suddenly resulting in injury such as fingers get pinched.
- Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. Using a sunshade while a window is open could cause it to unhook and flap around inside the cabin where it can hit someone sitting near the window, resulting in injury.

# 6

## Maintenance and Care

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

### Essential Information.....6-2

Introduction..... 6-2

### Scheduled Maintenance..... 6-3

Scheduled Maintenance..... 6-3

Maintenance Monitor..... 6-7

### Owner Maintenance..... 6-9

Owner Maintenance

Precautions..... 6-9

Bonnet..... 6-11

Engine Compartment

Overview..... 6-13

Engine Oil..... 6-14

Engine Coolant..... 6-17

Brake Fluid..... 6-19

Window and Headlight Washer

Fluid..... 6-20

Body Lubrication..... 6-20

Wiper Blades..... 6-21

Battery..... 6-26

Key Battery Replacement..... 6-29

Tyres..... 6-31

Light Bulbs..... 6-34

Fuses..... 6-42

### Appearance Care..... 6-48

Exterior Care..... 6-48

Interior Care..... 6-53

# Essential Information

---

## Introduction

Be careful not to hurt yourself when inspecting your vehicle, replacing a tyre, or doing some kind of maintenance such as car washing.

In particular, wear thick work gloves such as cotton gloves when touching areas that are difficult to see while inspecting or working on your vehicle. Doing inspections or procedures with your bare hands could cause injury.

If you are unsure about any procedure this manual describes, we strongly urge you to have a reliable and qualified technician perform the work, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Authorised Mazda technicians and genuine Mazda parts are dedicated to your vehicle. Without this expertise and the parts that have been designed and made especially for your Mazda, inadequate, incomplete, and insufficient servicing may result in problems. This could lead to vehicle damage or an accident and injuries.

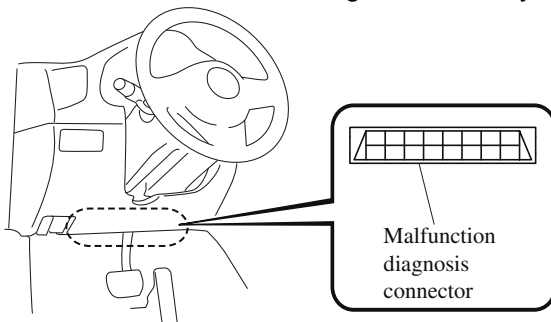
For expert advice and quality service, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

The owner should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed as prescribed.

A claim against a warranty will not qualify if it results from lack of maintenance and not from defective material or authorised workmanship.

The malfunction diagnosis connector is designed exclusively for connecting the specially designed device to perform on-board diagnosis.

Do not connect any devices other than the specially designed malfunction diagnosis devices for servicing. If any device other than the malfunction diagnosis device is connected, it may affect the vehicle's electrical devices or lead to damage such as battery depletion.





# Scheduled Maintenance

## Scheduled Maintenance

### NOTE

After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

### Emission control and related systems

The ignition and fuel systems are highly important to the emission control system and to efficient engine operation. Do not tamper with them.

All inspections and adjustments must be made by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### ▼ Schedule

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.																
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
<b>SKYACTIV-G 2.5</b>																	
Spark plugs*1		Replace every 120,000 km (75,000 miles).															
Engine oil*2	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Georgia/ Armenia/ Cambodia/ Gabon/ Ghana/ Cameroon/ Burundi/ Mozambique/ Mongolia/ Tanzania	Replace every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months.															

# Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.																
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100
Engine oil filter*2	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Georgia/ Armenia/ Cambodia	Replace every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year.															
	Gabon/ Ghana/ Cameroon/ Burundi/ Mozambique/ Mongolia/ Tanzania	Replace every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months.															
Fuel filter	Except Taiwan	Replace every 60,000 km (37,500 miles).															
	Taiwan	Replace every 80,000 km (50,000 miles).															
Fuel system*4*5	Affected countries*6	Clean the fuel system by Mazda genuine deposit cleaner at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).															
Evaporative system (if installed)			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
<b>SKYACTIV-D 2.2</b>																	
Engine oil*2*3	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Malaysia/ Philippines	Replace every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) or 6 months.															
Engine oil filter*2	Except below countries	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
	Malaysia/ Philippines	Replace every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year.															
Fuel filter					R				R				R				R
<b>SKYACTIV-G 2.5, SKYACTIV-D 2.2</b>																	
Drive belts*7		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling system			I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I
Engine coolant*8		Replace at first 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years.															

# Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of months or kilometres (miles), whichever comes first.																	
	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	
	×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	
	×1000 miles	6.25	12.5	18.75	25	31.25	37.5	43.75	50	56.25	62.5	68.75	75	81.25	87.5	93.75	100	
Air filter*9	Except below countries		C		C		R		C		C		R		C		C	
	Georgia/Armenia		C		R		C		R		C		R		C		R	
Fuel lines and hoses		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		
Battery*10		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		
Brake fluid*11	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R		
Parking brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Power brake unit (Brake booster) and hoses		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		
Disc brakes	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Steering operation and linkages		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		
Rear differential oil	*12																	
Transfer oil	*12																	
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		
Driveshaft dust boots				I				I				I				I		
Exhaust system and heat shields	Inspect every 80,000 km (50,000 miles).																	
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body		T		T		T		T		T		T		T		T		
Body condition (for rust, corrosion and perforation)	Inspect annually.																	
Cabin air filter (if installed)		R		R		R		R		R		R		R		R		
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	
Tyre rotation	Rotate every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).																	
Emergency flat tyre repair kit (if installed)*13	Inspect annually.																	

### Chart symbols:

**I:** Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.

**R:** Replace

**L:** Lubricate

**C:** Clean

**T:** Tighten

**D:** Drain

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

### Remarks:

- \*1 In the countries below, inspect the spark plugs at every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 1 year before replacing them at the said interval.  
Algeria, Armenia, Angola, Bahrain, Bolivia, Burundi, B.Virgin, Cambodia, Cameroon, Chile, Costa Rica, Cote d'Ivoire, Curacao, El Salvador, Gabon, Ghana, Georgia, Guatemala, Haiti, Honduras, Hong Kong, Iran, Jordan, Kenya, Macau, Madagascar, Malaysia, Mongolia, Mozambique, Myanmar, Nigeria, Nicaragua, Oman, Panama, Papua New Guinea, Peru, Philippines, Senegal, Seychelles, Syria, Tanzania, United Arab Emirates, Vietnam, Zaire, Zimbabwe
- \*2 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter more often than the recommended intervals.
  - a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
  - b) Driving in dusty conditions
  - c) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
  - d) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
  - e) Driving in extremely hot conditions
  - f) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
- \*3 For SKYACTIV-D 2.2, reset the engine oil data whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the message/wrench indicator light display.
- \*4 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, clean the fuel system at every 5,000 km (3,125 miles) for 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or less; after that, every 10,000 km (6,250 miles).
  - a) Purpose of vehicle use is police car, taxi or driving school car.
  - b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
  - c) Driving in extremely hot conditions
- \*5 Use Mazda genuine deposit cleaner. Using non-genuine deposit cleaner would cause internal failure of the fuel system. Refer to 3-22, 9-5 for the details.
- \*6 Brunei, Cambodia, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Philippines, Thailand, Vietnam
- \*7 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if installed.  
If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts more often than the recommended intervals.
  - a) Driving in dusty conditions
  - b) Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
  - c) Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
  - d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
  - e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
  - f) Driving for long period in extremely wet or heavy rain condition
- \*8 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.
- \*9 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.
- \*10 Inspect the battery electrolyte level, specific gravity and outer appearance. If the vehicle is operated in extremely hot and cold areas, inspect the battery electrolyte level, specific gravity and appearance every 10,000 km (6,250 miles) or 6 months. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.
- \*11 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.
- \*12 If this component has been submerged in water, the oil should be replaced.
- \*13 Check the tyre repair fluid expiration date every year when performing the periodic maintenance. Replace the tyre repair fluid bottle with new one before the expiration date.

## Scheduled Maintenance

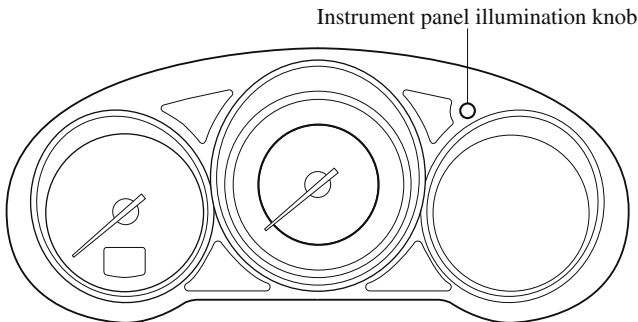
### Maintenance Monitor

#### ▼ Maintenance Monitor (Type A audio)

“Oil Change” with flexible setting\*<sup>1</sup> is available. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details\*<sup>2</sup>. When the engine oil flexible maintenance setting is selected, the wrench indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when remaining oil life becomes less than 1,000 km (600 mile), or remaining days are less than 15 (Whichever comes first).


#### Reset method

Press and hold the instrument panel illumination knob with the ignition switched off, then switch it on. Keep pressing the instrument panel illumination knob for more than 5 seconds. The master warning light will flash for a few seconds when the reset is completed.



- \*1 The engine oil flexible maintenance setting is available (only some models). Based on the engine operating conditions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining oil life.
- \*2 When the engine oil flexible maintenance setting is selected, the system must be reset whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the wrench indicator light display.

#### ▼ Maintenance Monitor (Type B audio)

1. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Applications screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select “Maintenance” to display the maintenance list screen.
4. Switch the tab and select the setting item you want to change.

## Scheduled Maintenance

---

You can customize settings in the setup display as follows:

Tab	Item	Explanation
Scheduled	Setting	Notification can be switched on/off.
	Time (months)	Displays the time or distance until maintenance is due. Select this item to set the maintenance period.
	Distance (km or mile)	The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when the remaining distance is less than 1,000 km or 600 mile, or the remaining number of days is less than 15 (whichever comes first).
	Reset	Resets the time and distance to the initial values. Once the system turns on, it needs to be reset whenever carrying out maintenance.
Tyre Rotation	Setting	Notification can be switched on/off.
	Distance (km or mile)	Displays the distance until tyre rotation is due. Select this item to set the tyre rotation distance. The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when the remaining distance is less than 1,000 km or 600 mile.
	Reset	Resets the remaining distance to the initial value. Once the system turns on, it needs to be reset whenever rotating the tyres.
Oil Change	Setting	Notification can be switched on/off.
	Distance (km or mile)	Displays the distance until the oil replacement is due. Select this item to set the oil replacement distance. The wrench indication/indicator light in the instrument cluster will be illuminated when the remaining distance is less than 1,000 km or 600 mile.
	Reset* <sup>1</sup>	Resets the remaining distance to the initial value. Once the system turns on, it needs to be reset whenever replacing the engine oil.

\*1 Whenever the engine oil is replaced, the vehicle engine control unit reset is necessary for SKYACTIV-D 2.2. Your Authorised Mazda Repairer will be able to reset the engine control unit or refer to the vehicle engine control unit reset procedure on page 6-16.

## Owner Maintenance Precautions

### Routine Service

We highly recommend that these items be inspected daily, or at least every week.

- Engine Oil Level (page 6-16)
- Engine Coolant Level (page 6-17)
- Brake Fluid Level (page 6-19)
- Washer Fluid Level (page 6-20)
- Battery Maintenance (page 6-27)
- Tyre Inflation Pressure (page 6-31)

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for items that are easy to perform.

As explained in the Introduction (page 6-2), several procedures can be done only by a qualified service technician with special tools.

Improper do-it yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Mazda Warranty statement provided with the vehicle. If you are unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

There are strict environmental laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and fluids. Please dispose of your waste properly and with due regard to the environment.

We recommend that you entrust the oil and fluid changes of your vehicle to an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



***Do not perform maintenance work if you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work. Have maintenance work done by a qualified technician:***

*Performing maintenance work on a vehicle is dangerous if not done properly. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures.*


## Owner Maintenance

---

***If you must run the engine while working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewellery (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fan which may turn on unexpectedly:***

*Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewellery, loose clothing or have long hair or a long beard. Either can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.*



 ***Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:***

*Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.*

***Do not leave items in the engine compartment:***

*After you have finished checking or doing servicing in the engine compartment, do not forget and leave items such as tools or rags in the engine compartment.*

*Tools or other items left in the engine compartment could cause engine damage or a fire leading to an unexpected accident.*



## Bonnet

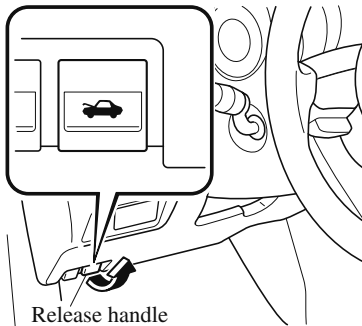
### **WARNING**

**Always check that the bonnet is closed and securely locked:**

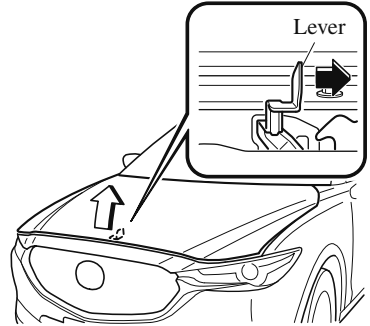
A bonnet that is not closed and securely locked is dangerous as it could fly open while the vehicle is moving and block the driver's vision which could result in a serious accident.

### ▼ Opening the Bonnet

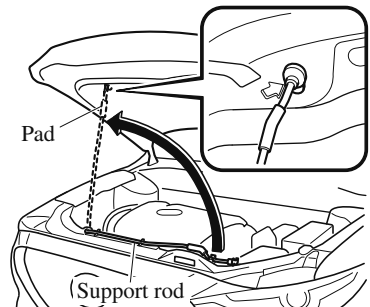
1. With the vehicle parked, pull the release handle to unlock the bonnet.



2. Insert your hand into the bonnet opening, slide the latch lever to the right, and lift up the bonnet.



3. Grasp the support rod in the padded area and secure it in the support rod hole indicated by the arrow to hold the bonnet open.

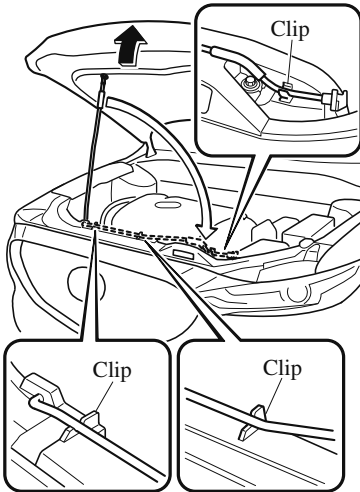


# Owner Maintenance

---

## ▼ Closing the Bonnet

1. Check under the bonnet area to make certain all filler caps are in place and all loose items (e.g. tools, oil containers, etc.) have been removed.
2. Lift the bonnet, grasp the padded area on the support rod, and secure the support rod in the clip. Verify that the support rod is secured in the clip before closing the bonnet.



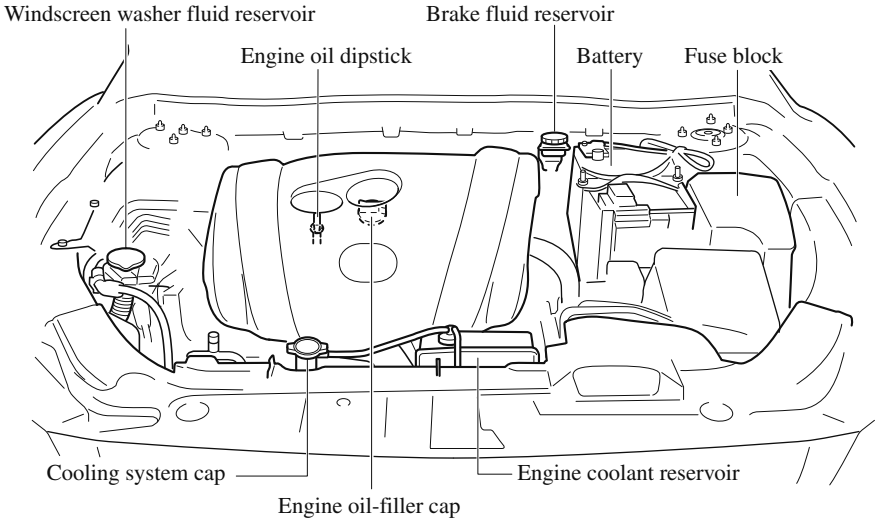
3. Lower the bonnet slowly to a height of about 20 cm (7.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

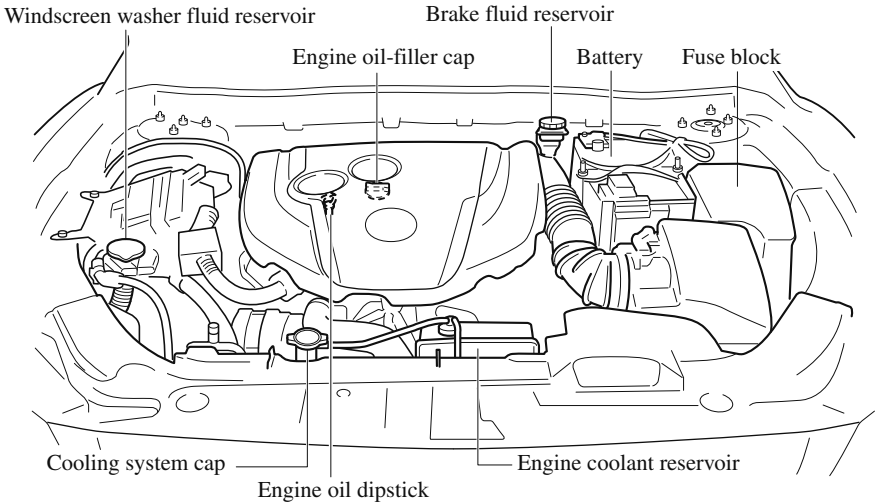
*When closing the bonnet, do not push it excessively such as by applying your weight. Otherwise, the bonnet could be deformed.*

## Engine Compartment Overview

### SKYACTIV-G 2.5



### SKYACTIV-D 2.2



**Engine Oil****NOTE**

Changing the engine oil should be done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

**▼ Recommended Oil**

In order to keep the maintenance interval (page 6-3) and to protect the engine from damage caused by poor lubrication, it is vitally important to make use of engine oil with the correct specification. Do not use oils which do not meet the following specifications or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

**SKYACTIV-G 2.5**

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers	
Grade	°C -40 -30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40
	°F -40 -20 0 20 40 60 80 100
API SL/SM/SN or ILSAC GF-III/GF-IV/GF-V	<p>10W-30</p> <p>5W-20 5W-30</p> <p>0W-20 0W-30</p>

**SKYACTIV-D 2.2**

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers	
Grade	°C -40 -30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40
	°F -40 -20 0 20 40 60 80 100
ACEA C3	<p>5W-30</p> <p>0W-30</p>

Engine oil viscosity, or thickness, has an effect on fuel economy and cold-weather operation (starting and oil flow).

Low-viscosity engine oils can provide improved fuel economy and cold-weather performance.

When choosing an oil, consider the temperature range your vehicle will operate in before the next oil change.

Then select the recommended viscosity from the chart.

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Using oils of viscosity besides those recommended for specific temperature ranges could result in engine damage.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**  
SKYACTIV-D 2.2 uses specified oil. Please confirm the specification in owner's manual. **If engine oil other than the specified oil is used, the Diesel Particulate Filter effective period of use will be shortened or the Diesel Particulate Filter may be damaged.**

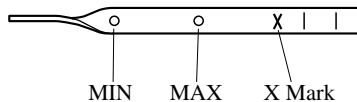
## NOTE

### (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

- It is normal for all engines to consume engine oil under normal driving conditions. Engine oil consumption may be as high as 0.8 L/1,000 km (1 L/800 miles). This may be as a result of evaporation, internal ventilation or burning of the lubricating oil in the working engine. Oil consumption may be higher when the engine is new due to the running-in process. Oil consumption is also dependant on engine speed and engine load. Under extreme driving conditions, oil consumption may be higher.

### (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

- Inspect the engine oil level periodically. When inspecting the engine oil, if the engine oil level exceeds the "X" mark on the dipstick, replace the engine oil. This should be done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. When replacing the engine oil, inspect the oil level using the oil dipstick and refill so that the engine oil level is within the range between MIN and MAX as shown in the figure.



- Whenever the engine oil is replaced, the vehicles engine control unit needs to be reset as soon as possible. Otherwise the wrench indicator light or engine oil warning light may turn on. To reset the engine control unit, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or refer to the vehicle engine control unit reset procedure on page 6-16.

## Owner Maintenance


---

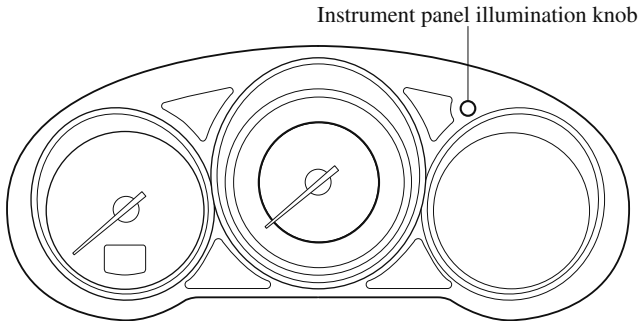
### ▼ Vehicle Engine Control Unit Reset Procedure (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

After replacing the engine oil, have a repair shop such as an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform the initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value. If the value recorded by the computer is not initialized, the wrench indicator light may not turn off or it may turn on earlier than normal.

#### **NOTE**

*The initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value can be performed using the instrument panel illumination knob in the instrument cluster as following:*

1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Switch the ignition ON with the instrument panel illumination knob pressed and continue pressing the knob for about 5 seconds until the master warning light  flashes.

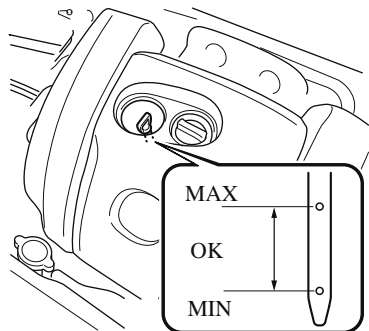


3. After the master warning light  flashes for several seconds, the initialization is completed.

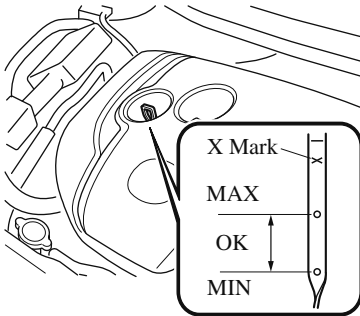
### ▼ Inspecting Engine Oil Level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on a level surface.
2. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature.
3. Turn it off and wait at least 5 minutes for the oil to return to the sump.
4. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.

### SKYACTIV-G 2.5



## SKYACTIV-D 2.2



### NOTE

#### (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

When inspecting the engine oil level, pull out the dipstick straight without twisting. In addition, when inserting the dipstick, always insert it without twisting so that the “X” mark faces the front of the vehicle.

5. Pull it out again and examine the level. The level is normal if it is between the MIN and MAX marks. If it is near or below MIN, add enough oil to bring the level to MAX.

### CAUTION

Do not overfill the engine oil. This may cause engine damage.

6. Make sure the O-ring on the dipstick is positioned properly before reinserting the dipstick.
7. Reinsert the dipstick fully.

## Engine Coolant

### ▼ Inspecting Coolant Level

### WARNING

**Do not use a match or live flame in the engine compartment. DO NOT ADD COOLANT WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT:**

A hot engine is dangerous. If the engine has been running, parts of the engine compartment can become very hot. You could be burned. Carefully inspect the engine coolant in the coolant reservoir, but do not open it.



**Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:**

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.



**Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:**

When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

# Owner Maintenance

## NOTE

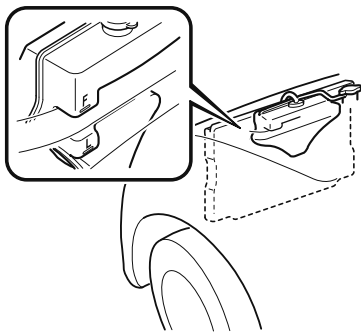
*Changing the coolant should be done by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

Inspect the antifreeze protection and coolant level in the coolant reservoir at least once a year—at the beginning of the winter season—and before travelling where temperatures may drop below freezing.

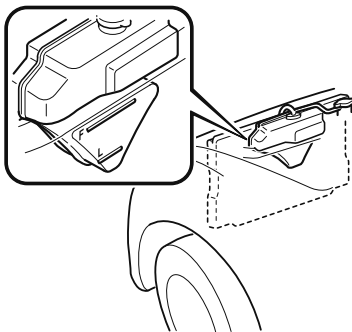
Inspect the condition and connections of all cooling system and heater hoses. Replace any that are swollen or deteriorated.

The coolant should be at full in the radiator and between the F and L marks on the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

## SKYACTIV-G 2.5



## SKYACTIV-D 2.2

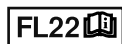


If it is at or near L, add enough coolant to the coolant reservoir to provide freezing and corrosion protection and to bring the level to F.

Securely tighten the coolant reservoir tank cap after adding coolant.

## **CAUTION**

- *Radiator coolant will damage paint. Rinse it off quickly if spilled.*
- *If the "FL22" mark is shown on or near the cooling system cap, use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.*



If the coolant reservoir is empty or new coolant is required frequently, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



## Brake Fluid

### ▼ Inspecting Brake Fluid Level

#### **! WARNING**

***If the brake fluid level is low, have the brakes inspected:***

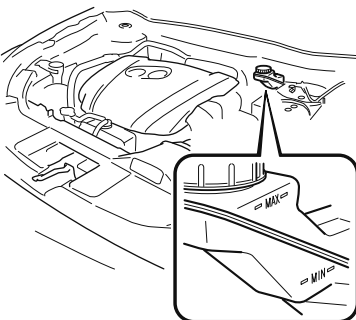
*A low brake fluid level is dangerous.*

*A low level could indicate brake lining wear or a brake system leak which could cause the brakes to fail and lead to an accident.*

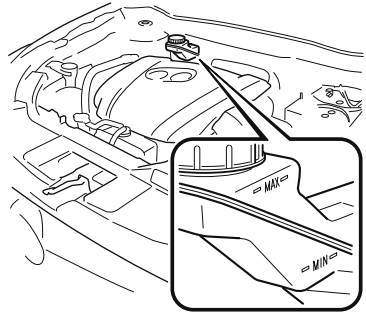
Inspect the fluid level in the reservoir regularly. It should be kept between the MAX and MIN lines.

The level normally drops with accumulated distance, a condition associated with wear of brake linings. If it is excessively low, have the brake system inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### Left-hand drive model



### Right-hand drive model



## Owner Maintenance

---

### Window and Headlight Washer Fluid

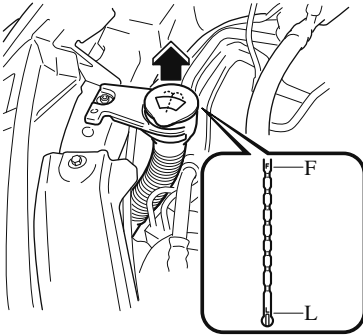
#### ▼ Inspecting Washer Fluid Level

#### **! WARNING**

***Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:***

*Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.*

Inspect fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir; add fluid if necessary.



The top of the float should be between F and L.

Use plain water if washer fluid is unavailable.

But use only washer fluid in cold weather to prevent it from freezing.

#### **NOTE**

*Front and rear washer fluid is supplied from the same reservoir.*

### Body Lubrication

All moving points of the body, such as door and bonnet hinges and locks, should be lubricated each time the engine oil is changed. Use a nonfreezing lubricant on locks during cold weather.

Make sure the bonnet's secondary latch keeps the bonnet from opening when the primary latch is released.

## Wiper Blades

### CAUTION

- *Hot waxes applied by automatic car washers have been known to affect the wiper's ability to clean windows.*
- *To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, paraffin, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.*
- *When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:*
  - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched.*
  - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.*
  - *If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object.*
  - *If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.*

*Be careful not to pinch hands or fingers as it may cause injury, or damage the wipers. When washing or servicing the vehicle, make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.*

Contamination of either the windscreen or the blades with foreign matter can reduce wiper effectiveness. Common sources are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes.

If the blades are not wiping properly, clean the window and blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent; then rinse thoroughly with clean water. Repeat if necessary.

### ▼ Replacing Windscreen Wiper Blades

When the wipers no longer clean well, the blades are probably worn or cracked. Replace them.

### CAUTION

- *To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not try to sweep the wiper arm by hand.*
- *Do not bend the blade rubber unnecessarily when replacing it. Otherwise, the metal stiffener in the blade may deform and the windscreen wiper operation may be adversely affected.*

### NOTE

*When raising both windscreen wiper arms, raise the driver's side wiper arm first. When lowering the wiper arms, slowly lower the wiper arm from the passenger's side first while supporting it with your hand. Forcefully lowering the wiper arms could damage the wiper arm and blade, and may scratch or crack the windscreen.*

Replace the wiper blades using the following procedure.

1. Raise the wiper arm.

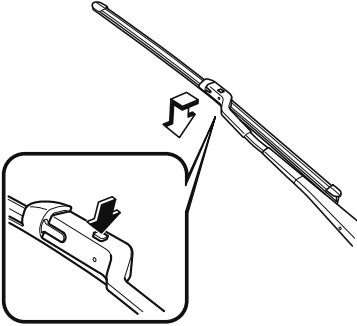
### CAUTION

*To prevent damage to the windscreen let the wiper arm down easily, do not let it slap down on the windscreen.*

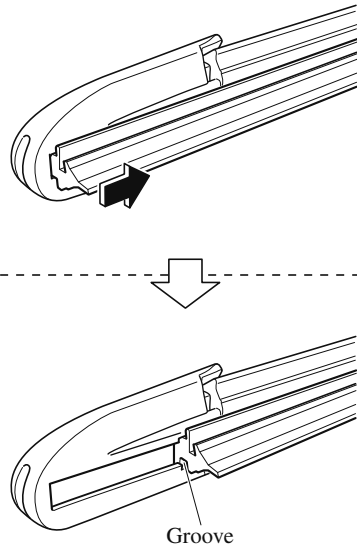
# Owner Maintenance

---

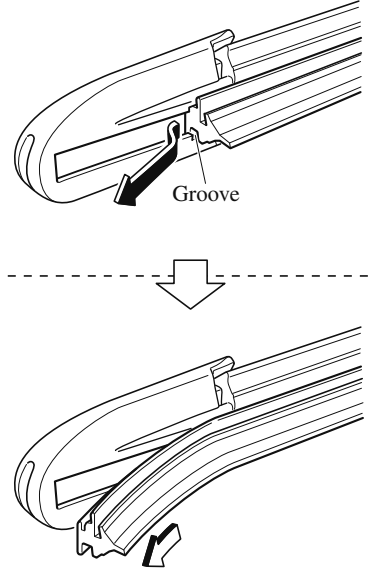
- Slide the blade component in the direction of the arrow while pressing the wiper arm tab to remove the blade component from the wiper arm.



- Pull the blade rubber in the direction of the arrow and slide it to a position where the blade holder groove can be checked.

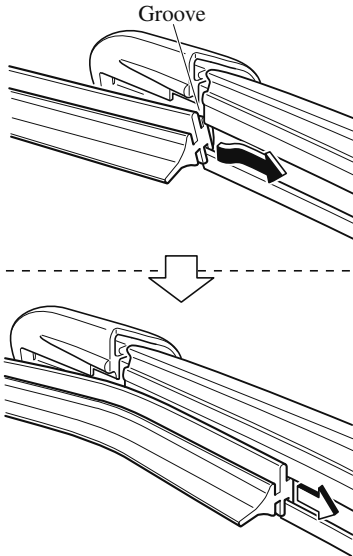


- Pull the end of the blade rubber from the blade holder groove in the direction of the arrow and remove the blade rubber from the blade holder.

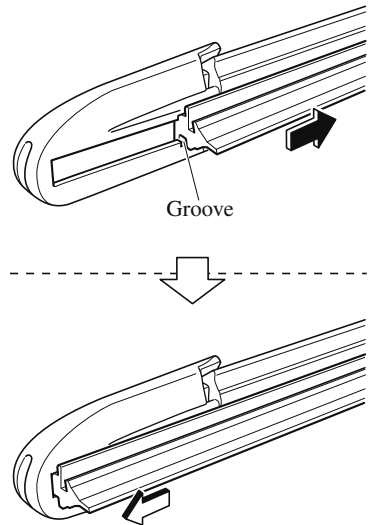


# Owner Maintenance

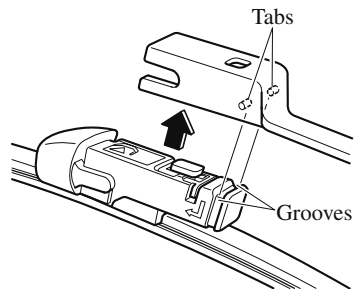
5. Insert the end of the new blade rubber into the groove of the blade holder until it contacts the end of the blade holder.



6. After pulling the blade rubber in the direction of the arrow and sliding the blade rubber to a position to check the blade holder groove, slide the blade rubber end in the opposite direction.

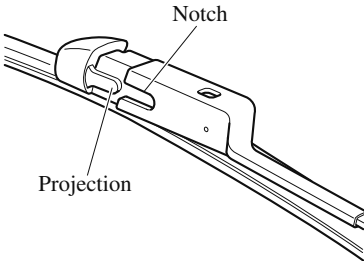


7. Make sure that the blade rubber is correctly installed to the blade holder.
8. Align the wiper arm tabs with the blade component grooves.

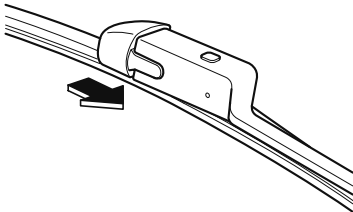


# Owner Maintenance

- Align the blade component projection with the wiper arm notch.



- Slide the blade component and install it to the wiper arm.



- Slowly lower the wiper arm onto the windscreen.

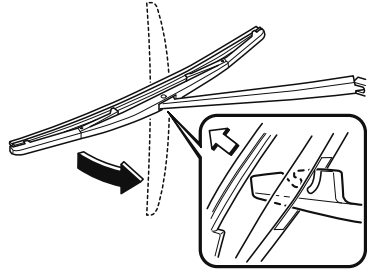
## ▼ Replacing Rear Window Wiper Blade

When the wiper no longer cleans well, the blade is probably worn or cracked. Replace it.

### ⚠ CAUTION

*To prevent damage to the wiper arm and other components, do not move the wiper by hand.*

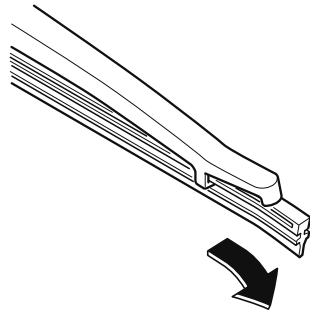
- Raise the wiper arm and rotate the wiper blade to the right until it unlocks, then remove the blade.



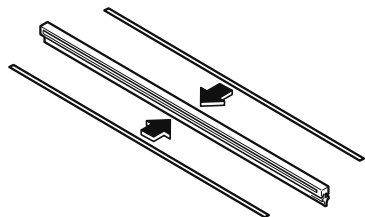
### ⚠ CAUTION

*To prevent damage to the rear window, do not let the wiper arm fall on it.*

- Pull down the blade rubber and slide it out of the blade holder.



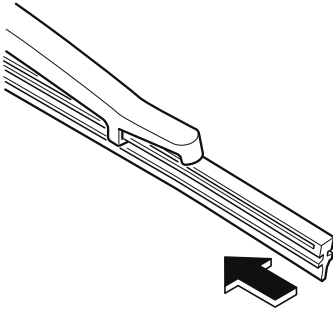
- Remove the metal stiffeners from the blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



**⚠ CAUTION**

*Do not bend or discard the stiffeners.  
You need to use them again.*

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber.  
Then install the blade assembly in the  
reverse order of removal.



# Owner Maintenance

---

## Battery

### **WARNING**



**Read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting to ensure safe and correct handling:**



**Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:**

Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.



**Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:**

Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.

Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, or on the skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.



**Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:**

Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.



**Keep flames and sparks away from open battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (-) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:**

Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.

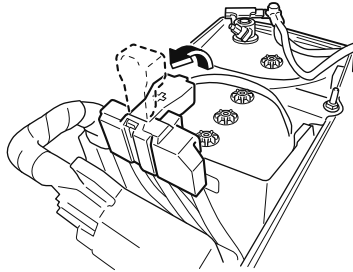
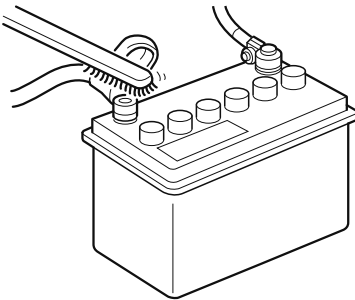




**Keep all flames and sparks away from open battery cells because hydrogen gas is produced from open battery cells while charging the battery or adding battery fluid:** Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.

**NOTE**

Before performing battery maintenance, remove the battery cover.

**▼ Battery Maintenance**

To get the best service from a battery:

- Keep it securely mounted.
- Keep the top clean and dry.
- Keep terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.

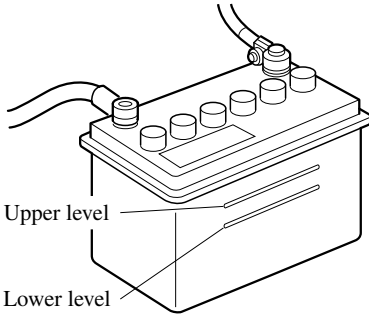
- Rinse off spilled electrolyte immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle will not be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery leads and charge the battery every 6 weeks.

## Owner Maintenance

---

### ▼ Inspecting Electrolyte Level

A low level of electrolyte fluid will cause the battery to discharge quickly.



Inspect the electrolyte level at least once a week. If it is low, remove the caps and add enough distilled water to bring the level between the upper and lower level (illustration).

### **Do not overfill.**

Examine the specific gravity of the electrolyte with a hydrometer, especially during cold weather. If it is low, recharge the battery.

### ▼ Battery Recharging

#### **NOTE**

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- To disconnect the battery, remove the negative lead first. Install it last when connecting the battery.
- Be sure to remove the caps before recharging the battery.
- Do not quick-charge the battery.
- If the battery quickly discharges because, for example, the lights were

left on too long with the engine off, slow-charge it as required by battery size and charger capacity.

- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electric load while the vehicle is being used, recharge it as required by battery size and charger capacity.

### ▼ Battery Replacement

Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for a battery replacement purchase.

## Key Battery Replacement

If the buttons on the transmitter are inoperable and the operation indicator light does not flash, the battery may be dead.

Replace with a new battery before the transmitter becomes unusable.

### **! CAUTION**

- *Make sure the battery is installed correctly. Battery leakage could occur if it is not installed correctly.*
- *When replacing the battery, be careful not to touch any of the internal circuitry and electrical terminals, bend the electrical terminals, or get dirt in the transmitter as the transmitter could be damaged.*
- *There is the danger of explosion if the battery is not correctly replaced.*
- *Dispose of used batteries according to the following instructions.*
  - *Insulate the plus and minus terminals of the battery using cellophane or equivalent tape.*
  - *Never disassemble.*
  - *Never throw the battery into fire or water.*
  - *Never deform or crush.*
- *Replace only with the same type battery (CR2025 or equivalent).*

The following conditions indicate that the battery power is low:

- The messages are displayed in the instrument cluster for about 30 seconds after the engine is switched OFF.
- The system does not operate and the operation indicator light on the

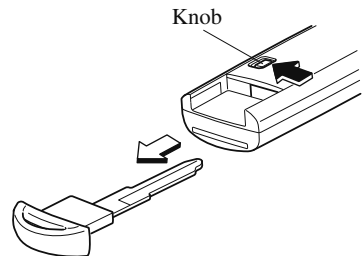
transmitter does not flash when the buttons are pressed.

- The system's operational range is reduced.

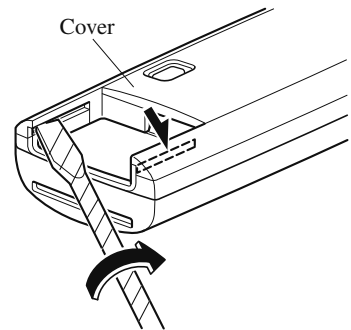
Replacing the battery at an Authorised Mazda Repairer is recommended to prevent damage to the key. If replacing the battery by yourself, follow the instruction.

### **Replacing the key battery**

1. Press the knob and pull out the auxiliary key.

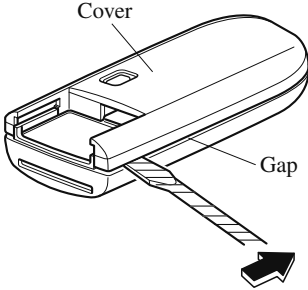


2. Twist a tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver in the direction of the arrow and open the cover slightly.

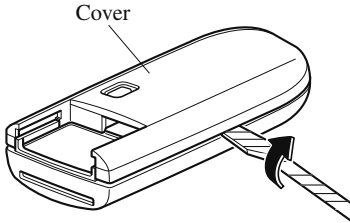


# Owner Maintenance

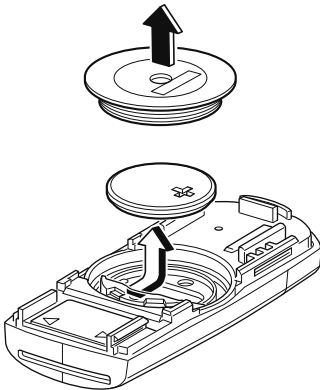
3. Insert the tape-wrapped flathead screwdriver into the gap and slide it in the direction of the arrow.



4. Twist the flathead screwdriver in the direction of the arrow and remove the cover.

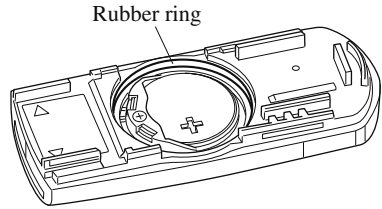


5. Remove the battery cap, then remove the battery.

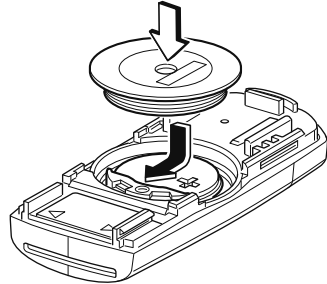


## **CAUTION**

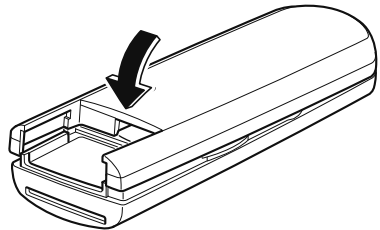
- Be careful not to allow the rubber ring shown in the figure to be scratched or damaged.
- If the rubber ring detaches, reattach it before inserting a new battery.



6. Insert a new battery with the positive pole facing up, and then cover the battery with the battery cap.



7. Close the cover.



8. Reinsert the auxiliary key.

## Tyres

For reasons of proper performance, safety, and better fuel economy, always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the recommended load limits and weight distribution.

### WARNING

#### **Using Different Tyre Types:**

*Driving your vehicle with different types of tyres is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking; leading to loss of control.*

*Except for the limited use of the temporary spare tyre, use only the same type tyres (radial, bias-belted, bias-type) on all four wheels.*

#### **Using Wrong-Sized Tyres:**

*Using any other tyre size than what is specified for the vehicle (page 9-7) is dangerous. It could seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, tyre clearance, and speedometer calibration. This could cause you to have an accident. Use only tyres that are the correct size specified for the vehicle.*

#### ▼ Tyre Inflation Pressure

### WARNING

#### **Always inflate the tyres to the correct pressure:**

*Overinflation or underinflation of tyres is dangerous. Adverse handling or unexpected tyre failure could result in a serious accident.*

*Refer to Tyres on page 9-7.*

#### **Use only a Mazda-genuine tyre valve cap:**

*Use of a non-genuine part is dangerous as the correct tyre air pressure cannot be maintained if the tyre valve becomes damaged. If the vehicle is driven under this condition, the tyre air pressure will decrease which could result in a serious accident. Do not use any part for the tyre valve cap that is not a Mazda-genuine part.*

Inspect all tyre pressures monthly (including the spare) when the tyres are cold. Maintain recommended pressures for the best ride, handling, and minimum tyre wear.

Refer to the specification charts (page 9-7).

#### **NOTE**

- *Always check tyre pressure when tyres are cold.*
- *Warm tyres normally exceed recommended pressures. Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure.*
- *Underinflation can cause reduced fuel economy, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and poor sealing of the tyre bead, which will deform the wheel and cause separation of tyre from rim.*
- *Overinflation can produce a harsh ride, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

*Keep your tyre pressure at the correct levels. If one frequently needs inflating, have it inspected.*

# Owner Maintenance

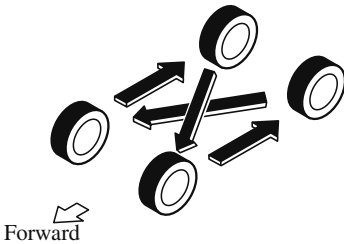
## ▼ Tyre Rotation

### ! WARNING

#### **Rotate tyres periodically:**

Irregular tyre wear is dangerous. To equalize tread wear for maintaining good performance in handling and braking, rotate the tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles), or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, inspect them for correct balance.



Do not include (TEMPORARY USE ONLY) spare tyre in rotation.

Also, inspect them for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by one or a combination of the following:

- Incorrect tyre pressure
- Improper wheel alignment
- Out-of-balance wheel
- Severe braking

After rotation, inflate all tyre pressures to specification (page 9-7) and inspect the wheel nuts for tightness.

### ! CAUTION

Rotate unidirectional tyres and radial tyres that have an asymmetrical tread pattern or studs only from front to rear, not from side to side. Tyre performance will be reduced if rotated from side to side.

## ▼ Replacing a Tyre

### ! WARNING

**Always use tyres that are in good condition:**

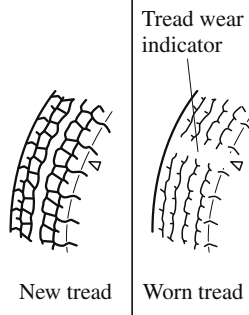
Driving with worn tyres is dangerous. Reduced braking, steering, and traction could result in an accident.

**Replace all four tyres at the same time:**

Replacing just one tyre is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking resulting in loss of vehicle control. Mazda strongly recommends that you replace all four tyres at the same time.

If a tyre wears evenly, a wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread.

Replace the tyre when this happens.



You should replace the tyre before the band crosses the entire tread.

## ▼ Temporary Spare Tyre

Inspect the temporary spare tyre at least monthly to make sure it is properly inflated and stored.

### NOTE

*The temporary spare tyre condition gradually deteriorates even if it has not been used.*

The temporary spare tyre is easier to handle because of its construction which is lighter and smaller than a conventional tyre. This tyre should be used only for an emergency and only for a short distance.

Use the temporary spare tyre only until the conventional tyre is repaired, which should be as soon as possible.

Refer to Tyre on page 9-7.

### CAUTION

- *Do not use your temporary spare tyre rim with a snow tyre or a conventional tyre. Neither will properly fit and could damage both tyre and rim.*
- *The temporary spare tyre has a tread life of less than 5,000 km (3,000 miles). The tread life may be shorter depending on driving conditions.*
- *The temporary spare tyre is for limited use, however, if the tread wear solid-band indicator appears, replace the tyre with the same type of temporary spare (page 6-32).*

## ▼ Replacing a Wheel

### WARNING

**Always use wheels of the correct size on your vehicle:**

*Using a wrong-sized wheel is dangerous. Braking and handling could be affected, leading to loss of control and an accident.*

### CAUTION

*A wrong-sized wheel may adversely affect:*

- *Tyre fit*
- *Wheel and bearing life*
- *Ground clearance*
- *Snow-chain clearance*
- *Speedometer calibration*
- *Headlight aim*
- *Bumper height*

### NOTE

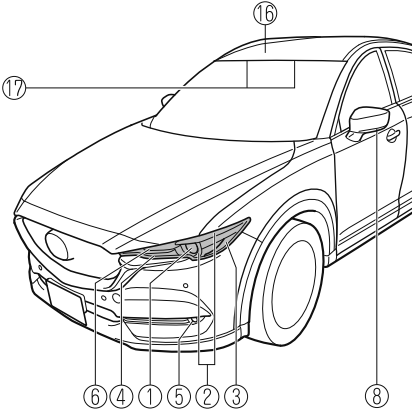
- *When replacing a wheel, make sure the new one is the same as the original factory wheel in diameter, rim width, and offset (inset/outset).*
- *For details, contact an expert repairer; we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

Proper tyre balancing provides the best riding comfort and helps reduce tread wear. Out-of-balance tyres can cause vibration and uneven wear, such as cupping and flat spots.

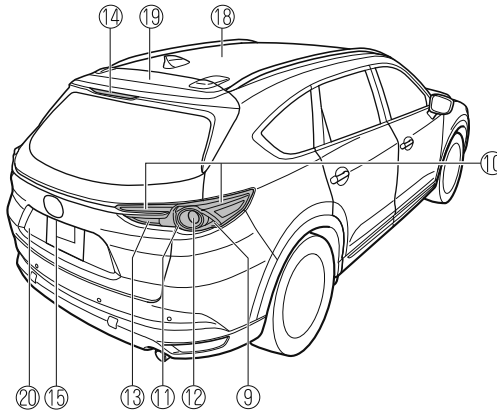
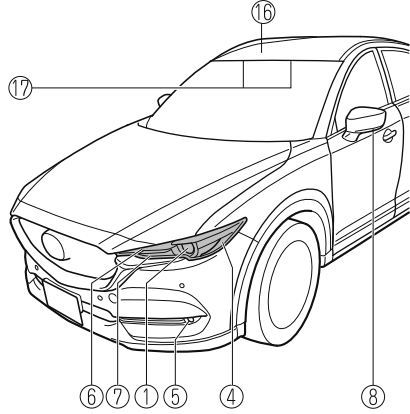
# Owner Maintenance

## Light Bulbs

Type A



Type B



- ① Headlights (High/Low beam)
- ② Running lights/Position lights
- ③ Headlights (Wide-range low beam)\*
- ④ Running lights
- ⑤ Fog lights\*
- ⑥ Front direction indicator lights
- ⑦ Position lights
- ⑧ Side direction indicator lights
- ⑨ Brake lights



- ⑩ Tail lights\*
- ⑪ Brake lights/Tail lights
- ⑫ Rear direction indicator lights
- ⑬ Reverse lights
- ⑭ High-mount brake light
- ⑮ Number plate lights
- ⑯ Overhead lights/Front map lights
- ⑰ Vanity mirror lights\*
- ⑱ Centre map lights
- ⑲ Rear map lights
- ⑳ Luggage compartment light

### **WARNING**

**Never touch the glass portion of a halogen bulb with your bare hands and always wear eye protection when handling or working around the bulbs:**

*When a halogen bulb breaks, it is dangerous. These bulbs contain pressurised gas. If one is broken, it will explode and serious injuries could be caused by the flying glass.*

*If the glass portion is touched with bare hands, body oil could cause the bulb to overheat and explode when lit.*

**Always keep halogen bulbs out of the reach of children:**

*Playing with a halogen bulb is dangerous. Serious injuries could be caused by dropping a halogen bulb or breaking it some other way.*

### **CAUTION**

*When removing the lens or lamp unit using a flathead screwdriver, make sure that the flathead screwdriver does not contact the interior terminal. If the flathead screwdriver contacts the terminal, a short circuit may occur.*

#### **NOTE**

- To replace the bulb, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*
- If the halogen bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.*
- Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.*

#### **▼ Replacing Exterior Light Bulbs**

The exterior lights have either LEDs or normal bulbs.

#### **LED type**

- Headlights
- Running lights/Position lights (Type A)

# Owner Maintenance

- Running lights (Type A)
- Front fog lights\*
- Side direction indicator lights
- Brake lights (Type A)
- Brake lights/Tail lights (Type A)
- Reverse lights
- High-mount brake light

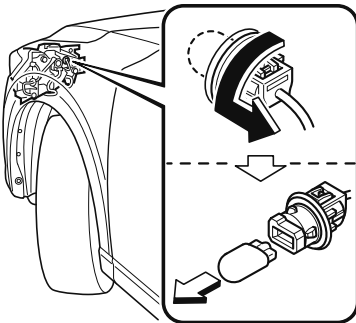
The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. We recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if the replacement is necessary.

## Bulb type

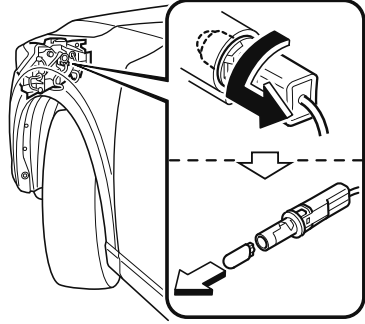
### Front direction indicator lights, Position lights (Type B)

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Lift the bonnet.  
Refer to Bonnet on page 6-11.
3. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

### Front direction indicator lights



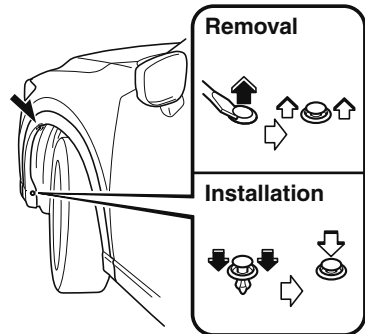
### Position lights



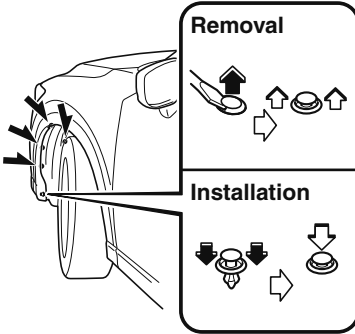
5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

### Running lights (Type B)\*

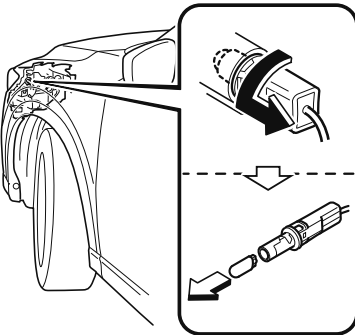
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. If you are changing the right bulb, start the engine, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, and turn off engine. If you are changing the left bulb, turn the steering wheel to the right.
3. Pull the centre of each plastic retainer using a flathead screwdriver and remove the retainers, and then partially peel back the over fender.



- Pull the centre of each plastic retainer using a flathead screwdriver and remove the retainers, and then partially peel back the mudguard.



- Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
- Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

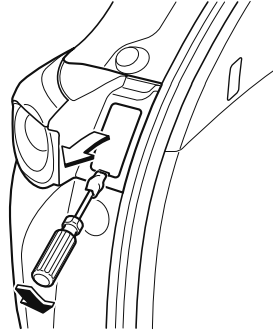


- Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

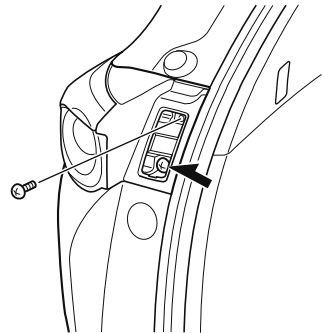
### Rear direction indicator lights

- Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the direction indicator switch is off.

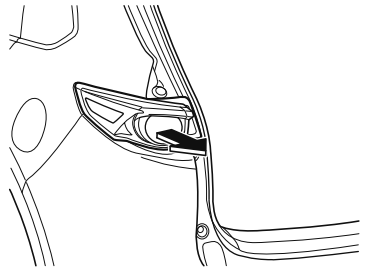
- Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the cover, and then remove the cover with the flathead screwdriver.



- Turn the screws anticlockwise and remove them.



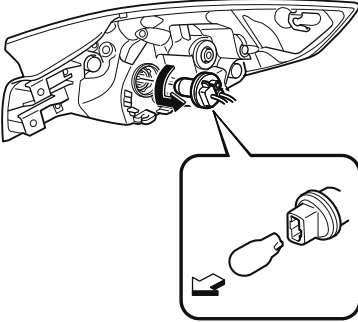
- Pull the unit rearward to remove it.



- Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.

# Owner Maintenance

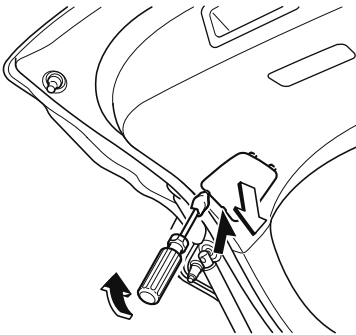
6. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.



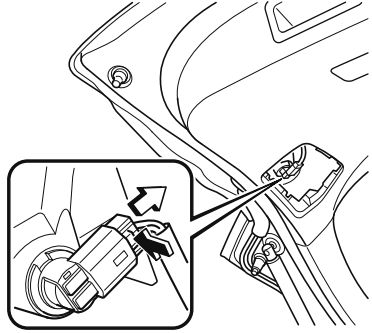
7. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

## Reverse lights

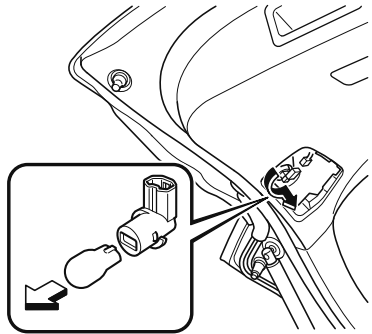
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the cover, and then remove the cover with the flathead screwdriver.



3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector.



4. Turn the socket and bulb assembly anticlockwise and remove it.
5. Disconnect the bulb from the socket.

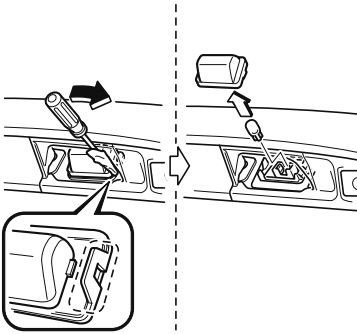


6. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

## Number plate lights

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and the headlight switch is off.
2. Wrap a flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with a flathead screwdriver.

3. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



4. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

### ▼ Replacing Interior Light Bulbs

The interior lights have either LEDs or normal bulbs.

#### LED type

- Front overhead lights/Front map lights
- Centre map lights
- Rear overhead light

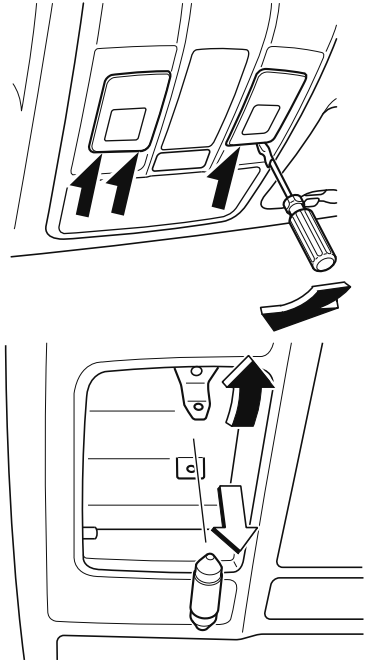
The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. We recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if the replacement is necessary.

#### Bulb type

#### **Front overhead lightst/Front map lights, Centre map lights, Rear overhead light, Vanity mirror lights**

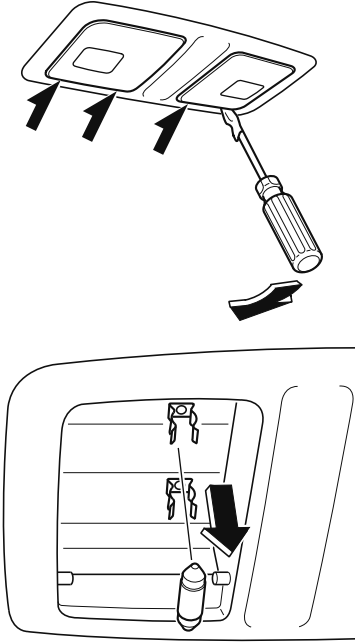
1. Wrap a flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with a flathead screwdriver.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.

#### **Front overhead lights/Front map lights**

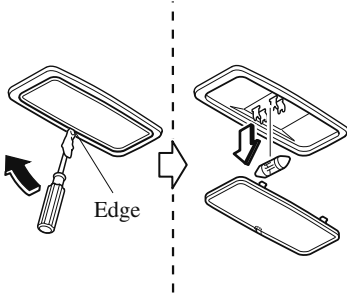


# Owner Maintenance

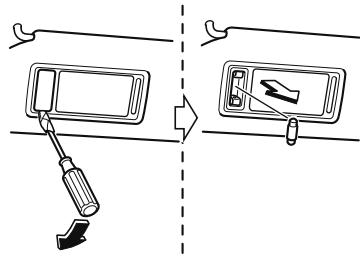
## Centre map lights



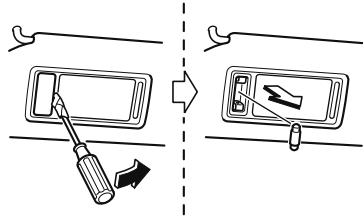
## Rear overhead light



## Vanity mirror lights Driver's seat



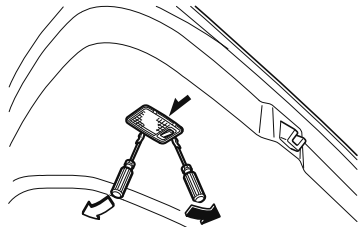
## Passenger's seat



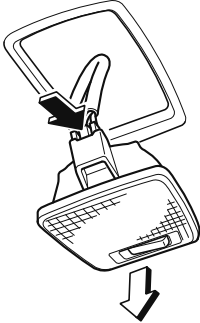
3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

## Luggage compartment light

1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens and remove the lens unit by carefully prying on the edge of the lens unit with the flathead screwdriver.



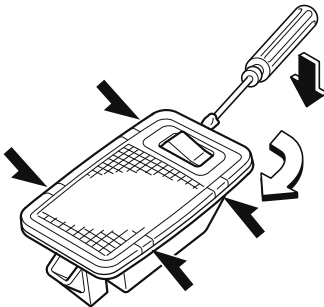
2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector.



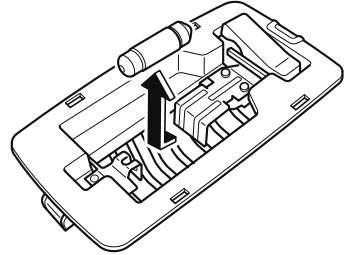
**⚠ CAUTION**

*When replacing the bulb always disconnect the connector first. Otherwise, electric and electronic devices could be shorted.*

3. Insert the flathead screwdriver into the gap between the lens and the lens unit, and then slide the screwdriver to detach the lens.



4. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

# Owner Maintenance

## Fuses

Your vehicle's electrical system is protected by fuses.

If any lights, accessories, or controls do not work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector. If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted.

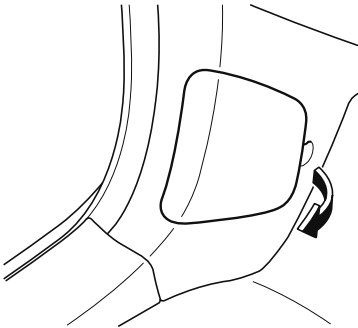
If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

### ▼ Fuse Replacement

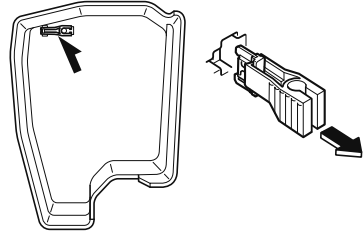
#### Replacing the fuses on the vehicle's left side

If the electrical system does not work, first inspect the fuses on the vehicle's left side.

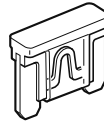
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.



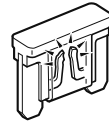
3. Pull the fuse straight out with the fuse puller provided on the fuse block located in the engine compartment.



4. Inspect the fuse and replace it if it is blown.



Normal



Blown

5. Insert a new fuse of the same amperage rating, and make sure it fits tightly. If it does not fit tightly, have an expert install it. We recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. If you have no spare fuses, borrow one of the same rating from a circuit not essential to vehicle operation, such as the AUDIO or OUTLET circuit.



**CAUTION**

Always replace a fuse with a genuine Mazda fuse or equivalent of the same rating. Otherwise you may damage the electric system.

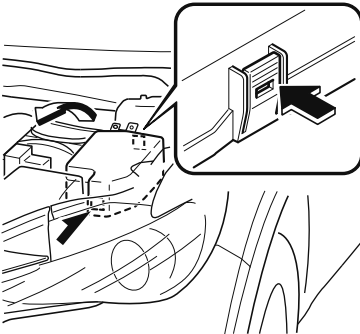
6. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

**Replacing the fuses under the bonnet**

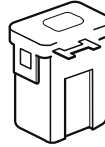
If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses in the cabin are normal, inspect the fuse block under the bonnet.

If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced. Follow these steps:

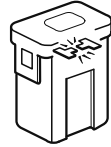
1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Remove the fuse block cover.



3. If any fuse but the MAIN fuse is blown, replace it with a new one **of the same amperage rating**.



Normal



Blown

**WARNING**

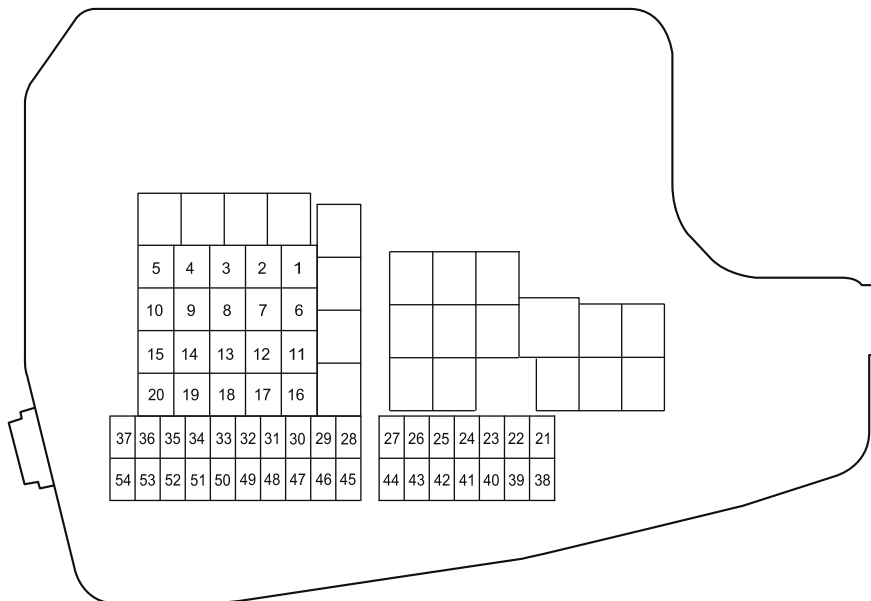
**Do not replace the main fuse by yourself. Have an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform the replacement:** Replacing the fuse by yourself is dangerous because the MAIN fuse is a high current fuse. Incorrect replacement could cause an electrical shock or a short circuit resulting in a fire.

4. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

# Owner Maintenance

## ▼ Fuse Panel Description

### Fuse block (Engine compartment)



DESCRIPTION	FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	50 A	CABIN.+B For protection of various circuits
2	30 A	IG2 For protection of various circuits
3	30 A	INJECTOR ENG.SUB Engine control system*
4	20 A	SCR1 EVVT Engine control system*
5	30 A	P.WINDOW1 Power windows*
6	20 A	R.HEATER Air conditioner
7	40 A	ADD FAN DE Cooling fan*
8	20 A	WIPER.DEI —
9	40 A	DEFOG Rear window defogger
10	40 A	DCDC DE For protection of various circuits*
11	20 A	EPB R Electric parking brake (EPB) (RH)
12	20 A	EPB L Electric parking brake (EPB) (LH)

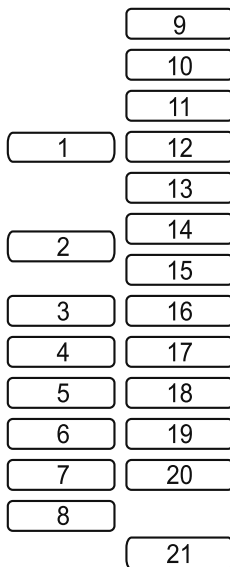
# Owner Maintenance

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
13	AUDIO DCDC REG	30 A	—
14	FAN GE	30 A	Cooling fan*
15	ENG.MAIN	40 A	Engine control system
16	ABS/DSC M	50 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
17	FAN DE	40 A	Cooling fan*
18	WIPER	20 A	Front window wiper and washer
19	HEATER	40 A	Air conditioner
20	ADD FAN GE	30 A	Cooling fan*
21	ENGINE.IG1	7.5 A	Engine control system
22	C/U IG1	15 A	For protection of various circuits
23	AUDIO2	7.5 A	Audio system
24	METER2	7.5 A	Instrument cluster
25	ENGINE3	15 A	Engine control system
26	ENGINE2	15 A	Engine control system
27	ENGINE1	15 A	Engine control system*
28	AT	15 A	Transaxle control system, Ignition switch
29	H/CLEAN	20 A	—
30	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioner
31	AT PUMP	15 A	Transaxle control system
32	HORN	15 A	Horn
33	R.WIPER	15 A	Rear window wiper
34	H/L HI	20 A	Headlight high beam
35	ST.HEATER	15 A	—
36	FOG	15 A	Fog lights*
37	ENG.+B	7.5 A	Engine control system
38	H/L LOW L	15 A	Headlight low beam (LH)
39	ENGINE4	15 A	Engine control system*
40	—	—	—
41	METER1	10 A	Instrument cluster
42	SRS1	7.5 A	Air bag
43	BOSE	25 A	Bose® Sound System-equipped model*
44	AUDIO1	15 A	Audio system
45	ABS/DSC S	30 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
46	FUEL PUMP	15 A	Fuel system*

# Owner Maintenance

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
47	FUEL WARM	25 A	Fuel warmer*
48	TAIL	15 A	Tail lights, Number plate lights
49	SCR2 FUEL PUMP2	25 A	—
50	HAZARD	25 A	Hazard warning flashers, Direction indicator lights, Tail lights
51	H/L LOW R	15 A	Headlight low beam (RH)
52	OUTLET	25 A	Accessory sockets*
53	STOP	10 A	Brake lights
54	ROOM	15 A	For protection of various circuit

## Fuse block (Left side)



DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	P.SEAT D	30 A	Power seat
2	P.WINDOW3	30 A	Power windows
3	R.OUTLET3	15 A	—
4	P.WINDOW2	25 A	Power windows
5	ESCL	15 A	Electronic steering lock

**Owner Maintenance**

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
6	D.LOCK	25 A	Power door locks
7	SEAT WARM	20 A	Seat warmer
8	SUNROOF	10 A	—
9	F.OUTLET	15 A	Accessory sockets
10	MIRROR	7.5 A	Power control mirror
11	R.OUTLET1	15 A	Accessory sockets
12	SCR3	15 A	—
13	SCR4	15 A	—
14	R.OUTLET2	15 A	—
15	USB	7.5 A	USB power outlet*
16	PLG	20 A	Power liftgate*
17	M.DEF	7.5 A	—
18	R.SEAT W	20 A	Rear seat warmer*
19	—	—	—
20	AT IND	7.5 A	AT shift indicator*
21	P.SEAT P	30 A	Power seat*

## Appearance Care

---

### Exterior Care

The paintwork on your Mazda represents the latest technical developments in composition and methods of application.

Environmental hazards, however, can harm the paint's protective properties, if proper care is not taken.

Here are some examples of possible damage, with tips on how to prevent them.

#### Etching Caused by Acid Rain or Industrial Fallout

##### Occurrence

Industrial pollutants and vehicle emissions drift into the air and mix with rain or dew to form acids. These acids can settle on a vehicle's finish. As the water evaporates, the acid becomes concentrated and can damage the finish.

And the longer the acid remains on the surface, the greater the chance is for damage.

##### Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you suspect that acid rain has settled on your vehicle's finish.

#### Damage Caused by Bird Dropping, Insects, or Tree Sap

##### Occurrence

Bird droppings contain acids. If these are not removed they can eat away the clear

and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork.

When insects stick to the paint surface and decompose, corrosive compounds form. These can erode the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork if they are not removed.

Tree sap will harden and adhere permanently to the paint finish. If you scratch the sap off while it is hard, some vehicle paint could come off with it.

##### Prevention

It is necessary to have your Mazda washed and waxed to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. This should be done as soon as possible.

Bird droppings can be removed with a soft sponge and water. If you are travelling and these are not available, a moistened tissue may also take care of the problem. The cleaned area should be waxed according to the instructions in this section.

Insects and tree sap are best removed with a soft sponge and water or a commercially available chemical cleaner.

Another method is to cover the affected area with dampened newspaper for 1 to 2 hours. After removing the newspaper, rinse off the loosened debris with water.

#### Water Marks

##### Occurrence

Rain, fog, dew, and even tap water can contain harmful minerals such as salt and lime. If moisture containing these minerals settles on the vehicle and evaporates, the

minerals will concentrate and harden to form white rings. The rings can damage your vehicle's finish.

## Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you find water marks on your vehicle's finish.

## Paint Chipping

### Occurrence

Paint chipping occurs when gravel thrown in the air by another vehicle's tyres hits your vehicle.

### How to avoid paint chipping

Keeping a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead reduces the chances of having your paint chipped by flying gravel.

### NOTE

- *The paint chipping zone varies with the speed of the vehicle. For example, when travelling at 90 km/h (56 mph), the paint chipping zone is 50 m (164 ft).*
- *In low temperatures a vehicle's finish hardens. This increases the chance of paint chipping.*

- *Chipped paint can lead to rust forming on your Mazda. Before this happens, repair the damage by using Mazda touch-up paint according to the instructions in this section. Failure to repair the affected area could lead to serious rusting and expensive repairs.*

Follow **all** label and container directions when using a chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warnings and cautions.

## ▼ Maintaining the Finish

### Washing



- *When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:*
    - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.*
    - *If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object from either outside or inside the vehicle.*
- Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely (when it is most likely that the engine is left running) this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow.*

## Appearance Care

---

- *Do not spray water in the engine compartment. Otherwise, it could result in engine-starting problems or damage to electrical parts.*
- *When washing and waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply excessive force to any single area of the vehicle roof. Otherwise, you could dent the vehicle.*

To help protect the finish from rust and deterioration, wash your Mazda thoroughly and frequently, at least once a month, with lukewarm or cold water.

If the vehicle is washed improperly, the paint surface could be scratched. Here are some examples of how scratching could occur.

Scratches occur on the paint surface when:

- The vehicle is washed without first rinsing off dirt and other foreign matter.
- The vehicle is washed with a rough, dry, or dirty cloth.
- The vehicle is washed at a car wash that uses brushes that are dirty or too stiff.
- Cleansers or wax containing abrasives are used.

### NOTE

- *Mazda is not responsible for scratches caused by automatic car washes or improper washing.*
- *Scratches are more noticeable on vehicles with darker paint finishes.*

To minimize scratches on the vehicle's paint finish:

- Rinse off any dirt or other foreign matter using lukewarm or cold water before washing.

- Use plenty of lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth when washing the vehicle. Do not use a nylon cloth.
- Rub gently when washing or drying the vehicle.
- Take your vehicle only to a car wash that keeps its brushes well maintained.
- Do not use abrasive cleansers or wax that contain abrasives.



- *Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may damage the protective coating; also, cleaners and detergents may discolour or deteriorate the paint.*

Pay special attention to removing salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign material from the underside of the wings, and make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial fallout, and similar deposits can damage the finish if not removed immediately. When prompt washing with plain water is ineffective, use a mild soap made for use on vehicles.

Thoroughly rinse off all soap with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, dry it with a clean chamois to prevent water spots from forming.



## **WARNING**

***Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:***

*Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.*

### **When using an automatic car wash**

- Retract the door mirrors.
- The automatic car wash brushes could reduce the paint lustre or hasten paint deterioration.

### **When using a high water pressure car wash**

High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of car wash machine. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle, the force of the spray could damage or deform the molding, affect the sealability of parts, and allow water to penetrate the interior. Keep a sufficient space (30 cm (12 in) or more) between the nozzle and the vehicle. In addition, do not spend too much time spraying the same area of the vehicle, and be very careful when spraying between gaps in doors and around windows.

### **Waxing**

Your vehicle needs to be waxed when water no longer beads on the finish.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing it. In addition to the vehicle body, wax the metal trim to maintain its lustre.

1. Use wax which contains no abrasives. Waxes containing abrasive will remove paint and could damage bright metal parts.
2. Use a good grade of natural wax for metallic, mica, and solid colours.
3. When waxing, coat evenly with the sponge supplied or a soft cloth.
4. Wipe off the wax with a soft cloth.

### **NOTE**

*A spot remover to remove oil, tar, and similar materials will usually also take off the wax. Rewax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not need it.*

### **▼ Paint Damage Touch-up**

Repair damage to the finish caused by stone chipping, damage during parking etc., by using Mazda touch-up paint before rust begins to form. First, remove the dirt and grease with a clean soft cloth.

If rust has already begun to form:

1. Remove rust completely with sandpaper.
2. Wipe with a clean soft cloth.
3. Apply rust preventive primer to the area.
4. After drying it completely, apply a suitable top coat material to the area.

Of course there will be no problem if you assign the work to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

## Appearance Care

---

### ▼ Cavity Protection

Cavities are treated for protection at the factory, but additional protective treatment after the vehicle has been put into use will extend the life of the body.

We recommend that you consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer concerning this additional precaution.

### ▼ Bright-Metal Maintenance

- Use tar remover to remove road tar and insects. Never do this with a knife or similar tool.
- To prevent corrosion on bright-metal surfaces, apply wax or chrome preservative and rub it to a high lustre.
- During cold weather or in coastal areas, cover bright-metal parts with a coating of wax or preservative heavier than usual. It would also help to coat them with noncorrosive petroleum jelly or some other protective compound.



*Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.*

### ▼ Undercoating

This special coating is applied to the critical parts of the underside to protect vehicles from damage caused by chemicals or stones. This coating is liable

to be damaged with time. Check this coating periodically.

Should repairs be necessary, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. They are well informed on how repairs should be made.

### ▼ Aluminium Wheel Maintenance

A protective coating is provided over the aluminium wheels. Special care is needed to protect this coating.



*Do not use any detergent other than mild detergent. Before using any detergent, verify the ingredients. Otherwise, the product could discolour or stain the aluminium wheels.*

### NOTE

- *Do not use a wire brush or any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, or solvent on aluminium wheels. They may damage the coating.*
- *Always use a sponge or soft cloth to clean the wheels.*  
*Rinse the wheels thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on dusty or salted roads to help prevent corrosion.*
- *Avoid washing your vehicle in an automatic car wash that uses high-speed or hard brushes.*

### ▼ Plastic Part Maintenance

- When cleaning the plastic lenses of the lights, do not use petrol, paraffin, rectified spirit, paint, thinner, highly

acidic detergents, or strongly alkaline detergents. Otherwise, these chemical agents can discolour or damage the surfaces resulting in a significant loss in functionality. If plastic parts become inadvertently exposed to any of these chemical agents, flush with water immediately.

- If plastic parts such as the bumpers become inadvertently exposed to chemical agents or fluids such as petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid, it could cause discolouration, staining, or paint peeling. Wipe off any such chemical agents or fluids using a soft cloth immediately.
- High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of high pressure car washer device. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle or aimed at one area for an extended period of time, it could deform plastic parts or damage the paint.
- Do not use wax containing compounds (polish). Otherwise, it could result in paint damage.
- In addition, do not use an electrical or air tool to apply wax. Otherwise, the frictional heat generated could result in deformation of plastic parts or paint damage.

## Interior Care

### WARNING

**Do not spray water into the vehicle cabin:**  
*Spraying water into the vehicle cabin is dangerous as electrical devices such as the audio and switches could get wet resulting in a malfunction or vehicle fire.*

### NOTE

- *Do not wipe the interior using alcohol, chlorine bleach, or organic solvents such as thinner, benzene, and petrol. Otherwise, it may cause discolouration or stains.*
- *Rubbing hard with a stiff brush or cloth may cause damage.*

If the vehicle interior becomes soiled by any of the following, wipe it off immediately using a soft cloth. Leaving it uncleaned could cause discolouration, stains, cracks, or peeling of the coating, and it will make it hard to wipe off later.

- Beverage or fragrance
- Grease or oil
- Soiling

### ▼ Seat Belt Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
3. Before retracting seat belts which have been pulled out for cleaning, dry them

## Appearance Care

---

off thoroughly and make sure there is no remaining moisture on them.



***If a seat belt appears frayed or has abrasions, have it replaced by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer:***

*If a seat belts is used under such a condition, it cannot function at its full capacity which could result in serious injury or death.*

***Use a mild detergent to remove soiling from a seat belt:***

*If organic solvents are used for cleaning the seat belts or they become stained or bleached, there is the possibility of them becoming weakened and as a result, they may not function at their full capacity which could cause serious injury or death.*

### **NOTE**

*Clean seat belts diligently if they get dirty. Leaving them uncleaned will make it difficult to clean them later, and it may affect the smooth retracting of the seat belt.*

### ▼ Vinyl Upholstery Maintenance

Remove dust and dirt from the vinyl upholstery using a brush or vacuum. Remove soiling from vinyl upholstery using a leather and vinyl upholstery cleaner.

### ▼ Upholstery Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a

mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.

2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

### ▼ Leather Upholstery Maintenance\*

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe off the soiled area with a soft cloth and a suitable, special cleaner or a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (about 5%) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
4. Remove moisture with a dry, soft cloth and allow the leather to further dry in a well-ventilated, shaded area. If the leather gets wet such as from rain, remove the moisture and dry it as soon as possible.

### **NOTE**

- *Because genuine leather is a natural material, its surface is not uniform and it may have natural scars, scratches, and wrinkles.*
- *To maintain the quality for as long as possible, periodical maintenance, about twice a year, is recommended.*
- *If the leather upholstery comes into contact with any of the following, clean it immediately.*  
*Leaving it uncleaned could cause premature wear, mold, or stains.*
  - *Sand or dirt*
  - *Grease or oil, such as hand cream*
  - *Alcohol, such as in cosmetic or hair dressing items*

- *If the leather upholstery gets wet, promptly remove moisture with a dry cloth. Remaining moisture on the surface may cause deterioration such as hardening and shrinkage.*
- *Exposure to direct sunlight for long periods may cause deterioration and shrinkage. When parking the car under direct sunlight for long periods, shade the interior using sunshades.*
- *Do not leave vinyl products on the leather upholstery for long periods. They may affect the leather quality and colouring. If the cabin temperature becomes hot, the vinyl may deteriorate and adhere to the genuine leather.*

### ▼ Plastic Part Maintenance



*Do not use polishing agents. Depending on the product ingredients, they could cause discolouration, stains, cracks or peeling of the coating.*

### ▼ Instrument Panel Top (Soft pad) Maintenance

Extremely soft material is used for the soft pad surface. If the soft pad surface is rubbed harshly with a dry cloth, it could result in the surface being damaged and leaving white scratch marks.

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

### ▼ Active Driving Display Maintenance\*

The dust-proof sheet has a coating. When cleaning, do not use a hard or rough-surface cloth, or cleaning detergent. In addition, if a chemical solvent gets on the active driving display, wipe it off immediately. The dust-proof sheet could be damaged and the surface coating could be scratched. Use a fine, soft cloth such as those used for cleaning eyeglasses.

#### **NOTE**

*Use of compressed air when cleaning the dust-proof sheet is recommended.*

### ▼ Panel Maintenance

If a panel becomes soiled, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in clean water and thoroughly wrung out.

If some areas require further cleaning, use the following procedure:

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5 %) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

#### **NOTE**

*Be particularly careful when cleaning shiny surface panels and metallic parts such as plating as they can be scratched easily.*

### ▼ Cleaning the Window Interiors

If the windows become covered with an oily, greasy, or waxy film, clean them with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the container.

## Appearance Care

---

 **CAUTION**

- *Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the window glass. It could damage the thermal filaments and the aerial lines.*
- *When washing the inside of the window glass, use a soft cloth dampened in lukewarm water, gently wiping the thermal filaments and the aerial lines. Use of glass cleaning products could damage the thermal filaments and the aerial lines.*

Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

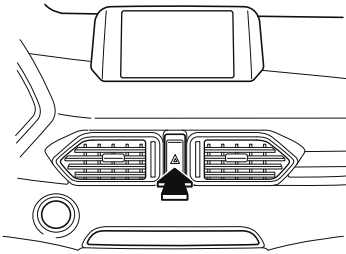
<b>Parking in an Emergency</b> .....	7-2	<b>Warning/Indicator Lights and</b>	
Parking in an Emergency.....	7-2	<b>Warning Sounds</b> .....	7-23
<b>Flat Tyre</b> .....	7-3	If a Warning Light Turns On or	
Spare Tyre and Tool Storage.....	7-3	Flashes.....	7-23
Changing a Flat Tyre.....	7-7	Message Indicated on Multi-	
<b>Battery Runs Out</b> .....	7-12	information Display.....	7-34
Jump-Starting.....	7-12	Message Indicated on	
<b>Emergency Starting</b> .....	7-15	Display.....	7-36
Starting a Flooded Engine		Warning Sound is Activated.....	7-38
(SKYACTIV-G 2.5).....	7-15	<b>When Liftgate Cannot be</b>	
Push-Starting.....	7-15	<b>Opened</b> .....	7-42
Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D		When Liftgate Cannot be	
2.2).....	7-16	Opened.....	7-42
<b>Overheating</b> .....	7-17	<b>Active Driving Display Does Not</b>	
Overheating.....	7-17	<b>Operate</b> .....	7-43
<b>Emergency Towing</b> .....	7-19	If the Active Driving Display Does	
Towing Description.....	7-19	Not Operate.....	7-43
Towing Hooks.....	7-21		

## Parking in an Emergency

---

### Parking in an Emergency

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

#### **NOTE**

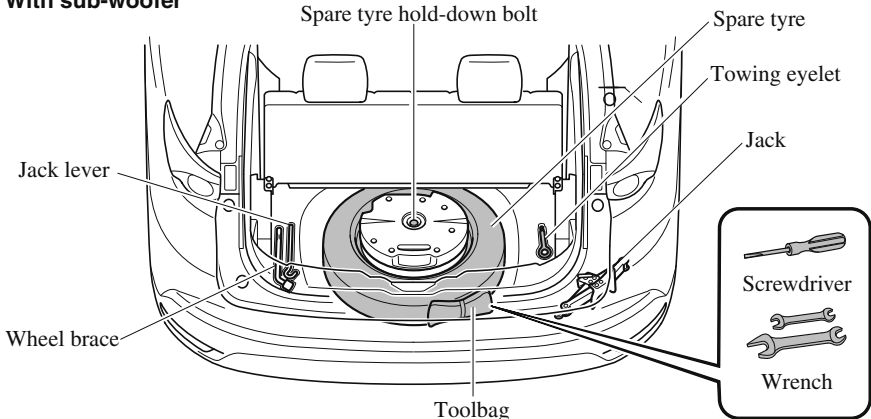
- *The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.*
- *Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.*



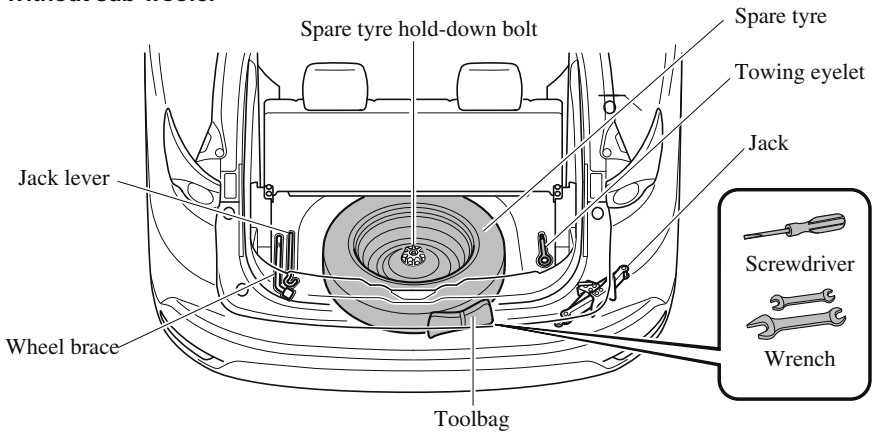
## Spare Tyre and Tool Storage

Spare tyre and tools are stored in the locations illustrated in the diagram.

### With sub-woofer



### Without sub-woofer

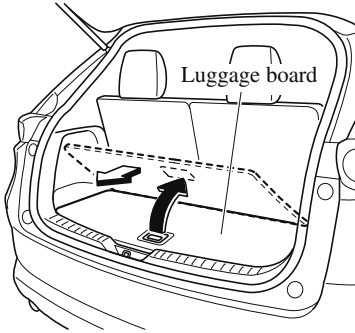


# Flat Tyre

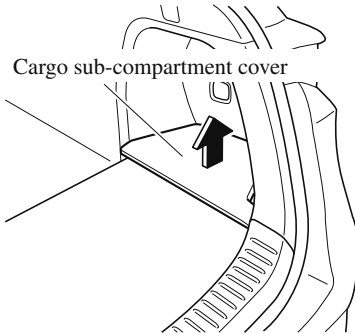
## ▼ Jack

### To remove the jack

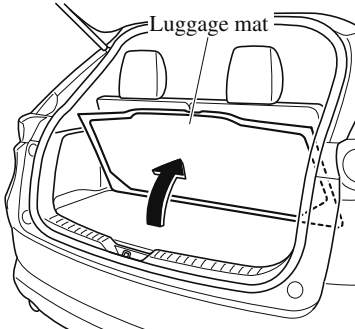
1. Open the luggage board, and remove it.



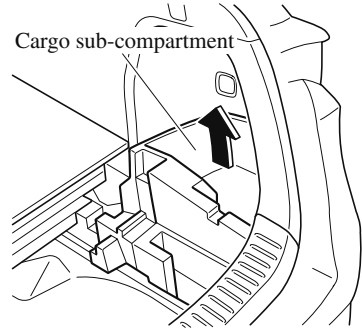
2. Remove the cargo sub-compartment cover on the right side.



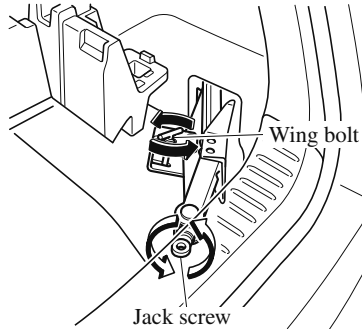
3. Lift the luggage mat.



4. Remove the cargo sub-compartment.



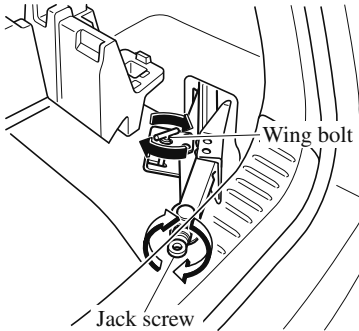
5. Turn the wing bolt and jack screw anticlockwise.



### To secure the jack

1. Insert the wing bolt into the jack with the jack screw pointing back and turn the wing bolt clockwise to temporarily tighten it.

2. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure.



3. Turn the wing bolt completely to secure the jack.

**NOTE**

*If the jack is not completely secured, it could rattle while driving. Make sure the jack screw is sufficiently tightened.*

4. Insert the cover tabs and install the cover.

**NOTE**

*Verify that the cover is securely installed.*

**Maintenance**

- Always keep the jack clean.
- Make sure the moving parts are kept free from dirt or rust.
- Make sure the screw thread is adequately lubricated.

**▼ Spare Tyre**

Your Mazda has a temporary spare tyre. The temporary spare tyre is lighter and smaller than a conventional tyre, and is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for VERY short periods. Temporary spare tyres should NEVER be used for long drives or extended periods.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not install the temporary spare tyre on the front wheels (driving wheels):**

*Driving with the temporary spare tyre on one of the front driving wheels is dangerous. Handling will be affected. You could lose control of the vehicle, especially on ice or snow bound roads, and have an accident. Move a regular tyre to the front wheel and install the temporary spare tyre to the rear.*

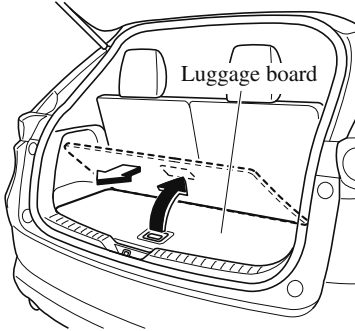
**⚠ CAUTION**

- When using the temporary spare tyre, driving stability may decrease compared to when using only the conventional tyre. Drive carefully.
- To avoid damage to the temporary spare tyre or to the vehicle, observe the following precautions:
  - Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
  - Avoid driving over obstacles. Also, do not drive through an automatic car wash. This tyre's diameter is smaller than a conventional tyre, so the ground clearance is reduced.
  - Do not use a tyre chain on this tyre because it will not fit properly.
  - Do not use your temporary spare tyre on any other vehicle, it has been designed only for your Mazda.
  - Use only one temporary spare tyre on your vehicle at the same time.

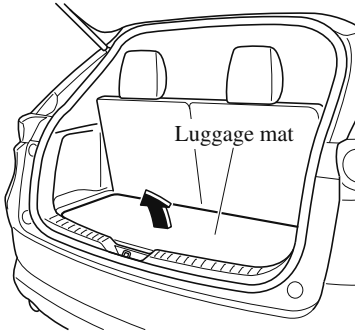
# Flat Tyre

## To remove the spare tyre

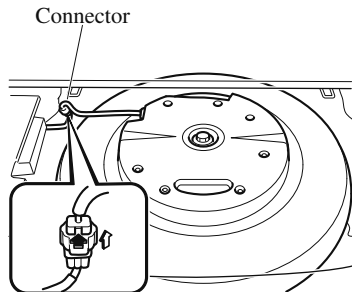
1. Open the luggage board, and remove it.



2. Remove the luggage mat.



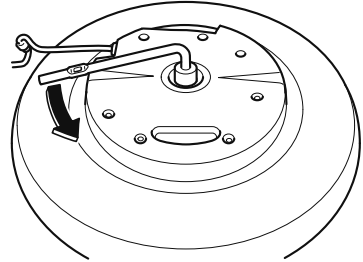
3. For vehicles equipped with a sub-woofer, uncouple the connector.



## **NOTE**

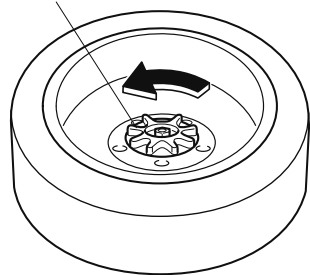
*Extra strength may be required to uncouple the connector. Be sure to squeeze the tab firmly.*

4. For vehicles equipped with a sub-woofer, loosen the hold-down bolt and remove the woofer and spare tyre.



For vehicles not equipped with a sub-woofer, turn the spare tyre hold-down bolt anticlockwise and remove the spare tyre.

Spare tyre hold-down bolt



## To secure the spare tyre

Store the spare tyre in the reverse order of removal. After storing, verify that the spare tyre is stored securely.

## Changing a Flat Tyre

### NOTE

*If the following occurs while driving, it could indicate a flat tyre.*

- *Steering becomes difficult.*
- *The vehicle begins to vibrate excessively.*
- *The vehicle pulls in one direction.*

If you have a flat tyre, drive slowly to a level spot that is well off the road and out of the way of traffic to change the tyre. Stopping in traffic or on the shoulder of a busy road is dangerous.

### **WARNING**

#### **Be sure to follow the directions for changing a tyre:**

*Changing a tyre is dangerous if not done properly. The vehicle can slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.*

*No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.*

#### **Never allow anyone inside a vehicle supported by a jack:**

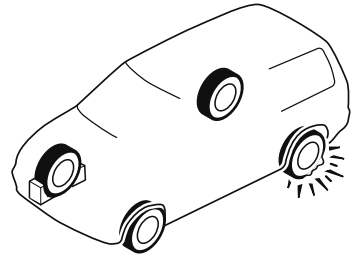
*Allowing someone to remain in a vehicle supported by a jack is dangerous. The occupant could cause the vehicle to fall resulting in serious injury.*

### NOTE

*Make sure the jack is well lubricated before using it.*

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.

2. Shift into Park (P) and turn off the engine.
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
4. Have everyone get out of the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic.
5. Remove the jack, tool, and spare tyre (page 7-3).
6. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre. When blocking a wheel, place a tyre block both in front and behind the tyre.



### NOTE

*When blocking a tyre, use rocks or wood blocks of sufficient size if possible to hold the tyre in place.*

#### **▼ Removing a Flat Tyre**

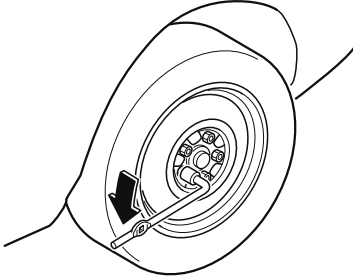
### **WARNING**

***When jacking-up a vehicle, always shift the selector lever to P position, apply the parking brake, and place wheel blocks in the position diagonally opposed to the jack:***

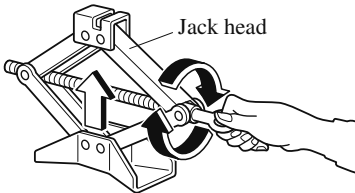
*Changing a flat tyre without using wheel blocks is dangerous because the vehicle may move and fall off the jack even with the selector lever is in P position, which could result in an accident.*

# Flat Tyre

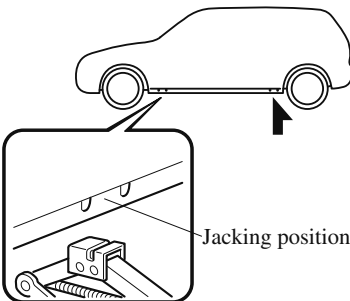
1. Loosen the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise one turn each, but do not remove any wheel nuts until the tyre has been raised off the ground.



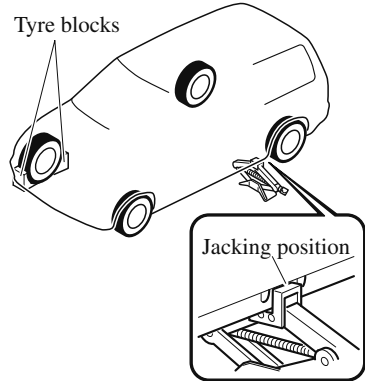
2. Place the jack on the ground.
3. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure and adjust the jack head so that it is close to the jack-up position.



4. Place the jack under the jack-up position closest to the tyre being changed with the jack head squarely under the jack-up point.



5. Continue raising the jack head gradually by rotating the screw with your hand until the jack head is inserted into the jack-up position.



## **WARNING**

**Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual:** Attempting to jack the vehicle in positions other than those recommended in this manual is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure or even kill someone. Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual.

**Do not jack up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or place any objects on or under the jack:** Jacking up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or placing objects on or under the jack is dangerous as it could deform the vehicle body or the vehicle could fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

**Use only the jack provided with your Mazda:**

Using a jack that is not designed for your Mazda is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

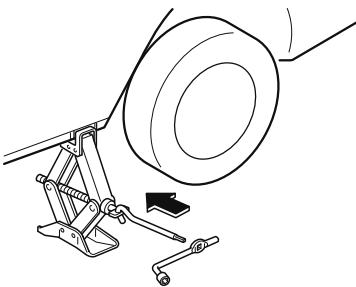
**Never place objects under the jack:**

Jacking the vehicle with an object under the jack is dangerous. The jack could slip and someone could be seriously injured by the jack or the falling vehicle.

**NOTE**

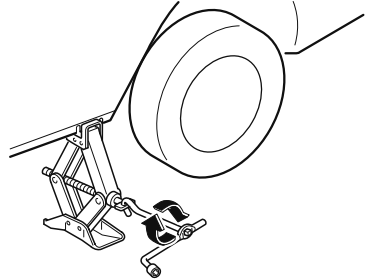
When raising the jack head into the jacking position and aligning the groove in the jack head with the rail under the vehicle body, the top of the jack head contacts the vehicle's underbody without the rail contacting the bottom of the groove.

6. Insert the jack lever and attach the wheel brace to tyre jack.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise and raise the vehicle high enough so that the spare tyre can be installed. Before removing the wheel nuts, make sure

your Mazda is firmly in position and that it cannot slip or move.



**! WARNING**

**Do not jack up the vehicle higher than is necessary:**

Jacking up the vehicle higher than is necessary is dangerous as it could destabilize the vehicle resulting in an accident.

**Do not start the engine or shake the vehicle while it is jacked up:**

Starting the engine or shaking the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could cause the vehicle to fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

**Never go under the vehicle while it is jacked up:**

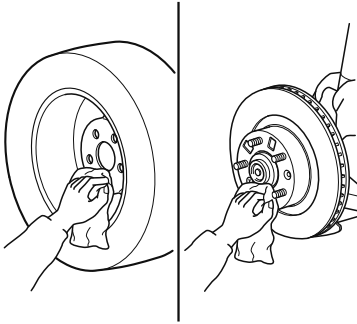
Going under the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could result in death or serious injury if the vehicle were to fall off the jack.

8. Remove the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise; then remove the wheel.

# Flat Tyre

## ▼ Mounting the Spare Tyre

1. Remove dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub, including the hub bolts, with a cloth.



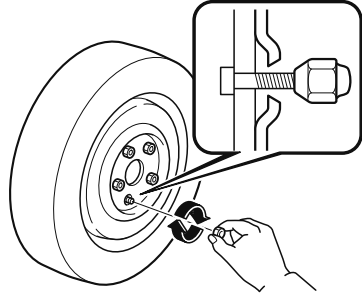
### ⚠ WARNING

**Make sure the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and wheel nuts are clean before changing or replacing tyres:**

*When changing or replacing a tyre, not removing dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and hub bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident.*

2. Mount the spare tyre.

3. Install the wheel nuts with the bevelled edge inward; tighten them by hand.

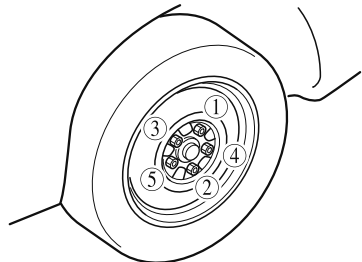


### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not apply oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts and do not tighten the wheel nuts beyond the recommended tightening torque:**

*Applying oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident. In addition, wheel nuts and bolts could be damaged if tightened more than necessary.*

4. Turn the wheel brace anticlockwise and lower the vehicle.
5. Use the wheel brace to tighten the nuts in the order shown.





If you are unsure of how tight the nuts should be, have them inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Nut tightening torque	
N·m (kgf·m, ft·lbf)	108—147 (12—14, 80—108)

 **WARNING**

**Always securely and correctly tighten the wheel nuts:**

*Improperly or loosely tightened wheel nuts are dangerous. The wheel could wobble or come off. This could result in loss of vehicle control and cause a serious accident.*

**Be sure to reinstall the same nuts you removed or replace them with metric nuts of the same configuration:**

*Because the wheel studs and wheel nuts on your Mazda have metric threads, using a non-metric nut is dangerous. On a metric stud, it would not secure the wheel and would damage the stud, which could cause the wheel to slip off and cause an accident.*

6. Remove the tyre blocks and store the tools and jack.
7. Store the damaged tyre in the luggage compartment.
8. Check the inflation pressure. Refer to Tyres on page 9-7.
9. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

 **WARNING**

**Do not drive with any tyres that have incorrect air pressure:**

*Driving on tyres with incorrect air pressure is dangerous. Tyres with incorrect pressure could affect handling and result in an accident. When you check the regular tyres' air pressure, check the spare tyre, too.*

**NOTE**

*To prevent the jack and tool from rattling, store them properly.*

## Battery Runs Out

---

### Jump-Starting

Jump-starting is dangerous if done incorrectly. So follow the procedure carefully. If you feel unsure about jump-starting, we strongly recommend that you have a competent service technician do the work.



#### **Follow These Precautions Carefully:**

*To ensure safe and correct handling of the battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.*



**Keep flames and sparks away from open battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (-) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:**

*Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.*



**Keep all flames and sparks away from open battery cells because hydrogen gas is produced from open battery cells while charging the battery or adding battery fluid:**

*Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.*

**Do not jump-start a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level:**

*Jump-starting a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level is dangerous. It may rupture or explode, causing serious injury.*

**Connect the negative lead to a good ground point away from the battery:**

*Connecting the end of the second jumper lead to the negative (-) terminal of the discharged battery is dangerous.*

*A spark could cause the gas around the battery to explode and injure someone.*

# Battery Runs Out

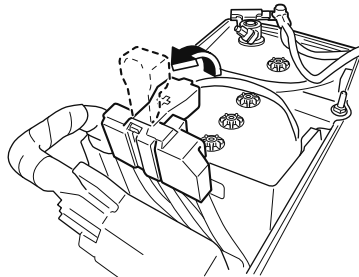
**Route the jumper leads away from parts that will be moving:**

Connecting a jumper lead near or to moving parts (cooling fans, belts) is dangerous. The lead could get caught when the engine starts and cause serious injury.

**CAUTION**

Use only a 12 V booster system. You can damage a 12 V starter, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair with a 24 V power supply (two 12 V batteries in series or a 24 V motor generator set).

1. Move the booster vehicle so that its battery is as close as possible to your vehicle's battery.
2. Make sure that the power such as for the headlights and air conditioner is turned off.
3. Remove the battery cover.



4. Turn off the booster vehicle's engine and connect the jumper leads in the following order.  
Make sure that the jumper leads are securely connected so that they do not disconnect due to engine vibrations.

**1st lead**

1. Positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery
2. Positive (+) terminal on booster vehicle's battery

**2nd lead**

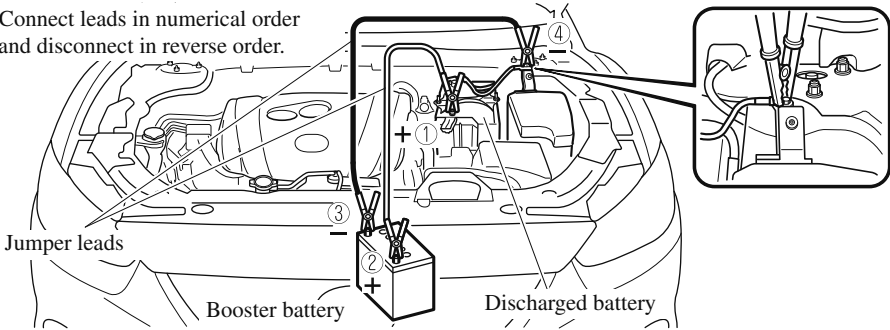
1. Negative (-) terminal on booster vehicle's battery

# Battery Runs Out

---

2. Location shown in the figure (do not connect to the negative (-) terminal of the battery)

Connect leads in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.



5. Start the booster vehicle's engine and rev the engine.
6. Start the engine of your vehicle. Run the engines for about 3 minutes to temporarily charge the battery of your vehicle.
7. Disconnect the jumper leads in the reverse order of their connection.
8. Install the battery cover.
9. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.

## Starting a Flooded Engine (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

If the engine fails to start, it may be flooded (excessive fuel in the engine).

Follow this procedure:

1. If the engine does not start within 5 seconds on the first try, wait 10 seconds and try again.
2. Make sure the parking brake is on.
3. Depress the accelerator all the way and hold it there.
4. Depress the brake pedal, then press the push button start. If the engine starts, release the accelerator immediately because the engine will suddenly rev up.
5. If the engine fails to start, crank it without depressing the accelerator.

If the engine still does not start using the previous procedure, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

## Push-Starting

Do not push-start your Mazda.



### **Never tow a vehicle to start it:**

*Towing a vehicle to start it is dangerous. The vehicle being towed could surge forward when its engine starts, causing the 2 vehicles to collide. The occupants could be injured.*

### **NOTE**

*You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transaxle by pushing it.*

## Emergency Starting

---

### Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

 **CAUTION**

*Do not try starting the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Doing so, could damage the starter. If the engine does not start on the first try wait about 20 seconds before trying again.*

If your vehicle runs out of fuel, add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of diesel fuel, and try to restart the engine. Because air can get into fuel lines when a vehicle runs out of fuel, your engine may take longer to start. If the engine does not start the first time, try starting it several more times. If it still does not start, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

## Overheating

If the temperature gauge indicates overheating or the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on, the vehicle loses power, or you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine is probably too hot.

### **WARNING**



***Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:***

*Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.*



***Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:***

*When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.*

***Open the bonnet ONLY after steam is no longer escaping from the engine:***

*Steam from an overheated engine is dangerous. The escaping steam could seriously burn you.*

If the temperature gauge indicates overheating or the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Turn off the air conditioner.
5. Check whether coolant or steam is escaping from the engine compartment.

### **If steam is coming from the engine compartment:**

Do not go near the front of the vehicle. Stop the engine.

Wait until the steam dissipates, then open the bonnet and start the engine.

### **If neither coolant nor steam is escaping:**

Open the bonnet and idle the engine until it cools.

### **CAUTION**

*If the cooling fan does not operate while the engine is running, the engine temperature will increase. Stop the engine and call an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

6. Make sure the cooling fan is operating, then turn off the engine after the temperature has decreased.

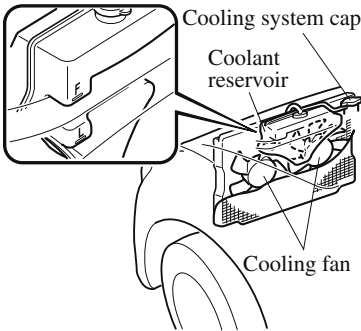
# Overheating

- When cool, check the coolant level.  
If it is low, look for coolant leaks from the radiator and hoses.

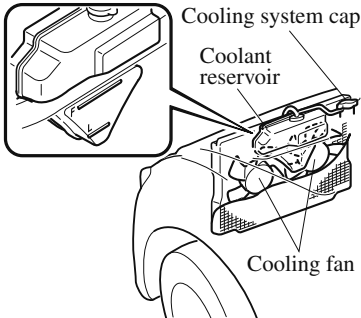
**If you find a leak or other damage, or if coolant is still leaking:**

Stop the engine and call an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

**SKYACTIV-G 2.5**



**SKYACTIV-D 2.2**



**If you find no problems, the engine is cool, and no leaks are obvious:**

Carefully add coolant as required (page 6-17).

**CAUTION**

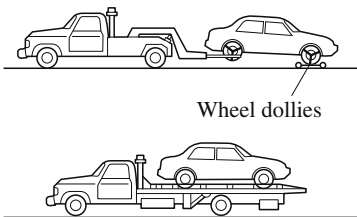
*If the engine continues to overheat or frequently overheats, have the cooling system inspected. The engine could be seriously damaged unless repairs are made. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*



## Towing Description

We recommend that towing be done only by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. Particularly when towing a 4WD vehicle, where all the wheels are connected to the drive train, proper transporting of the vehicle is absolutely essential to avoid damaging the drive system. Government and local laws must be followed.



A towed 2WD vehicle should have its drive wheels (front wheels) off the ground. If excessive damage or other conditions prevent this, use wheel dollies.

When towing a 2WD vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground, release the parking brake.

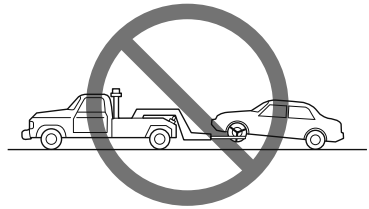
Refer to Electric Parking Brake (EPB) on page 4-56.

A towed 4WD vehicle must have all its wheels off the ground.

## ⚠ WARNING

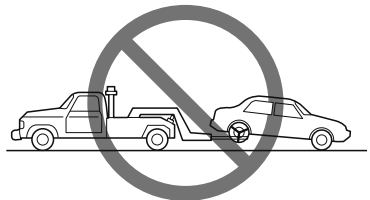
### **Always tow a 4WD vehicle with all four wheels off the ground:**

*Towing a 4WD vehicle with either the front or rear wheels on the ground is dangerous as the drive train could be damaged, or the vehicle could trail away from the tow truck and cause an accident. If the drive train has been damaged, transport the vehicle on a flatbed truck.*



## ⚠ CAUTION

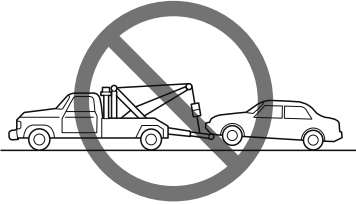
➤ *Do not tow the vehicle pointed backward with driving wheels on the ground. This may cause internal damage to the transaxle.*



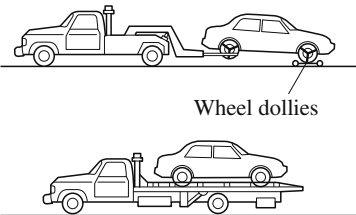
## Emergency Towing

---

- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. This could damage your vehicle. Use wheel-lift or flatbed equipment.



- If the parking brake cannot be released when towing the vehicle, transport the vehicle with all front and rear wheels raised off the ground as shown in the figure. If the vehicle is towed without raising the wheels off the ground, the brake system could be damaged.



If towing service is not available in an emergency, the vehicle may be towed with all four wheels on the ground using the towing hook at the front of the vehicle. Only tow the vehicle on paved surfaces for short distances at low speeds.

### CAUTION

Follow these instructions when towing the vehicle with all wheels on the ground.

1. Shift to the N position.
2. Switch the ignition to ON.
3. Release the parking brake.

Refer to *Electric Parking Brake (EPB)* on page 4-56.

Remember that power assist for the brakes and steering will not be available when the engine is not running.

**Towing Hooks****CAUTION**

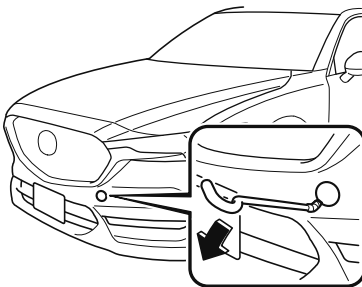
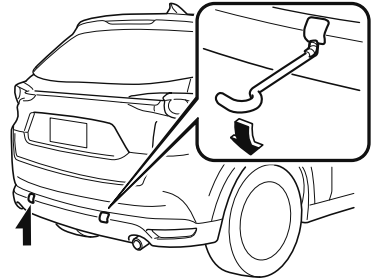
- The towing eyelet should be used in an emergency (to get the vehicle out of a ditch or a snow bank, for example).
- When using the towing eyelets, always pull the lead or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eyelet. Never apply a sideways force.

**NOTE**

When towing with chain or lead, wrap the chain or lead with a soft cloth near the bumper to prevent damage to the bumper.

**▼ Towing Hooks**

1. Remove the towing eyelet and the wheel brace from the luggage compartment (page 7-3).
2. Wrap a flathead screwdriver or similar tool with a soft cloth to prevent damage to a painted bumper, and open the cap located on the front or rear bumper.

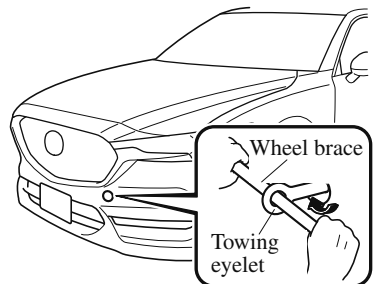
**Front****Rear****CAUTION**

Do not use excessive force as it may damage the cap or scratch the painted bumper surface.

**NOTE**

Remove the cap completely and store it so as not to lose it.

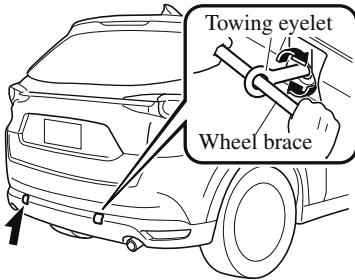
3. Securely install the towing eyelet using the wheel brace or equivalent. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

**Front**

# Emergency Towing

---

## Rear



4. Hook the towing rope to the towing eyelet.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- *If the towing eyelet is not securely tightened, it may loosen or disengage from the bumper when towing the vehicle. Make sure that the towing eyelet is securely tightened to the bumper.*
- *Be careful not to damage the towing eyelet and towing hook, vehicle body, or transaxle system when towing under the following conditions:*
  - *Do not tow a vehicle heavier than yours.*
  - *Do not suddenly accelerate your vehicle as it will apply a severe shock to the towing eyelet and towing hook or rope.*
  - *Do not attach any rope other than to the towing eyelet and towing hook.*


# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

## If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes

If any warning light turns on/flashes, take appropriate action for each light. There is no problem if the light turns off, however if the light does not turn off or turns on/flashes again, consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

The details for some warnings can be viewed on the centre display or multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

### Centre display




1. If the warning light is turned on, select the  icon on the home screen to display the Applications screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select “Warning Guidance” to display the current warnings.
4. Select the applicable warning to view the warning details.

### Multi-information display








1. Press the INFO switch on the steering switch to display the warning indication screen. Refer to Multi-information Display on page 4-20.

### ▼ Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately



If any of the following warning lights turns on, the system may have a malfunction. Stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Signal	Warning
 Brake System Warning Light	<p>If the brake system warning light remains illuminated the brake fluid may be low or there could be a problem with the brake system. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p><b><i>Do not drive with the brake system warning light illuminated. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:</i></b></p> <p><i>Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. It indicates that your brakes may not work at all or that they could completely fail at any time. If this light remains illuminated, after checking that the parking brake is fully released, have the brakes inspected immediately.</i></p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p><i>In addition, the effectiveness of the braking may diminish so you may need to depress the brake pedal more strongly than normal to stop the vehicle.</i></p>

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning</p>	<p>If the electronic brake force distribution control unit determines that some components are operating incorrectly, the control unit may illuminate the brake system warning light and the ABS warning light simultaneously. The problem is likely to be the electronic brake force distribution system.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  <b>WARNING</b> </div> <p><b>Do not drive with both the ABS warning light and brake warning light illuminated. Have the vehicle towed to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:</b>  <i>Driving when the brake system warning light and ABS warning light are illuminated simultaneously is dangerous.</i>  <i>When both lights are illuminated, the rear wheels could lock more quickly in an emergency stop than under normal circumstances.</i></p>
 <p>Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>If the warning light illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction of the alternator or of the charging system.          Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p><i>Do not continue driving when the charging system warning light is illuminated because the engine could stop unexpectedly.</i></p>
 <p>Engine Oil Warning Light</p>	<p>This warning light indicates low engine oil pressure.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p><i>Do not run the engine if the oil pressure is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage.</i></p> <p>If the light illuminates or the warning indication is displayed while driving:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way on level ground.</li> <li>2. Turn off the engine and wait 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump.</li> <li>3. Inspect the engine oil level. (page 6-16) If it's low, add the appropriate amount of engine oil while being careful not to overfill.</li> </ol> <div style="border: 2px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p><i>Do not run the engine if the oil level is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Start the engine and check the warning light.</li> </ol> <p>If the light remains illuminated even though the oil level is normal or after adding oil, stop the engine immediately and have your vehicle towed to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>



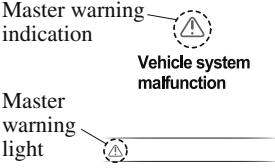

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>(Red) High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>The light flashes when the engine coolant temperature is extremely high, and illuminates when the engine coolant temperature increases further.</p> <p><b>Handling Procedure</b> <b>Flashing light</b> Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down. <b>Illuminated light</b> This indicates the possibility of overheating. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and stop the engine. Refer to Overheating on page 7-17.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p><i>Do not drive the vehicle with the high engine coolant temperature warning light illuminated. Otherwise, it could result in damage to the engine.</i></p>
 <p>Power Steering Malfunction Indication</p>	<p>The message is displayed if the electric power steering has a malfunction. If the message is displayed, stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not operate the steering wheel. There is no problem if the message in the display turns off after a while. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if the message is displayed continuously.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>If the message is displayed, the power steering will not operate normally. In this case, the steering wheel can still be operated, however, the operation may feel heavy compared to normal, or the steering wheel could vibrate when turning.</i></li> <li>• <i>Repeatedly jerking the steering wheel left and right while the vehicle is stopped or moving extremely slowly will cause the power steering system to go into protective mode which will make the steering feel heavy, but this does not indicate a problem. If this occurs, park the vehicle safely and wait several minutes for the system to return to normal.</i></li> </ul>

## ▼ Contact Authorised Mazda Repairer and Have Vehicle Inspected




If any of the following warning lights or the indicator light turns on/flashes, the system may have a malfunction. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have your vehicle inspected.

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds





Signal	Warning
 <p>ABS Warning Light</p>	<p>If the ABS warning light stays on while you're driving, the ABS control unit has detected a system malfunction. If this occurs, your brakes will function normally as if the vehicle had no ABS.</p> <p>Should this happen, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the engine is jump-started to charge the battery, uneven rpm occurs and the ABS warning light may illuminate. If this occurs, it is the result of the weak battery and does not indicate an ABS malfunction. Recharge the battery.</li> <li>• The brake assist system does not operate while the ABS warning light is illuminated.</li> </ul>
 <p>Master Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<div style="text-align: right;">  <p>Master warning indication</p> <p>Master warning light</p> <p>Vehicle system malfunction</p> </div> <p><b>(Master warning indication)</b> Displays when notification of the system malfunctions is required. Check the message indicated in the display and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <p><b>(Master warning light)</b> The master warning light displays when a warning message occurs. This indicates a malfunction with the vehicle system. Check the message indicated in the display and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. For details, refer to the explanations for the warning/indicator lights, in the warning/indicator lights section, which match the symbol in the upper part of the display. If a message is not indicated in the display, operate the INFO switch to display the “Warning” screen. Refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display and INFO switch on page 4-20.</p>
 <p>Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>The warning light illuminates when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>








# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Indicator/Indicator Light</p>	<p>This warning has the following functions:  <b><u>Parking brake warning/Indicator light inspection</u></b>  The light illuminates when the electric parking brake (EPB) is applied with the ignition switched to START or ON. It turns off when the electric parking brake (EPB) is released.</p> <p><b><u>When the light is turned on</u></b>  If the light remains turned on even if the electric parking brake (EPB) switch is released, an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <p><b><u>When the light is flashing</u></b>  The light flashes if the electric parking brake (EPB) has a malfunction. If the light remains flashing even if the electric parking brake (EPB) switch is operated, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.</p>
 <p>Check Engine Light</p>	<p>If this light illuminates while driving, the vehicle may have a problem. It is important to note the driving conditions when the light illuminated and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <p>The check engine light may illuminate in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine's electrical system has a problem.</li> <li>• The emission control system has a problem.</li> <li>• <b>(Except SKYACTIV-D 2.2)</b>  The fuel tank level being very low or approaching empty.</li> </ul> <p>If the check engine light remains on, or it flashes continuously, do not drive at high speeds and consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  <b>WARNING</b> </div> <p><b><i>If the check engine light turns on, do not disconnect the battery leads.</i></b>  <i>If the battery leads are disconnected and then reconnected, the engine could be damaged and catch on fire.</i></p>
<p><b>i-stop</b>  (Amber)  i-stop Warning Light</p>	<p><b><u>When the light is turned on</u></b>  A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON.</li> <li>• The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running.</li> </ul> <p><b><u>When the light is flashing</u></b>  The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>







# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
<p><b>AT</b> Automatic Trans- axle Warning Indi- cation</p>	<p>The warning indication is displayed when the transaxle has a problem.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p><i>If the automatic transaxle warning indication is displayed, the transaxle has an electrical problem. Continuing to drive your Mazda in this condition could cause damage to your transaxle. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.</i></p>
<p><b>4WD</b> 4WD Warning Indi- cation*</p>	<p><b><u>“4WD system malfunction” is displayed</u></b></p> <p>The indication is displayed under the following conditions. The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When there is a malfunction in the 4WD system.</li> <li>• When there is a large difference between the tyre size of the front and rear wheels.</li> </ul> <p><b><u>“4WD system high-load” is displayed</u></b></p> <p>The indication is displayed under the following conditions. Park the vehicle in a safe place and check that the warning indication light turns off, and then drive the vehicle. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer if the indication is continuously displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the differential oil temperature is excessively high.</li> <li>• When there is a large difference between the front and rear wheel rotation, such as when trying to remove the vehicle from mud.</li> </ul>
<p> (Turns on) TCS/DSC Indicator Light</p>	<p>If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>
<p> Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light</p>	<p>A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly flashes, constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition is switched ON. If any of these occur, consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. The system may not operate in an accident.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  <b>WARNING</b> </div> <p><b><i>Never tamper with the air bag/pretensioner systems and always have an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer perform all servicing and repairs: Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.</i></b></p>

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>(Amber) KEY Warning Indication</p>	<p><b>“Keyless System malfunction” is displayed</b> This message is displayed if the advanced keyless entry &amp; push button start system has a problem. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <p><i>If the message is indicated, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, the engine may not start. If the engine cannot be started, try starting it using the emergency operation for starting the engine, and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible. Refer to Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine on page 4-9.</i></p> <p><b>“Set Power to OFF” is displayed</b> This message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without switching the ignition off.</p> <p><b>“Key not found” is displayed</b> This message is displayed when any of the following operations is performed with the key out of the operational range or placed in areas inside the cabin where it is difficult for the key to be detected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The push button start is pressed with the ignition switched off</li> <li>• The ignition is switched on</li> <li>• All doors are closed without switching the ignition off</li> </ul>
 <p>Security Indicator Light</p>	<p>If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following: Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission. Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>
 <p>(Amber) Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Light*</p>	<p>The light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> <i>If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) field of view is impaired during bad weather conditions (such as rain, fog, and snow) and when the windscreen is dirty, the warning indication/warning light for the Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) may display/turn on. However, this does not indicate a problem.</i></p>
 <p>Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The Warning indication turns on if there is any malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM). Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> <i>If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause. However, it does not indicate a malfunction.</i></p>




# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light*</p>	<p>A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON.</li> <li>• The light remains on even when the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system can be operated.</li> <li>• The light turns on while driving the vehicle.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE</b>  <i>If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause (The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates). However, it does not indicate a malfunction.</i></p>
 <p>(Amber) Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>
 <p>(Amber) Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>
 <p>(Amber) Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) &amp; Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The system does not operate when the warning message is displayed.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">  <b>CAUTION</b> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacture, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. If such improper tyres are used, the system may not operate normally.</li> <li>➤ When an emergency spare tyre is used, the system may not operate normally.</li> </ul>
 <p>LED Headlight Warning Light</p>	<p>This light illuminates if there is a malfunction in the LED headlight. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>

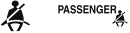

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

## ▼ Taking Action



Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 <p>Smart Brake Support/ Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The warning indication is displayed if the windscreen or the radar sensor are dirty, or there is a malfunction in the system.</p>	<p>Verify the reason why the warning indication is displayed on the centre display. If the reason why the warning indication is displayed is due to a dirty windscreen, clean the windscreen.</p> <p>If the warning indication is displayed because of a dirty radar sensor, clean the front emblem.</p> <p>For any other reasons, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.</p>
 <p>Low Fuel Warning Indication</p>	<p>The warning indication is displayed when the remaining fuel is about 9.0 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal).</p> <p><b>NOTE</b> <i>The warning indication is displayed timing may vary because fuel inside the fuel tank moves around according to the driving conditions and the vehicle posture.</i></p>	<p>Add fuel.</p>
 <p>Engine Oil Level Warning Light</p>	<p>This warning light indicates that the engine oil level is around the MIN mark (page 6-16).</p>	<p>Add 1 L (0.3 US gal, 0.2 Imp gal) of engine oil (page 6-14).</p>

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 <p>Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)</p>	<p>The seat belt warning light turns on if the driver or front passenger's seat is occupied and the seat belt is not fastened with the ignition switched ON.</p> <p>If the driver or front passenger's seat belt is unfastened (only when the front passenger's seat is occupied) and the vehicle is driven at a speed faster than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes. After a short time, the warning light stops flashing, but remains illuminated. If a seat belt remains unfastened, the warning light flashes again for a given period of time.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the driver or front passenger's seat belt is unfastened after the warning light turns on, and the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes again.</li> <li>• Placing heavy items on the front passenger's seat may cause the front passenger's seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.</li> <li>• To allow the front passenger seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger's seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.</li> <li>• If a small child is seated on the front passenger's seat, the warning light may not operate.</li> </ul>	<p>Fasten the seat belts.</p>
 <p>(Red) Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)</p>	<p>If the rear seat belts are not fastened while the ignition is switched ON, the driver and the passenger are alerted by the warning light.</p> <p>The warning light operates even if there is no passenger on the rear seat.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If a rear seat belt is not fastened by a certain period of time after the engine has been started, the warning light turns off.</p>	<p>Fasten the seat belts.</p>

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

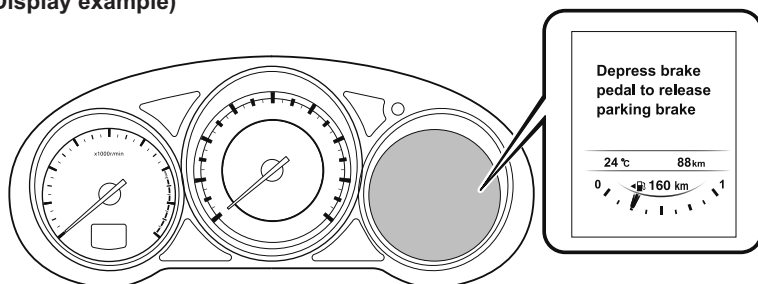
Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 <p>Door-Ajar/Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication</p>	<p>The light turns on if any door/liftgate is not closed securely.</p>	<p>Close the door/liftgate securely.</p>
 <p>(White) KEY Warning Indication</p>	<p>The key battery is dead.</p>	<p>Replace the key battery (page 6-29).</p>

## Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

### Message Indicated on Multi-information Display

If there is a notification from the vehicle, a message is displayed in the multi-information display. Check the information and take the necessary action.

(Display example)



If the warning light turns on/flashes simultaneously or a symbol is indicated in the display, check the information regarding the warning light or symbol.

Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-23.

Display	Content	Action to be taken
<b>Set Shift Lever to "P"</b>	Indicated when the push button start is pressed while the selector lever is not in the P position.	Shift the selector lever to the P position.
<b>Depress Brake Pedal to Start Engine</b>	Indicated when the push button start is pressed without depressing the brake pedal.	Depress the brake pedal and press the push button start.
<b>Steering locked</b>	Indicated while the steering wheel is locked.	Release the steering lock.
<b>Depress Brake Pedal to Release Parking Brake</b>	Indicates when the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is operated without depressing the brake pedal.	Operate the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch while depressing the brake pedal.
<b>Brake Hold Unavailable Depress Brake to Hold Position</b>	Indicates when there is a problem with the brake related system while the vehicle is being held in a stop position by the AUTOHOLD function.	Depress the brake pedal. Cancel the AUTOHOLD function and have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.



## Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

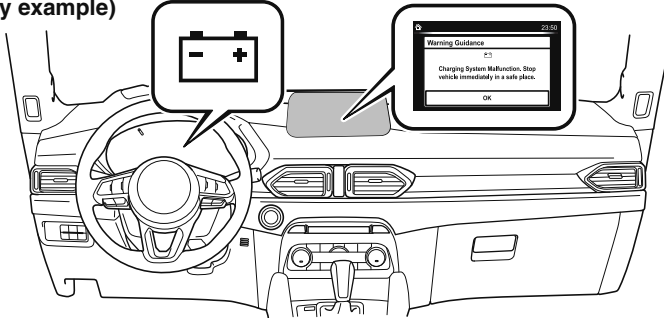
Display	Content	Action to be taken
<b>Incline Too Steep Vehicle May Not Be Able to Hold Stopped Position</b>	Indicates the possibility of the vehicle not being held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function, such as on steep slopes.	Depress and hold your foot on the brake pedal.
<b>Brake Pedal Must Be Depressed to Deactivate Auto Hold System</b>	Indicates when the cancel operation is done without depressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is being held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function.	Cancel the AUTOHOLD function stop hold control while depressing the brake pedal.
<b>Fast Idle Due to Diesel Injector Cleaning</b>	Indicated when the engine speed increases because the engine is being cleaned internally.	The engine speed will increase while the engine is running an internal cleaning cycle with the selector lever in the P or N position. Do not stop the engine while the engine speed is high. When the cleaning cycle is completed, the engine speed will return to normal.

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

## Message Indicated on Display

If a message is displayed in the centre display, take appropriate action (in a calm manner) according to the displayed message.

(Display example)



### ▼ Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

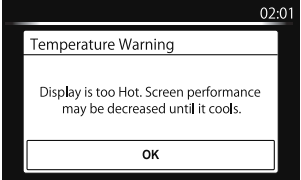
If the following messages are displayed in the centre display (Type B audio), a vehicle system may be malfunctioning. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Display	Indicated Condition
<p>The screenshot shows the time 23:50, a home icon, the title 'Warning Guidance', a thermometer icon, and the text: 'Engine Coolant Temperature High. Stop vehicle immediately in a safe place.' Below the text is an 'OK' button.</p>	<p>Displays if the engine coolant temperature has increased excessively.</p>
<p>The screenshot shows the time 23:50, a home icon, the title 'Warning Guidance', a battery icon, and the text: 'Charging System Malfunction. Stop vehicle immediately in a safe place.' Below the text is an 'OK' button.</p>	<p>Displays if the charging system has a malfunction.</p>

# Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

## ▼ Verify Display Content

Displays in the following cases:

Display	Indicated Condition/Action to be taken
	<p>The following message is displayed when the temperature around the centre display is high.</p> <p>Lowering the temperature in the cabin or the temperature around the centre display by avoiding direct sunlight is recommended.</p>

## Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

---

### Warning Sound is Activated

#### ▼ Lights-On Reminder

If lights are on and the ignition is switched to ACC or off, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

#### NOTE

- When the ignition is switched to ACC, the “Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep” (page 7-39) overrides the lights-on reminder.
- A personalised function is available to change the sound volume for the lights-on reminder. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.

#### ▼ Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If there is a problem with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner systems and the warning light illumination, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The air bag and seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.



**Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:**

*Driving the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury. Contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.*

#### ▼ Seat Belt Warning Beep

##### Front seat

If the vehicle speed exceeds about 20 km/h (12 mph) with the driver or front passenger's seat belt unfastened, a warning beep sounds continuously. If the seat belt remains unfastened, the beep sound stops once and then continues for about 90 seconds. The beep stops after the driver or front passenger's seat belt is fastened.

#### NOTE

- *Placing heavy items on the front passenger seat may cause the front passenger seat belt warning function to operate depending on the weight of the item.*
- *To allow the front passenger seat weight sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.*
- *When a small child sits on the front passenger seat, it is possible that the warning beep will not operate.*

##### Rear seat

The warning beep only sounds if a seat belt is unfastened after being fastened.

## Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

### ▼ Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched to ACC, a beep will be heard continuously in the cabin to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF (STOP). Under this condition, the keyless entry system will not operate, the vehicle cannot be locked, and the battery voltage will be depleted.

### ▼ Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard 6 times, the beep which sounds inside the vehicle will be heard 6 times.

#### **NOTE**

*Because the key utilizes low-intensity radio waves, the Key Removed From Vehicle Warning may activate if the key is carried together with a metal object or it is placed in a poor signal reception area.*

### ▼ Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep

If the request switch is pressed with the door open or ajar, or the ignition is not switched OFF with a key being carried, a beep will be heard outside for about 2 seconds to notify the driver that the door or liftgate cannot be locked.

### ▼ Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep

If the key is left in the luggage compartment with all the doors locked and the liftgate closed, a beep will be heard

outside for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the luggage compartment. In this case, take out the key by pressing the electric liftgate opener and opening the liftgate. The key taken out of the luggage compartment may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-6).

### ▼ Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep

If all the doors and luggage compartment are locked using another key while the key is left in the cabin, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the cabin. In this case, take out the key by opening the door. A key taken out of the vehicle using this method may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-6).

### ▼ Electronic Steering Lock Warning Beep

The warning beep operates if the steering wheel is not unlocked after the push button start is pressed. (page 4-4)

### ▼ Power Liftgate Warning Beep\*

If system operation precautions are necessary, the driver is notified by the warning sound.

## Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Cautions	What to check
The beep sounds 3 times	The conditions required for the power liftgate to operate have not been met, such as an object being stuck in the liftgate.
The beep sound continues	The vehicle is being driven with the liftgate open. Stop the vehicle and close the liftgate.

### ▼ i-stop Warning Beep

- If the driver's door is opened while engine idling is stopped, the warning sound operates to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped. It stops when the driver's door is closed.

### ▼ Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Beep

The warning buzzer is activated under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is driven with the parking brake applied.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is pulled while the vehicle is driven.

### ▼ AUTOHOLD Warning Beep

Warning light flashes/message is displayed and beep sound is activated simultaneously for about 5 seconds when using AUTOHOLD function or when AUTOHOLD switch is operated.

Because a problem with AUTOHOLD function has occurred, AUTOHOLD function does not operate even if AUTOHOLD switch is operated.

If the warning light flashes/message is displayed and the beep sound is activated

simultaneously, have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### ▼ Power Steering Warning Buzzer

If the power steering system has a malfunction, the power steering malfunction indication is displayed and the buzzer operates at the same time. Refer to Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately on page 7-23.

### ▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Beep\*

#### Driving forward

The warning beep operates when the direction indicator lever is operated to the side where the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated.

#### *NOTE*

*A personalised function is available to change the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep sound volume.*

*Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

#### Reversing

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning sound is activated if there is a possibility of collision with a vehicle approaching from behind and from the rear on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

### ▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) System Warnings\*

The Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system warnings notify the driver of

## Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

system malfunctions and cautions on use when required.

Check based on the beep sound.

Warning beep	What to check
The beep sounds 1 time while the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) is operating	The vehicle speed is slower than 25 km/h (16 mph) and the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system has been cancelled.
The beep sounds continuously while driving	The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is too close. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and reduce vehicle speed.
While the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) is operating, the beep sounds and the multi-information display indicates a problem with the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system.	A malfunction in the system may be indicated. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

### ▼ Lane Departure Warning Sound\*

While the system is operating, if the system determines that the vehicle may depart from the lane, it sounds a warning sound.

#### NOTE

- *The volume of the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning sound can be changed. Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*
- *The type of the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning sound can be changed.*

*Refer to Personalisation Features on page 9-9.*

### ▼ Collision warning\*

If there is a possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead or an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle, the warning light in the instrument cluster flashes at the same time as the warning indication is displayed in the multi-information display, and a warning sound is activated intermittently.

# When Liftgate Cannot be Opened

## When Liftgate Cannot be Opened

If the battery is dead, the liftgate cannot be unlocked and opened.

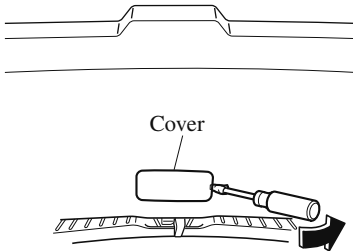
In this case, the liftgate can be unlocked by taking care of the dead battery situation.

Refer to Jump-Starting on page 7-12.

If the liftgate cannot be unlocked even if the dead battery situation has been resolved, the electrical system may have a malfunction.

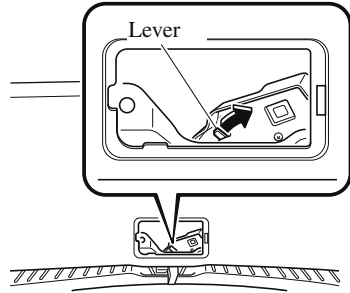
In this case, the liftgate can be opened using the following procedure as an emergency measure.

1. Wrap the end of a flathead screwdriver in a cloth and remove the cover on the interior surface of the liftgate using it.



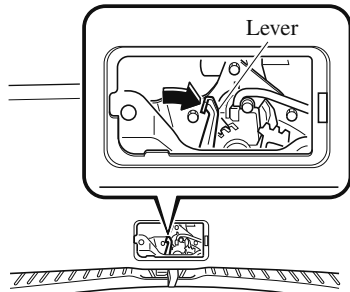
2. **(Without power liftgate)**

Turn the lever to the right to unlock the liftgate.



**(With power liftgate)**

Push the liftgate while pressing the lever down.



After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer as soon as possible.



## Active Driving Display Does Not Operate

---

### If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate

If the active driving display does not operate, switch the ignition off and then restart the engine. If the active driving display does not operate even with the engine restarted, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

# MEMO

# 8

## Customer Information

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

<b>Warranty</b> .....	<b>8-2</b>
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country.....	8-2
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories.....	8-3
<b>Cell Phones</b> .....	<b>8-4</b>
Cell Phones Warning.....	8-4

<b>Recording of Vehicle Data</b> .....	<b>8-5</b>
Recording of Vehicle Data.....	8-5
<b>Declaration of Conformity</b> .....	<b>8-6</b>
Declaration of Conformity.....	8-6

## Warranty

---

### Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country

Registering your vehicle in a foreign country may be problematic depending on whether it meets the specific emission and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle will be driven. Consequently, your vehicle may require modifications at personal expense in order to meet the regulations.

In addition, you should be aware of the following issues:

Satisfactory vehicle servicing may be difficult or impossible in another country.

The fuel specified for your vehicle may be unavailable.

Parts, servicing techniques, and tools necessary to maintain and repair your vehicle may be unavailable.

There might not be an Authorised Mazda Dealer in the country you plan to take your vehicle.

The Mazda warranty is valid only in certain countries.

## Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories

Please note that technical alterations to the original state of your Mazda vehicle can affect the safety of the vehicle. Such technical alterations include not only the use of unsuitable spare parts, but also accessories, fittings or attachments, including rims and tyres.

Genuine Mazda Parts and Genuine Mazda Accessories have been specifically designed for Mazda vehicles.

Other parts and accessories than those mentioned above have not been examined and approved by Mazda unless explicitly stated by Mazda. We cannot certify the suitability of such products. Mazda is not liable for any damage caused by the use of such products.

### **WARNING**

***Be very careful in choosing and installing add-on electrical equipment, such as mobile telephones, two-way radios, stereo systems, and car alarm systems:***

*Incorrectly choosing or installing improper add-on equipment or choosing an improper installer is dangerous. Essential systems could be damaged, causing engine stalling, air-bag (SRS) activation, ABS/TCS/DSC inactivation, or a fire in the vehicle.*

Mazda assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of add-on non-genuine parts or accessories.

### Cell Phones Warning

#### **WARNING**

***Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of communication equipment in vehicles in your country:***

*Use of any electrical devices such as cell phones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Dialing a number on a cell phone while driving also ties-up the driver's hands. Use of these devices will cause the driver to be distracted and could lead to a serious accident. If a passenger is unable to use the device, pull off the right-of-way to a safe area before use. If use of a cell phone is necessary despite this warning, use a hands-free system to at least leave the hands free to drive the vehicle. Never use a cell phone or other electrical devices while the vehicle is moving and, instead, concentrate on the full-time job of driving.*

# Recording of Vehicle Data

---

## Recording of Vehicle Data

This vehicle is equipped with a computer which records the following main vehicle data related to vehicle controls, operation, and other driving conditions.

### Recorded data

- Vehicle conditions such as engine speed and vehicle speed
- Driving operation conditions such as accelerator and brake pedals, and information related to the environmental circumstances while the vehicle is driven
- Malfunction diagnosis information from each on-vehicle computer
- Information related to controls of other on-vehicle computers

### **NOTE**

*The recorded data may vary depending on the vehicle grade and optional equipment. Voice and images are not recorded.*

### Data handling

Mazda and its subcontracting parties may obtain and use the recorded data for vehicle malfunction diagnosis, research and development, and quality improvement.

Mazda will not disclose or provide any of the obtained data to a third party unless:

- An agreement from the vehicle owner (agreements from lessor and lessee for leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other law enforcement authorities
- For statistical processing by a research institution after processing the data so that identification of the owner or the vehicle is impossible

# Declaration of Conformity

---

## Declaration of Conformity

### ▼ Keyless Entry System/Immobilizer System

#### Keyless System Radio approval Marking



Thailand

"This telecommunication equipment is in compliance with NBTC requirements."



# Declaration of Conformity

## ▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System

Hereby, FURUKAWA AUTOMOTIVE SYSTEMS INC., declares that the radio equipment type 24GMMR1A is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<http://www.furukawaas.co.jp/english/approval/>

English	Frequency range: 24.05 GHz to 24.25 GHz Maximum radiated peak power (e.i.r.p.): 2.8 dBm Temperature range: -40°C to +85°C
Bulgarian	Честотен диапазон: 24.05 GHz до 24.25 GHz Максимално излъчвана върхова мощност (еим): 2,8 dBm Температурен диапазон: -40°C до +85°C
Czech	Frekvencní rozsah: 24.05 GHz až 24.25 GHz Maximum vyzářeného výkonu (e.i.r.p.): 2.8 dBm Teplotní rozsah: -40°C až +85°C
Danish	Frekvensinterval: 24.05 GHz til 24.25 GHz Maksimalt udsendte spidseffekt (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Temperaturinterval: -40°C til +85°C
German	Frequenzbereich: 24.05 GHz bis 24.25 GHz Max. Strahlungsleistungspegel (EIRP): 2,8 dBm Temperaturbereich: -40°C bis +85°C
Estonian	Sagedusala: 24.05 GHz kuni 24.25 GHz Maksimaalne kiirguse tippvõimsus (ekvivalentne isotroopne kiirgusvõimsus): 2,8 dBm Temperatuurivahemik: -40 °C kuni +85 °C
Gaelige	Raon miniciochtaid: 24.05 GHz agus 24.25 GHz Buailo-chumhacht radaithe uasta (e.i.r.p.): 2.8 dBm Raon teochta: -40°C to +85°C
Greek	Περιοχή συχνότητας: 24.05 GHz έως 24.25 GHz Μέγιστη ακτινοβολούμενη ισχύς αμφοτέρως (i.e.): 2,8 dBm Εύρος θερμοκρασίας: -40°C έως +85°C
Spanish	Rango de Frecuencia: 24.05 GHz a 24.25 GHz Potencia Isótropa Radiada Equivalente (e.i.r.p. por sus siglas en inglés): 2,8 dBm Rango de temperatura: -40°C a +85°C
French	Bande de fréquence: 24.05 GHz to 24.25 GHz Puissance maximale de crête rayonnée (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Ecart de température: -40°C à +85°C
hrvatski	Frekvencijski raspon: 24.05 GHz do 24.25 GHz Maksimalna emitirana vršna snaga (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Raspon temperatura: -40°C do +85°C
Italian	Gamma di frequenza : da 24.05 GHz ta 24.25 GHz Picco massimo delle potenze irradiate (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Escursione termina: da -40°C a +85°C
Latvian	Frekvences diapazons: 24.05 GHz līdz 24.25 GHz Maksimālā izstarotā maksimālā jauda (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Temperatūras diapazons: -40°C līdz +85°C
Lithuania	Dažnio intervalas: 24.05–24.25 GHz Didžiausioji spinduliuotės galia (EIRP): 2,8 dBm Temperatūros intervalas: -40–+85 °C
Lëtzebuergesch	Frequenzberäich: 24.05 GHz bis 24.25 GHz Maximal ausgestraalt Spëtzeleeschung (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Temperaturberäich: -40°C bis +85°C
Hungarian	Frekvenciataromány: 24.05 GHz - 24.25 GHz Maximum sugarzott csúcsjeltelemény (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Hőmérsékleti tartomány: -40 °C - +85 °C
Maltese	Medda tal-frekwenza: 24.05 GHz sa 24.25 GHz L-oġġna qawwa irradiata massima (e.i.r.p.): 2,8 dBm Finja tal-temperatura: -40°C sa +85°C
Dutch	Frequentiebereik: 24.05 GHz tot 24.25 GHz Maximaal uitgezonden vermogen (EIRP): 2,8 dBm Temperatuurbereik: -40°C tot +85°C
German	Frequenzbereich: 24.05 GHz bis 24.25 GHz Max. Strahlungsleistungspegel (EIRP): 2,8 dBm Temperaturbereich: -40°C bis +85°C
Polish	Zakres częstotliwości: od 24.05 GHz do 24.25 GHz Maksymalna wypromieniowana moc (EIRP): 2,8 dBm Zakres temperatur: od -40°C do +85°C

# Declaration of Conformity

---

Portuguese	Alcance de frequência: 24,05 GHz a 24,25 GHz Máximo Potência de pico irradiada (e.i.r.p): 2,8 dBm Faixa de temperatura: -40°C a +85°C
Rumanian	Interval de frecvență: 24,05 GHz - 24,25 GHz Putere de vârf maximă radiată (e.i.r.p): 2,8 dBm Interval de temperatură: -40 °C - +85 °C
Slovenian	Frekvenčni razpon: 24,05 GHz do 24,25 GHz Maksimalna zračena moč (e.i.r.p): 2,8 dBm Temperaturni razpon: -40°C to +85°C
Slovakian	Frekvenčný rozsah: 24,05 GHz až 24,25 GHz Maximum efektívneho izotropného vyžiareného výkonu (e.i.r.p): 2,8 dBm Teplotný rozsah: -40°C zž +85°C
Finnish	Taajuusalue: 24,05 – 24,25 GHz Maksimi säteilyhuipputeho (e.i.r.p): 2,8 dBm Lämpötila-alue -40°C - +85°C
Swedish	Frekvensintervall: 24,05 GHz till 24,25 GHz Högsta utstrålade maximal effekt (e.i.r.p): 2,8 dBm Temperaturintervall: -40°C till +85°C

# Declaration of Conformity



TRA

Registered No: ER46653/16

DEALER No: DA51567/16

OMAN-TRA

R/3369/16

D080134

1. Antenna name: 24GMMR1A-ANT
2. Antenna type: Planar array
3. Antenna gain (from the local testing result):
  - Gain(dBi)
  - 13.2 @24.05GHz
  - 13.4 @24.15GHz
  - 13.5 @24.25GHz

4. Statement below in Chinese:

第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Complies with  
IDA Standards  
[No. DA100926]



Compliance wording:

[This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement]

# Declaration of Conformity

---



MODEL:24GMMR1A  
FURUKAWA ELECTRIC CO.,Ltd.  
Адреса виробника :  
FURUKAWA AUTOMOTIVE SYSTEMS INC.  
1000, Amago, Koura-cho, Inukami-gun, Shiga, JAPAN

справжнім (FURUKAWA ELECTRIC CO.,Ltd.) заявляє, що тип радіообладнання (Радіолокатор периферійного безперервного нагляду діапазоном 24 ГГц) відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;  
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою (<http://www.furukawaas.co.jp/english/approval/24gmmr1a/>)

Діапазон частот: від 24,05 до 24,25 ГГц  
Максимальна пікова потужність випромінювання (еквівалентна ізотропній потужності): 2,8 дБм  
Діапазон температур: від -40 °C до + 85 °C

**Информация о соответствии продукции  
требованиям Технических регламентов  
Таможенного союза  
(вкладыш к руководству по эксплуатации)**

1.	<b>Изготовитель, адрес</b>	FURUKAWA AUTOMOTIVE SYSTEMS INC.,  1000 Amago Koura-cho, Inukami-gun, Shiga 522-0242, Japan
2.	<b>Наименование в местонахождение уполномоченного лица (импортер — если партия)</b>	ООО «Мазда Мотор Рус» Ленинградское шоссе 16А, стр. 2, 125171 Москва, РФ
3.	<b>Информация для связи</b>	См. п. 2
4.	<b>Торговая марка</b>	FURUKAWA ELECTRIC
5.	<b>Наименование и обозначение</b>	-название: 24GMMR1A -обозначение: 24GHz Multimode Pulse Radar
6.	<b>Характеристики и параметры</b>	Диапазон частот: 24.05—24.25ГГц  Макс. Выходная мощность: <20дБм (ЭИИМ)
7.	<b>Назначение</b>	Обнаружение положения и движения объектов в ассистентов современных систем водителей
8.	<b>Питание</b>	8-16В постоянного тока,  <1А

# Declaration of Conformity

---


9.	<b>Страна производства</b>	Япония
10.	<b>Соответствует ТРТС</b>	— ТРТС020/2011 «Электромагнитная совместимость Технических средств»
11.	<b>Правила и условия безопасной эксплуатации (использования)</b>	Оборудование предназначено для использования в автомобиле . При температуре воздуха от -40 до +85 °С и относительной влажности не выше 95%.
12.	<b>Правила и условия монтажа</b>	Монтаж оборудования производится в соответствии с «Руководство по установке», прилагаемом к данному оборудованию
13.	<b>Правила и условия хранения</b>	Оборудование должно храниться в закрытых помещениях, в заводской упаковке, при температуре окружающего воздуха -40-85 °С и относительной влажности не выше 95%.

# Declaration of Conformity

14.	<b>Правила и условия перевозки (транспортирования)</b>	Перевозка и транспортировка оборудования допускается только в заводской упаковке, любыми видами транспорта, без ограничения расстояний.
15.	<b>Правила и условия реализации</b>	Устанавливается позади заднего бампера автомобиля
16.	<b>Правила и условия утилизации</b>	По окончании срока службы оборудования, обратитесь к официальному дилеру для утилизации оборудования.
17.	<b>Правила и условия подключения к электрической сети и другим техническим средствам, пуска, регулирования и введения в эксплуатацию</b>	Производится в соответствии с «Руководство по установке», прилагаемому к данному оборудованию
18.	<b>Сведения об ограничениях в использовании с учетом предназначения для работы в жилых, коммерческих и производственных зонах</b>	Оборудование предназначено для использования в жилых, коммерческих и производственных зонах без воздействия опасных и вредных производственных факторов. Оборудование предназначено для круглосуточной непрерывной эксплуатации без постоянного присутствия обслуживающего персонала
19.	<b>Информацию о мерах при неисправности оборудования</b>	В случае обнаружения неисправности прибора свяжитесь с дилером.

# Declaration of Conformity

---

20	<p>Месяц и год изготовления и (или) информация о месте нанесения и способе определения года изготовления</p>	<p>Дата изготовления указана в серийном номере на коробке устройства.</p> <p>Серийный номер :          ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOP (16 цифр)</p> <p>h: год (одна цифра)</p> <p>- Одна последняя цифра в возрасте христианского года</p> <p>i - j: месяц (две цифры)</p> <p>k - l: Дата (две цифры)</p> <p>m - p: серийный номер (четыре цифры) - 0001 ~ 9999</p>
21	<p>Знак соответствия</p>	
21	<p>Сведения о регистрации декларации о соответствии</p>	<p>Регистрационный номер декларации о соответствии:          TC N RU Д-JP.МЕ79.В.00099</p> <p>Дата регистрации декларации о соответствии: 10.10.2016</p>



# Declaration of Conformity

## ▼ Audio System

### Type A(non-touchscreen)

Bългарски [Bulgarian]	C настоящото <b>Visteon Corporation</b> декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение <b>MAZ</b> е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Čeština [Czech]	Tímto <b>Visteon Corporation</b> prohlašuje, že typ radiového zařízení <b>MAZ</b> je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplně znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Dansk [Danish]	Herved erklærer <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , at radioudstyretypen <b>MAZ</b> er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , dass der Funkanlagentyp <b>MAZ</b> der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Eesti [Estonian]	Kaesolevaga deklareerib <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , et kaesolev raadioseadme tüüp <b>MAZ</b> vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
English	Hereby, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declares that the radio equipment type <b>MAZ</b> is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Espanol [Spanish]	Por la presente, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico <b>MAZ</b> es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección internet siguiente: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρούσα οή <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , δηλώνω ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός <b>MAZ</b> πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Français [French]	Le soussigné, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type <b>MAZ</b> est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Hrvatski [Croatian]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa <b>MAZ</b> u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Italiano [Italian]	Il fabbricante, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio <b>MAZ</b> è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Latviešu valoda [Latvian]	Ar šo <b>Visteon Corporation</b> deklarē, ka radioiekarta <b>MAZ</b> atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā internetā vietnē: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Lietuvių kalba [Lithuanian]	Aš, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , patvirtinu, kad radio įrenginys tipas <b>MAZ</b> atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaar ik, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , dat het type radioapparatuur <b>MAZ</b> conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/UE. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Malti [Maltese]	B'dan, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , niddikjara li dan li-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju <b>MAZ</b> huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformita tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li gejj: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Magyar [Hungarian]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> igazolja, hogy a <b>MAZ</b> típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Polski [Polish]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> niniejszym oświadcza, że typ urządzenia radioelektrycznego <b>MAZ</b> jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Portugues [Portuguese]	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de radio <b>MAZ</b> esta em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaracao de conformidade esta disponivel no seguinte endereco de internet: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Romană [Romanian]	Prin prezenta, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declară că tipul de echipamente radio <b>MAZ</b> este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Slovenščina [Slovenian]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme <b>MAZ</b> skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Slovenčina [Slovak]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu <b>MAZ</b> je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EU. Úplné EU vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Suomi [Finnish]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi <b>MAZ</b> on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimusten mukaisuuksien täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed försäkrar <b>Visteon Corporation</b> att denna typ av radioutrustning <b>MAZ</b> överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Islenka [Icelandic]	Hér með <b>Visteon Corporation</b> lýsir yfir að tegund þráðlausan búnað <b>MAZ</b> er í samræmi við tilskipun 2014/53/ESB. The fullur texti af ESB-samræmisýrslingun er í búi á eftirfarandi vefang: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Norsk [Norwegian]	Herved <b>Visteon Corporation</b> erklærer at radioustyr type <b>MAZ</b> er i samsvar med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullstendige teksten i EU-samsvarserklæringen er tilgjengelig på følgende internetadresse: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>
Türkçe [Turkish]	Burada, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> radyo ekipmanı türünü <b>MAZ</b> 2014/53/EU direktiflerine uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. Uyumu beyanını tam metni belirtilen internet sitesinde mevcuttur: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car/eu.compliance.com</a>

Frequency Range	2400-2483.5MHz
Output Power	< 4dBm

# Declaration of Conformity

Model: MAZ  
 Brand: Visteon  
 Manufacturer: Visteon Corporation  
 Address: One Village Center, Van Buren Township  
 48111-5711 Michigan  
 United States of America



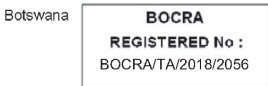
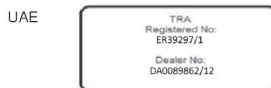
Israel 51-55444 מספר אישור אלחוטני של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-55444  
 אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר ולא  
 לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Jordan The manufacturer: Visteon Corporation  
 Equipment type: MAZ  
 TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2015/104

Jamaica This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica. SMA – "MAZ."

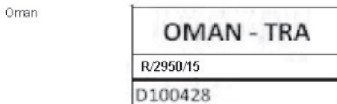


Algeria ' Agréé par l'ARPT ' 'Référence d'agrément '



Taiwan Product Name: Bluetooth Telematic Device  
 Model Name: MAZ  
 Applicant Name: Visteon Corporation

警語  
 低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法  
 第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機,非經許可,公司,商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率,加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。  
 第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航影響安全及干擾合法通信,經發現有干擾現象時,應立即停止使用,並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。  
 前項合法通信,指一電信法規定作業之無線電通信低功率射頻電機需忍受合法通信或工業,科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。



# Declaration of Conformity

Ukraine



Модель: MAZ

Діапазон частот: 2400 - 2483.5 МГц

Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (Bluetooth): 4 дБм

Дана Visteon Corporation заявляє, що тип радіобладнання (позначення типу радіобладнання) відповідає Технічному регламенту радіобладнання;

Повний текст декларації про відповідність можна знайти на сайті за адресою: <https://www.visteondocs.com/>.

Indonesia

59236/SDPPI/2018  
8032

Brazil



ANATEL web link:

<http://www.anatel.gov.br/institucional/>

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário"

Mozambique

IMCM - 1BT15

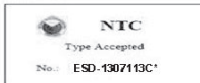
Model - MAZ

Manufacturer - Visteon Corporation

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications  
equipment is permitted by the Nigerian  
Communications Commission

Philippines



FCC ID: NT8MBLUEC09

### **FCC**

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **Caution:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

# Declaration of Conformity

## Type B(touchscreen)

Bългарски [Bulgarian]	С настоящото <b>Visteon Corporation</b> декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствие може да се намери на следния интернет адрес: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Čeština [Czech]	Tímto <b>Visteon Corporation</b> prohlašuje, že typ radiového zařízení <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Uplně znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Dansk [Danish]	Hermed erklærer <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , at radioudstyretypen <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erkläre <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , dass der Funkanlagentyp <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Eesti [Estonian]	Kaesolevaga deklareerin <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , et kaesolev raadioseadme tüüp <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EL nõuetele. ELi vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel Internetiaadressil: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
English	Hereby, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declares that the radio equipment type <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/UE. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Espanol [Spanish]	Por la presente, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declara que el tipo de equipo radioeléctrico <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Ελληνική [Greek]	Με την παρούσα δήλωση <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , δηλώνω ότι ο ραδιοεπιπλομάς <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Français [French]	Le soussigné, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse Internet suivante: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Hrvatski [Croatian]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Italiano [Italian]	Il fabbricante, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile al seguente indirizzo Internet: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Latviešu valoda [Latvian]	Ar šo <b>Visteon Corporation</b> deklarē, ka radioiekārtas <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā interneta vietnē: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Lietuvių kalba [Lithuanian]	Aš, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , patvirtinu, kad radio įrenginių tipas <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> atitinka Direktyvą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaar ik, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , dat het type radioapparatuur <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/UE. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Malta [Maltese]	B'dan, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> , nidkljara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformita tal-UE huwa disponibbli f'dan l-indirizz tal-Internet li ġej: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Magyar [Hungarian]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> igazolja, hogy a <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> típusu rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/UE irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelőségi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Polski [Polish]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> niniejszym oświadczam, że typ urządzenia radiowego <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Portugues [Portuguese]	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de radio <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> esta em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaracao de conformidade esta disponivel no seguinte endereço de Internet: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Română [Romanian]	Prin prezenta, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> declară că tipul de echipament radio <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Slovenščina [Slovenian]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Slovenčina [Slovak]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/EU. Uplné EU vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Suomi [Finnish]	<b>Visteon Corporation</b> vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen. EU-vaatimusten mukaisuusvakuutuksen täysimittainen teksti on saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>
Svenska [Swedish]	Harmed försäkrar <b>Visteon Corporation</b> att denna typ av radioustrusting <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu/compliance.com</a>

# Declaration of Conformity

Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með <b>Visteon Corporation</b> lýsir yfir að tegund þráðlausan búnað <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> er í samræmi við tiskipun 2014/53/ESB. The fullur texti af ESB-samræmisýrfrýsingu er í búi á eftirfarandi veffangi: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu.compliance.com</a>
Norsk [Norwegian]	Herved <b>Visteon Corporation</b> erklærer at radioutsyr type <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> er i samsvar med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fulstendige teksten i EU-samsvarserklæringen er tilgjengelig på følgende Internettadresse: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu.compliance.com</a>
Türkçe [Turkish]	Burada, <b>Visteon Corporation</b> radyo ekipmanı türünün <b>MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU</b> 2014/53/EU direktiflerine uyumlu olduğunu beyan eder. Uyumu beyanının tam metni belirtilen internet sitesinde mevcuttur: <a href="https://www.visteon.com/car.eu.compliance.com">https://www.visteon.com/car.eu.compliance.com</a>

Frequency Range	2400-2483.5MHz
Output Power	Bluetooth < 4dBm
	WLAN < 30dBm

# Declaration of Conformity

Model: MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU  
 Brand: Visteon  
 Manufacturer: Visteon Corporation  
 Address: One Village Center, Van Buren Township  
 48111-5711 Michigan  
 United States of America

CE MARK



Botswana

**BOCRA**  
**REGISTERED No :**  
 BOCRA/TA/2018/2057

Indonesia

59292/SDPPI/2018  
 8032

Israel

מספר אישור אלחוטני של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-53307  
 אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המגשר ולא  
 לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – “MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU” .  
 This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – “MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU”.

Jordan

**The manufacturer: Visteon Corporation**  
 Equipment type: MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU  
 TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2015/103

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
 Numéro d'agrément :..... MR 8393 ANRT 2013  
 Date d'agrément :..... 08/08/2013


Mozambique

INCM - 23EBP 15  
 Model - MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU  
**Manufacturer - Visteon Corporation**

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications  
 equipment is permitted by the Nigerian  
 Communications Commission

Philippines

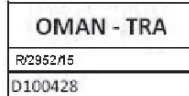
 **NTC**  
 Type Accepted  
 No.: ESD-1307587C\*

# Declaration of Conformity

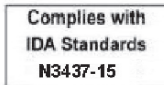
Algeria

'Agr e par l'ARPT' and 'R f rence d'agr ment '.

Oman



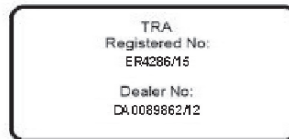
Singapore



South Africa



UAE



Ukraine



Модель: **MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU**

Діапазон частот: **2400 - 2483.5 МГц**

Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (Bluetooth): **4 дБм**

Максимальна потужність вихідної потужності (WLAN): **30 дБм**

Дана Visteon Corporation заявляє, що тип радіообладнання (позначення типу радіообладнання) відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;

Повний текст декларації про відповідність можна знайти на сайті за адресою:  
<https://www.visteondocs.com/>.

# Declaration of Conformity

---

Taiwan



Product Name: Automotive Electronics Infotainment Head Unit  
Model Name: MAZDA\_GEN\_65\_CMU  
Applicant Name: Visteon Corporation  
Rating (Voltage and Current): 13.5V, TYP 1A  
Operation Temperature: -30°C~+85°C

**警語**

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航影響安全及干擾合法通信，經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指一電信法規定作業之無線電通信低功率射頻電機需忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Brazil



ANATEL web link:

<http://www.anatel.gov.br/institucional/>

"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário"

FCC ID: NT862932

***FCC***

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Caution:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.



# Declaration of Conformity

## ▼ Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)/Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC)/Smart Brake Support (SBS)

Transmitter: Model: DNMWR006  
 Operation frequency: 76.5 GHz  
 Maximum output power: 6.31 W or less  
 Manufacturer: DENSO CORPORATION  
 Address: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan  
 The latest "DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address:  
<https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html>



English	Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that the radio equipment type DNMWR006 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Finnish	DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa, että radiolaitetyyppi DNMWR006 on direktiivin 2014/53/EU mukainen EU-vaatimusten mukaisuuksuakuitukseen täysimittainen tekstin saatavilla seuraavassa internetosoitteessa: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Dutch	Hierbij verklaar ik, DENSO CORPORATION, dat het type radioapparatuur DNMWR006 conform is met Richtlijn 2014/53/EU. De volledige tekst van de EU-conformiteitsverklaring kan worden geraadpleegd op het volgende internetadres:
French	Le soussigné, DENSO CORPORATION, déclare que l'équipement radioélectrique du type DNMWR006 est conforme à la directive 2014/53/UE. Le texte complet de la déclaration UE de conformité est disponible à l'adresse internet suivante: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Swedish	Härmed försäkrar DENSO CORPORATION att denna typ av radioutrustning DNMWR006 överensstämmer med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Den fullständiga texten till EU-försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på följande webbadress: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Danish	Hiermed erklærer DENSO CORPORATION, at radioudstyrstypen DNMWR006 er i overensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. EU-overensstemmelseserklæringens fulde tekst kan findes på følgende internetadresse: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
German	Hiermit erkläre DENSO CORPORATION, dass der Funkanlagentyp DNMWR006 der Richtlinie 2014/53/EU entspricht. Der vollständige Text der EU-Konformitätserklärung ist unter der folgenden Internetadresse verfügbar: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Greek	Με την παρούσα ο/η DENSO CORPORATION, δηλώνει ότι ο ραδιοεξοπλισμός DNMWR006 πληροί την οδηγία 2014/53/ΕΕ. Το πλήρες κείμενο της δήλωσης συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ διατίθεται στην ακόλουθη ιστοσελίδα στο διαδίκτυο: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Italian	Il fabbricante, DENSO CORPORATION, dichiara che il tipo di apparecchiatura radio DNMWR006 è conforme alla direttiva 2014/53/UE. Il testo completo della dichiarazione di conformità UE è disponibile alla seguente indirizzo Internet: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Spanish	Por la presente, DENSO CORPORATION declara que el tipo de equiparadioeléctrico DNMWR006 es conforme con la Directiva 2014/53/UE. El texto completo de la declaración UE de conformidad está disponible en la dirección Internet siguiente:
Portuguese	O(a) abaixo assinado(a) DENSO CORPORATION declara que o presente tipo de equipamento de rádio DNMWR006 está em conformidade com a Diretiva 2014/53/UE. O texto integral da declaração de conformidade está disponível no seguinte endereço de Internet: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Maltese	B'dan, DENSO CORPORATION, nidkjara li dan it-tip ta' tagħmir tar-radju DNMWR006 huwa konformi mad-Direttiva 2014/53/UE. It-test kollu tad-dikjarazzjoni ta' konformità ta' l-UE huwadisponibbli f'dan l-indirizz ta' l-Internet li ġejj: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Estonian	Käesolevaga deklareerin DENSO CORPORATION, et käesolevavara radioseadme tüüp DNMWR006 vastab direktiivi 2014/53/EÜ nõuetele. ELI vastavusdeklaratsiooni täielik tekst on kättesaadav järgmisel internetiaadressil: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Hungarian	DENSO CORPORATION igazolja, hogy a DNMWR006 típusú rádióberendezés megfelel a 2014/53/EU irányelvnek. Az EU-megfelelésegi nyilatkozat teljes szövege elérhető a következő internetes címen: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Slovak	DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že rádiové zariadenie typu DNMWR006 je v súlade so smernicou 2014/53/UE. Úplné EU vyhlásenie o zhode je k dispozícii na tejto internetovej adrese: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Czech	Tímto DENSO CORPORATION prohlašuje, že typ rádiového zařízení DNMWR006 je v souladu se směrnicí 2014/53/EU. Úplné znění EU prohlášení o shodě je k dispozici na této internetové adrese: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Slovene	DENSO CORPORATION potrjuje, da je tip radijske opreme DNMWR006 skladen z Direktivo 2014/53/EU. Celotno besedilo izjave EU o skladnosti je na voljo na naslednjem spletnem naslovu: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Lithuanian	Aš, DENSO CORPORATION, patvirtinu, kad radio įrenginių tipas DNMWR006 atitinka Direktivą 2014/53/ES. Visas ES atitikties deklaracijos tekstas prieinamas šiuo interneto adresu: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Latvian	Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarā, ka radioiekārtā DNMWR006 atbilst Direktīvai 2014/53/ES. Pilns ES atbilstības deklarācijas teksts ir pieejams šādā internetā vietnē: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Polish	DENSO CORPORATION niniejszym oświadczam, że typ urządzenia radiowego DNMWR006 jest zgodny z dyrektywą 2014/53/UE. Pełny tekst deklaracji zgodności UE jest dostępny pod następującym adresem internetowym: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Icelandic	Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að DNMWR006er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerð arer í tilskipun 2014/53/EU. Samræmisýrfrýsing er einnig aðgengileg á eftirfarandi vefsíðu: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>

# Declaration of Conformity

Norwegian	DENSO CORPORATION erklærer at DNMWR006 er ioverensstemmelse med direktiv 2014/53/EU. Samsvarserklæringen i fulltekst er tilgjengelig på følgende internettsadresse: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Bulgarian	С настоящото DENSO CORPORATION декларира, че този тип радиосъоръжение DNMWR006 е в съответствие с Директива 2014/53/ЕС. Цялостният текст на ЕС декларацията за съответствието може да се намери на следния интернет адрес:
Rumanian	Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION declară că tipul de echipament radio DNMWR006 este în conformitate cu Directiva 2014/53/UE. Textul integral al declarației UE de conformitate este disponibil la următoarea adresă internet: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Maltese	Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj DNMWR006 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Servian	Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklarise da je DNMWR006 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Croatian	DENSO CORPORATION ovime izjavljuje da je radijska oprema tipa DNMWR006 u skladu s Direktivom 2014/53/EU. Cjeloviti tekst EU izjave o sukladnosti dostupan je na sljedećoj internetskoj adresi: <a href="https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html">https://www.denso.co.jp/en/contactus/form/doc/index.html</a>
Shqipe	Nepermijet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroi qe ky DNMWR006 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbese dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatesete Direktives 1999/5/EC.

מוצר : מכ"מ התראה
סימן רשום : OSNED
שם היבואן : דלק מוטורס בע"מ
כתובת היבואן : ת.ד. 200, מושב ניר צבי 7290500, ישראל
ארץ ייצור : ראה מוצר
דגם : 600RWMND
שנת ייצור : ראה מוצר

## Declaration of Conformity

---

เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงจากการสัมผัสสนามแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้า ควรอยู่ห่างจาก  
เซ็นเซอร์ตรวจจับ ใน ระยะไม่ต่ำกว่า 20 เซนติเมตร

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามข้อกำหนด  
ของคณะกรรมการ กิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และ  
กิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ(กสทช.)

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้อง  
ตามมาตรฐาน ความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้  
เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่ คณะกรรมการ กิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการ  
โทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ(กสทช.) กำหนด

\*มีเฉพาะบางรุ่น

## Declaration of Conformity

---

For Vehicles sold in Moldova  
MODEL: DNMWR006



### NOTICE

This equipment has been registered with the Telecommunications Regulatory Authority for use in the UAE.  
TRA REGISTERED No: ER0085986/12  
DEALER No: 0019826/09  
DENSO DNMWR006

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可、公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時、應立即停用、並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。  
前項合法通信、指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。  
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

# Declaration of Conformity

---



UA RF: 3DENS FR06

модель: DNMWR006

смуга радіочастот: 76-77 ГГц

максимальна вихідна потужність: 6.31 Вт або менше

виробник: DENSO CORPORATION

адреса: 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan

справжнім DENSO CORPORATION заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:

<https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/>

Імпортер

виробник: AUTO International

# MEMO

# 9

## Specifications

Technical information about your Mazda.

**Identification Numbers..... 9-2**

Vehicle Information Labels..... 9-2

**Specifications..... 9-4**

Specifications..... 9-4

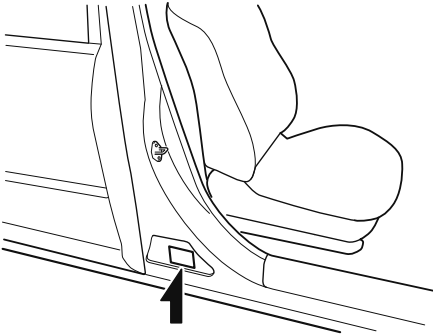
**Personalisation Features..... 9-9**

Personalisation Features..... 9-9

# Identification Numbers

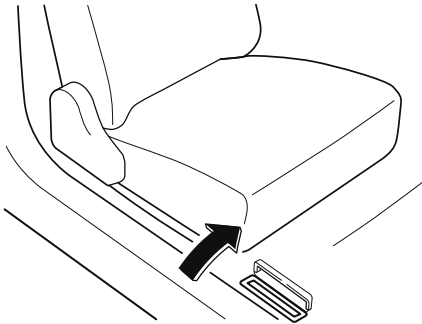
## Vehicle Information Labels

### ▼ Model Plate

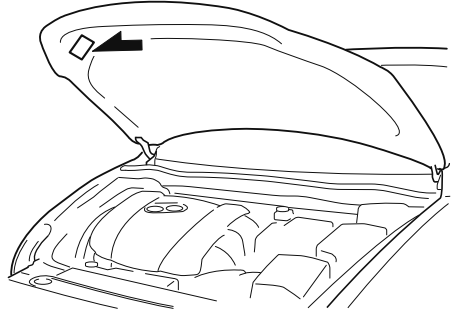


### ▼ Chassis Number

Open the cover shown in the figure to check the chassis number.

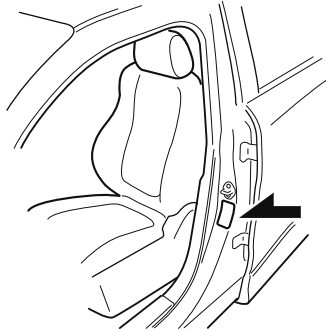


### ▼ Vehicle Emission Control Information Label (The Philippines)

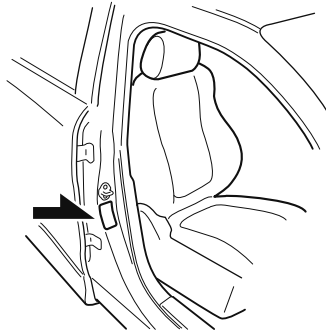


### ▼ Tyre Pressure Label

#### Left-hand drive model



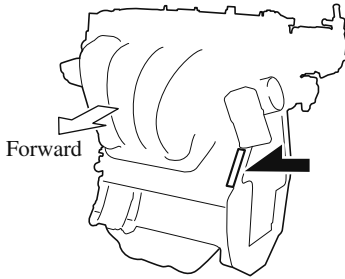
#### Right-hand drive model



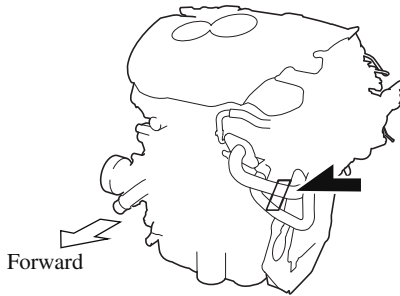


## ▼ Engine Number

### SKYACTIV-G 2.5



### SKYACTIV-D 2.2



# Specifications

## Specifications

### ▼ Engine

#### Petrol engine

Item	Specification
	SKYACTIV-G 2.5
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder
Bore × Stroke	89.0 × 100 mm (3.50 × 3.94 in)
Displacement	2,488 ml (2,488 cc)
Compression ratio	13.0

#### Diesel engine

Item	Specification
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder
Bore × Stroke	86.0 × 94.3 mm (3.39 × 3.71 in)
Displacement	2,191 ml (2,191 cc)
Compression ratio	14.4

### ▼ Electrical System

Item	Specification	
	SKYACTIV-G 2.5	SKYACTIV-D 2.2
Battery	Q-85*1	S-95*1
Spark-plug number	Mazda Genuine spark plug*2 PE5R-18-110 or PE5S-18-110	—

\*1 Q-85 or S-95 is designed for i-stop system (FOR STOP & START). Only Q-85 or S-95 should be used to ensure correct operation of i-stop system (FOR STOP & START). Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

\*2 The spark plugs provide the SKYACTIV-G its optimum performance. Consult an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.



*When cleaning the iridium plugs, do not use a wire brush. The fine particulate coating on the iridium alloy and platinum tips could be damaged.*

**▼ Lubricant Quality**

Lubricant		Classification
Engine oil*1	SKYACTIV-G 2.5	API SL/SM/SN or ILSAC GF-III/GF-IV/GF-V
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2	ACEA C3 0W-30/5W-30

\*1 Refer to Recommended Oil on page 6-14.

Do not use oils which do not meet the above specification or requirements. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

Lubricant	Classification
Coolant	FL-22 type
Automatic transaxle fluid	Mazda Original Oil ATF-FZ
Transfer case oil	Mazda Long Life Hypoid Gear Oil SG1
Rear differential oil	Mazda Long Life Hypoid Gear Oil SG1
Brake fluid	SAE J1703 or FMVSS116 DOT-3

**▼ Cleaner**

Cleaner	Classification
Deposit Cleaner*1	Mazda genuine deposit cleaner (K002 W0 001)

\*1 Use Mazda genuine deposit cleaner. Using non-genuine deposit cleaner would cause internal failure of the fuel system. Refer to 3-22, 6-3 for the details.

**▼ Capacities****(Approximate Quantities)**

Item			Capacity
Engine oil	SKYACTIV-G 2.5	With oil filter replacement	4.5 L (4.8 US qt, 4.0 Imp qt)
		Without oil filter replacement	4.3 L (4.5 US qt, 3.8 Imp qt)
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2	With oil filter replacement	5.1 L (5.4 US qt, 4.5 Imp qt)
		Without oil filter replacement	4.8 L (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt)
Coolant	SKYACTIV-G 2.5	Left-hand drive model	8.3 L (8.8 US qt, 7.3 Imp qt)
		Right-hand drive model	8.2 L (8.7 US qt, 7.2 Imp qt)
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2		9.8 L (10 US qt, 8.6 Imp qt)
Automatic transaxle fluid	SKYACTIV-G 2.5		7.8 L (8.2 US qt, 6.9 Imp qt)
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2		8.0 L (8.5 US qt, 7.0 Imp qt)
Transfer case oil			0.45 L (0.48 US qt, 0.40 Imp qt)
Rear differential oil			0.35 L (0.37 US qt, 0.31 Imp qt)

# Specifications

Item		Capacity
Fuel tank	2WD	72.0 L (19.0 US gal, 15.8 Imp gal)
	4WD	74.0 L (19.5 US gal, 16.3 Imp gal)

Check oil and fluid levels with dipsticks or reservoir gauges.

## ▼ Dimensions

Item	Vehicle specification
Overall length	4,900 mm (192.9 in)
Overall width	1,840 mm (72.4 in)
Overall height	1,730 mm (68.1 in)
Front tread	1,595 mm (62.8 in)
Rear tread	1,600 mm (63.0 in)
Wheelbase	2,930 mm (115.4 in)

## ▼ Light Bulbs

### Exterior light

Light bulb		Category	
		Wattage	UN-R*1(SAE)
Headlights	High beam/Low beam	LED*2	— (—)
	Wide-range low beam*	LED*2	— (—)
Running lights*	LED type	LED*2	— (—)
	Bulb type	21/5	W21/5W (7443)
Position lights	LED type	LED*2	— (—)
	Bulb type	5	W5W (—)
Front direction indicator lights		21	WY21W (7443NA)
Fog lights*		LED*2	— (—)
Side direction indicator lights		LED*2	— (—)
High-mount brake light		LED*2	— (—)
Rear direction indicator lights		21	WY21W (7443NA)
Brake lights		LED*2	— (—)
Tail lights		LED*2	— (—)
Reverse lights		16	W16W (921)
Number plate lights		5	W5W (—)

\*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

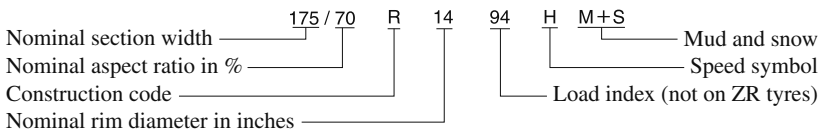
\*2 LED is the abbreviation for Light Emitting Diode.

**Interior light**

Light bulb		Category	
		Wattage	UN-R*1
Front overhead lights/Front map lights	LED type	LED*2	—
	Bulb type	8	—
Centre map lights	LED type	LED*2	—
	Bulb type	8	—
Rear overhead light	LED type	LED*2	—
	Bulb type	10	—
Luggage compartment light		8	—
Vanity mirror lights		2	—
Ambient lights*		LED*2	—

\*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

\*2 LED is the abbreviation for Light Emitting Diode.

**▼ Tyres****Sample tyre mark and its meaning****Tyre mark information**

Choose the proper tyres for your vehicle using the following tyre mark information.

Speed symbol	Maximum permissible speed
Q	Up to 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	Up to 170 km/h (105 mph)
S	Up to 180 km/h (111 mph)
T	Up to 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	Up to 200 km/h (124 mph)
H	Up to 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	Up to 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	Up to 270 km/h (167 mph)

\*Some models.

# Specifications

---

Speed symbol	Maximum permissible speed
Y	Up to 300 km/h (186 mph)
ZR	Over 240 km/h (149 mph)

## Tyre and inflation pressure

### **NOTE**

*The tyres have been optimally matched with the chassis of your vehicle.*

*When replacing tyres, Mazda recommends that you replace tyres of the same type originally fitted to your vehicle. For details, contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer.*

Check the tyre pressure label for tyre size and inflation pressure.

Refer to Tyre Pressure Label on page 9-2.

Refer to Tyre Inflation Pressure on page 6-31.

## Standard tyre

Tyre size		Inflation pressure	
		Up to 3 persons	—Full load
225/55R19 99V	Front	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	290 kPa (2.9 bar, 42 psi)

1 person's weight: About 75 kg

## Temporary spare tyre

Tyre size	Inflation pressure
T155/80R17 100M	420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

## Wheel nut tightening torque

When installing a tyre, tighten the wheel nut to the following torque.

108—147 N·m (12—14 kgf·m, 80—108 ft·lbf)

### ▼ Fuses

Refer to Fuses on page 6-42.

### ▼ Brakes

If you require information regarding the wear limit specification for the brake disc plates and the measurement method, please contact an expert repairer, we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer. The information is made freely available.

## Personalisation Features

The following personalisation features can be set or changed by the customer or an Authorised Mazda Repairer. Consult an Authorised Mazda Repairer for details.

Additionally, some of the personalisation features can be changed by the customer depending on the feature.

Personalisation features and settings which can be changed differ depending on the market and specification.

### Settings Change Method

#### ① Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen.

A: Refer to Settings on page 5-73.

B: Refer to Fuel Economy Monitor on page 4-71.

C: Refer to Active Driving Display on page 4-27.

#### ② Settings can be changed by operating the vehicle switches.

D: Refer to Auto Lock/Unlock Function on page 3-12.

E: Refer to Transmitter on page 3-4.

F: Refer to Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch (With the advanced keyless function) on page 3-10.

#### ③ Settings can be changed by an Authorised Mazda Repairer.

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
<b>Safety</b>						
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) (page 4-121) Smart City Brake Support Reverse (SCBS R) (page 4-124) Smart Brake Support (SBS) (page 4-128)	The system can be changed so that Smart City Brake Support (SCBS)/Smart Brake Support (SBS) does not operate.*1	On	On/Off	A	—	×
	The distance at which the collision warning activates can be changed.	Med.	Near/Med./Far	A	—	×
	The volume of the collision warning can be changed.	High	High/Low/Off	A	—	×

# Personalisation Features

Item	Feature		Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
					①	②	③
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) (page 4-110)	The system can be changed so that the steering wheel assist does not operate.		On	On/Off	A	—	×
	When the steering wheel operation assistance is turned on	The timing at which the steering wheel operation assist of the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) operates can be changed.	Late	Early/Late	A	—	×
		The cancel sensitivity of the steering assistance for the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) can be changed.	High	High/Med/Low	A	—	×
		The system can be changed so that the Lane Departure Warning does not activate.	On	On/Off	A	—	×
	When the steering wheel operation assistance is turned off	The warning timing in which the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) system determines that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane can be changed.	Med	Early/Med/Late/Adaptive	A	—	×
		The sensitivity of the warning for the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) can be changed.	Med	Often/Med/Rare	A	—	×
	The type of Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning can be changed.		Vibration	Vibration/Beep/Rumbl.	A	—	×
	The warning intensity/volume of the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) system can be changed.	Vibration	Low	High/Low	A	—	×
		Rumbl.	Low	High/Mid/Low	A	—	×
		Beep	Low	High/Low	A	—	×



# Personalisation Features

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) (page 4-84)	The system can be changed so that Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) does not operate.*1	On	On/Off	A	—	×
	Warning beep volume*2	High	High/ Low/ Off	A	—	×
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) (page 4-89)	The system can be changed so that Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) does not operate.*1	On	On/Off	A	—	×
	The distance at which the vehicle ahead indicated in the display illuminates in amber can be changed.	Near	Far/Med./Near	A	—	×
Driver Attention Alert (DAA) (page 4-93)	The system can be changed so that Driver Attention Alert (DAA) does not operate.*1	On	On/Off	A	—	×
360° View Monitor (page 4-130)	Setting can be changed so that the 360° view monitor is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched to ON.	Off	On/Off	A	—	×
	Setting can be changed so that the display of the estimated forward line of progress is not displayed.	On	On/Off	A	—	×
	Setting can be changed so that the top view/front view displayed while the vehicle is moving in the forward direction after reversing is not displayed.	On	On/Off	A	—	×
Parking sensor system (page 4-187)	Display*3/non-display	On	On/Off	A	—	×
<b>Vehicle</b>						
Door locks (page 3-12)	Operation condition of auto lock/unlock function	Lock: When Driving Un- lock: IGN Off	Lock: Out of Park Unlock: In Park/ Lock: Shifting Out of Park/ Lock: When Driving Unlock: In Park/ Lock: When Driving Unlock: IGN Off/ Lock: When Driving/ Off	A	D	×

# Personalisation Features

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
Advanced keyless entry system (page 3-7)	Time for locking door automatically	30 seconds	90 seconds/ 60 seconds/ 30 seconds	A	—	×
	Walk-away auto lock function operation/ non-operational	Off	On/Off	A	—	×
	Beep volume when locking/unlocking	Medium	High/ Medium/ Low/ Off	A	E, F	×
Illuminated entry system (page 5-95)	Time until interior lights turn off after closing door	15 seconds	60 seconds/ 30 seconds/ 15 seconds/ 7.5 seconds	A	—	×
	Time until interior lights turn off automatically when any door is not closed completely	30 minutes	60 minutes/ 30 minutes/ 10 minutes	A	—	×
Auto-wiper control (page 4-50)	Operational/non-operational	On	On/Off*4	A	—	×
Running lights (page 4-47)	Operational/non-operational	On	On/Off	—	—	×
Auto-light control (page 4-44)	Timing by which lights turn on	Medium	High/ Med. High/ Medium/ Med. Low/ Low	A	—	×
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) (page 4-81)	Operational/non-operational*1	On	On/Off	A	—	×
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) (page 4-81)	Operational/non-operational*1	On	On/Off	A	—	×
Lights-on reminder (page 7-38)	Warning beep volume	High	High/Low/Off	A	—	×
Coming home light (page 4-46)	Time until headlights turn off	30 seconds	120 seconds/ 90 seconds/ 60 seconds/ 30 seconds/ Off	A	—	×

# Personalisation Features

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
Leaving home light (page 4-47)	Operational/non-operational	Off	On/Off	A	—	×
Direction indicator (page 4-49)	Beep volume	High	High/Low	A	—	×
Three-flash turn signal (page 4-49)	Operational/non-operational	On or Off	On/Off	A	—	×
Ambient lights (page 5-93)	Ambient lights brightness* <sup>5</sup>	Medium	Light/ Medium/ Dark/ Off* <sup>6</sup>	A	—	×
Rear window defogger (page 4-53)	The operation time for the rear window defogger can be changed.	15 minutes	15 minutes/ Continuous* <sup>7</sup>	—	—	×
<b>System</b>						
Language	Language indicated in display	English	Depends on market* <sup>8</sup>	A	—	×
Temperature	Temperature unit indicated in display	°C	°F/°C	A	—	×
Distance	Distance unit indicated in display	km	mi/km	A	—	×
<b>Fuel Economy Monitor</b> (page 4-71)						
Ending display	Display/non-display	Off	On/Off	B	—	×
Fuel economy resetting procedure*	Linkage/non-linkage with fuel economy reset and trip meter A reset	Off	On/Off	B	—	×

# Personalisation Features

Item	Feature	Factory Setting	Available Settings	Settings Change Method		
				①	②	③
<b>Active Driving Display</b> (page 4-27)						
Display	Setting can be changed so that the Active Driving Display is not displayed.	On	On/Off	C	—	×
	The display height (up/down position) can be changed.	0	13 steps up/down from initial setting (total: 27 steps)	C	—	×
	The method for adjusting the display brightness (automatically/manually) can be changed.	Auto	Auto/Man.	C	—	×
	The standard brightness with the automatic brightness adjustment can be changed.	0	2 steps up/down from initial setting (total: 5 steps)	C	—	×
	The standard brightness with the manual brightness adjustment can be changed.	0	20 steps up/down from initial setting (total: 41 steps)	C	—	×
	The display angle can be changed.	0	3steps up/down from initial setting (total: 7steps)	C	—	×
Navigation guidance	Display/non-display	On	On/Off	C	—	×

\*1 Though these systems can be turned Off, doing so will defeat the purpose of the system and Mazda recommends that these systems remain On.

\*2 Only the volume of the warning beep during Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) operation can be changed. The volume of the warning beep during Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) operation cannot be changed.

\*3 When the ultrasonic sensors detect an obstruction, the contents indicated on the centre display switches to the 360°View Monitor. (Vehicles with 360°View Monitor)

\*4 If the auto-wiper control is set to Off, the wiper lever **AUTO** position is set to intermittent operation.

\*5 Change the ambient light illumination level with the position lights or headlights turned on.

\*6 When set to OFF, the ambient lights remain turned off regardless of whether or not the position lights or headlights are on or off. However, they will turn on or off in conjunction with the illuminated entry system.

\*7 The operation may stop in 15 minutes due to the effect of the outside temperature even if the operation time of the rear window defogger has been changed to Continuous.

\*8 Available only in display from the centre display.

---

# **10** Index

# Index

---

## A

Accessory Socket..... 5-95  
Active Driving Display..... 4-27  
Adaptive Front Lighting System  
(AFS)..... 4-81  
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)..... 4-81  
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and  
Accessories..... 8-3  
Advanced Key  
    Advanced keyless entry system..... 3-7  
    Operational range..... 3-8  
Advanced Keyless Entry System..... 3-7  
Advanced Smart City Brake Support  
(Advanced SCBS)..... 4-121  
    Collision warning..... 4-123  
    Stopping the Advanced Smart City  
    Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)  
    system operation..... 4-123  
Air Bag Systems..... 2-54  
Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System  
Warning Beep..... 7-38  
Air-Conditioning System..... 5-4  
    Front Air Conditioner..... 5-7  
    Operating Tips..... 5-4  
    Rear Air Conditioner..... 5-13  
    Vent Operation..... 5-5  
    Vent Operation (Rear)..... 5-11  
Ambient Temperature Display..... 4-23  
Antilock Brake System (ABS)..... 4-66  
Armrest Box..... 5-101  
Audio Control Switch  
    Adjusting the Volume..... 5-16  
    Seek Switch..... 5-16  
Audio Set  
    Android Auto™..... 5-44  
    Apple CarPlay..... 5-41  
    Applications..... 5-75  
    AUX..... 5-35  
    Bluetooth®..... 5-48  
    CD Player..... 5-29

DVD Player..... 5-32  
Radio..... 5-27  
Settings..... 5-73  
Troubleshooting..... 5-76  
USB..... 5-36  
Voice Recognition..... 5-71  
Volume/Display/Sound  
Controls..... 5-25  
Audio System  
    Aerial..... 5-19  
    Appendix..... 5-82  
    Audio Control Switch..... 5-16  
    Audio Set..... 5-20  
    AUX/USB mode..... 5-17  
    Before Using the Audio  
    System..... 5-16  
AUTOHOLD..... 4-60  
AUTOHOLD Warning Beep..... 7-40  
Automatic Transaxle..... 4-36  
    Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)..... 4-39  
    Automatic transaxle controls..... 4-36  
    Driving tips..... 4-43  
    Manual shift mode..... 4-40  
    Shift-lock system..... 4-37  
    Transaxle ranges..... 4-38

## B

Battery..... 6-26  
    Inspecting electrolyte level..... 6-28  
    Maintenance..... 6-27  
    Recharging..... 6-28  
    Replacement..... 6-28  
    Specifications..... 9-4  
Battery Runs Out..... 7-12  
    Jump-starting..... 7-12  
Beep Sounds  
    Lights-on reminder..... 7-38  
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)..... 4-84  
    Cancelling operation of Blind Spot  
    Monitoring (BSM)..... 4-88

Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning	
Beep.....	7-40
Bluetooth®	
Bluetooth® Audio.....	5-54
Bluetooth® Hands-Free.....	5-62
Bluetooth® Preparation.....	5-51
Body Lubrication.....	6-20
Bonnet Release.....	6-11
Bottle Holder.....	5-99
Brakes	
Brake assist.....	4-59
Electric parking brake (EPB).....	4-56
Foot brake.....	4-56
Pad wear indicator.....	4-58
Parking brake.....	4-56
Warning light.....	4-58
<b>C</b>	
Capacities.....	9-5
Carbon Monoxide.....	3-25
Cell Phones.....	8-4
Centre Console.....	5-100
Child Restraint	
Categories of child-restraint	
systems.....	2-41
Child-restraint precautions.....	2-37
Child-restraint system installation	
position.....	2-41
Child-restraint system suitability for	
various seat positions table.....	2-46
Installing child-restraint	
systems.....	2-50
Collection and Processing of Data in the	
Vehicle.....	8-5
Collision warning.....	7-41
Coming Home Light.....	4-46
Console Box.....	5-100
Control Status Display.....	4-72
Cruise Control.....	4-169
Cruise control switch.....	4-169

Cruise main indication (white)/cruise	
set indication (green).....	4-170
Cup Holder.....	5-98

## D

Defogger.....	4-53
Rear window.....	4-53
Deposit Cleaner.....	3-22
Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D	
2.2).....	4-173
Dimensions.....	9-6
Direction Indicators.....	4-49
Distance Recognition Support System	
(DRSS).....	4-89
Indication on display.....	4-89
Door Locks.....	3-9
Driver Attention Alert (DAA).....	4-93
Drive Selection.....	4-74
Driving In Flooded Area.....	3-42
Driving Tips.....	3-37
Automatic transaxle.....	4-43
Driving in flooded area.....	3-42
Floor mat.....	3-39
Hazardous driving.....	3-38
Rocking the vehicle.....	3-40
Running-in.....	3-37
Saving fuel and protection of the	
environment.....	3-37
Turbocharged vehicles (SKYACTIV-	
D 2.2).....	3-43
Winter driving.....	3-40
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).....	4-69
TCS/DSC indicator light.....	4-69

## E

Effectiveness Display.....	4-73
Electric parking brake (EPB).....	4-56
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning	
Beep.....	7-40

# Index

---

Electronic steering lock warning  
beep..... 7-39

Emergency Starting  
Push-starting..... 7-15  
Running out of fuel (SKYACTIV-D  
2.2)..... 7-16  
Starting a flooded engine  
(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)..... 7-15

Emergency Stop Signal System..... 4-64

Emergency Towing  
Towing description..... 7-19  
Towing hooks..... 7-21

Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-  
D 2.2)..... 3-24

Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-  
G 2.5)..... 3-23

Ending Screen Display..... 4-73

Engine  
Bonnet release..... 6-11  
Coolant..... 6-17  
Engine compartment overview.... 6-13  
Exhaust gas..... 3-25  
Oil..... 6-14  
Starting..... 4-5

Engine Coolant Temperature  
Gauge..... 4-22

Essential Information..... 6-2

Exhaust Gas..... 3-25

Exterior Care..... 6-48  
Aluminium wheel maintenance... 6-52  
Bright-metal maintenance..... 6-52  
Cavity protection..... 6-52  
Maintaining the finish..... 6-49  
Paint damage touch-up..... 6-51  
Plastic part maintenance..... 6-52  
Undercoating..... 6-52

## F

Flasher  
Hazard warning..... 4-55

Headlights..... 4-44

Flat Tyre..... 7-3  
Mounting the spare tyre..... 7-10  
Removing a flat tyre..... 7-7

Floor Mat..... 3-39

Fluid  
Brake..... 6-19  
Washer..... 6-20

Fluids  
Classification..... 9-5

Fog Lights..... 4-48  
Front..... 4-48

Foot Brake..... 4-56

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).... 4-157

Front Seat..... 2-5

Fuel  
Filler flap and cap..... 3-26  
Gauge..... 4-23  
Requirements (SKYACTIV-D  
2.2)..... 3-23  
Requirements (SKYACTIV-G  
2.5)..... 3-22  
Tank capacity..... 9-5

Fuel Consumption Display..... 4-71

Fuel Economy Monitor..... 4-71  
Control Status Display..... 4-72  
Effectiveness Display..... 4-73  
Ending Screen Display..... 4-73  
Fuel Consumption Display..... 4-71

Fuses..... 6-42  
Panel description..... 6-44  
Replacement..... 6-42

## G

Gauges..... 4-18  
Glove Compartment..... 5-100

## H

Hazardous Driving..... 3-38  
Hazard Warning Flasher..... 4-55



Headlights	
Coming home light.....	4-46
Control.....	4-44
Flashing.....	4-46
Headlight flashing.....	4-46
High-low beam.....	4-46
Leaving home light.....	4-47
Levelling.....	4-47
Running lights.....	4-47
Head Restraint.....	2-25
Hill Launch Assist (HLA).....	4-65
Horn.....	4-54

## I

If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes.....	7-23
If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate.....	7-43
Ignition	
Switch.....	4-4
Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep.....	7-39
Illuminated Entry System.....	5-95
Immobilizer System.....	3-33
Indication/Indicator Lights.....	4-31
Indicator Lights	
Glow plug.....	4-34
Low engine coolant temperature.....	4-34
Wrench.....	4-34
Inspecting Brake Fluid Level.....	6-19
Inspecting Coolant Level.....	6-17
Inspecting Engine Oil Level.....	6-16
Inspecting Washer Fluid Level.....	6-20
Instrument Cluster.....	4-18
Message indicated on multi- information display.....	7-34
Instrument Panel Illumination.....	4-19
Interior Care.....	6-53

Active driving display maintenance.....	6-55
Cleaning the window interiors.....	6-55
Instrument panel top (Soft pad) maintenance.....	6-55
Leather upholstery maintenance.....	6-54
Panel maintenance.....	6-55
Plastic part maintenance.....	6-55
Seat belt maintenance.....	6-53
Upholstery maintenance.....	6-54
Vinyl upholstery maintenance.....	6-54
Interior Lights.....	5-93
Luggage compartment light.....	5-93
Map lights.....	5-93
Overhead lights.....	5-93
i-ACTIVSENSE.....	4-78
Active safety technology.....	4-78
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS).....	4-81
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH).....	4-81
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS).....	4-121
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).....	4-84
Camera and sensors.....	4-79
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS).....	4-89
Driver Attention Alert (DAA).....	4-93
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).....	4-157
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....	4-110
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC).....	4-99
Pre-crash safety technology.....	4-79
Radar sensors (rear).....	4-165
Radar sensor (front).....	4-162
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....	4-95

# Index

---

Smart Brake Support (SBS).....	4-128
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R).....	4-124
Ultrasonic sensor (rear).....	4-167
360°View Monitor.....	4-130
i-ACTIV AWD Operation.....	4-75
i-stop.....	4-11
Indicator light (Green).....	4-16
i-stop OFF switch.....	4-14
Vehicle roll prevention function.....	4-15
Warning light (Amber).....	4-16
i-stop warning beep.....	7-40

## J

Jack.....	7-4
Jump-Starting.....	7-12

## K

Keyless Entry System.....	3-3
Keys.....	3-2
Key suspend function.....	3-6
Transmitter.....	3-4
Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-39
Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-39
Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep.....	7-39
Key Suspend Function.....	3-6

## L

Label Information.....	9-2
Lane Departure Warning sound.....	7-41
Lane-change Signals.....	4-49
Lane-Change Signals.....	4-49
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....	4-110

Leaving Home Light.....	4-47
Liftgate.....	3-15
When liftgate cannot be opened.....	7-42
Lighting Control.....	4-44
Lights-on Reminder.....	7-38
Light Bulbs	
Replacement.....	6-34
Specifications.....	9-6
Lubricant Quality.....	9-5
Luggage Compartment.....	5-102
Cargo Securing Loops.....	5-102
Cargo Sub-Compartment.....	5-102
Luggage Compartment Light.....	5-93

## M

Maintenance	
Information.....	6-2
Scheduled.....	6-3
Maintenance Monitor.....	6-7
Map Lights.....	5-93
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC).....	4-99
Close proximity warning.....	4-102
Cruise control function.....	4-107
Display indication.....	4-101
Setting the system.....	4-102
Shift-up/shift-down request display.....	4-107
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) System warnings.....	7-40
Message Indicated on Display.....	7-36
Message Indicated on Multi-information Display.....	7-34
Meters and Gauges.....	4-18
Mirrors	
Outside mirrors.....	3-28
Rearview mirror.....	3-29
Multi-information Display.....	4-20
Average fuel economy.....	4-24

Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)	
Display.....	4-25
Cruise Control Set Vehicle Speed	
Display.....	4-26
Current fuel economy.....	4-25
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) display.....	4-25
Distance-to-empty.....	4-24
Engine Coolant Temperature	
Gauge.....	4-22
Fuel gauge.....	4-23
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display.....	4-26
Maintenance monitor.....	4-25
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) display.....	4-26
Message Display.....	4-26
Odometer and trip meter.....	4-21
Outside temperature display.....	4-23

## O

Odometer and Trip Meter.....	4-21
Outside Mirrors.....	3-28
Outside Temperature Display.....	4-23
Overhead Console.....	5-99
Overhead Lights.....	5-93
Overheating.....	7-17
Owner Maintenance	
Closing the bonnet.....	6-12
Engine compartment overview....	6-13
Key battery replacement.....	6-29
Opening the bonnet.....	6-11
Owner maintenance precautions....	6-9

## P

Parking Brake.....	4-56
Parking Sensor System.....	4-182
Park assist sensor system operation.....	4-186

Sensor detection range.....	4-184
Personalisation Features.....	9-9
Power Liftgate.....	3-17
Power Liftgate Warning Beep.....	7-39
Power Steering.....	4-77
Power Steering Warning Buzzer.....	7-40
Power Windows.....	3-30

## R

Radar Sensors (Rear).....	4-165
Radar Sensor (Front).....	4-162
Rearview Mirror.....	3-29
Rear Coat Hooks.....	5-104
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....	4-95
Rear Door Child Safety Locks.....	3-15
Rear Door Sunshade.....	5-104
Rear View Monitor.....	4-174
Displayable range on the screen.....	4-176
Picture quality adjustment.....	4-180
Rear view monitor operation....	4-177
Rear view parking camera location.....	4-175
Switching to the rear view monitor display.....	4-175
Variance between actual road conditions and displayed image.....	4-179
Viewing the display.....	4-177
Rear window	
Rear Window Defogger.....	4-53
Rear Window Defogger.....	4-53
Rear Window Washer.....	4-53
Rear Window Wiper.....	4-53
Recommended Oil.....	6-14
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country.....	8-2
Replacement	
Fuse.....	6-42
Key battery.....	6-29

# Index

---

Light bulbs.....	6-34
Tyres.....	6-32
Wheel.....	6-33
Wiper.....	6-21
Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-39
Rocking the Vehicle.....	3-40
Running-In.....	3-37

## S

Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment.....	3-37
Scheduled Maintenance.....	6-3
Seats.....	2-5
Driving position memory.....	2-10
Front seat.....	2-5
Head restraint.....	2-25
Seat warmer.....	2-28
Second-row Seats (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type).....	2-15
Second-Row Seat (Captain Seat Type).....	2-19
Third-row seat.....	2-23
Seat Belt System.....	2-33
Emergency locking.....	2-32
Pregnant women.....	2-32
Seat belt precautions.....	2-30
3-point type.....	2-33
Seat Belt Warning Beep.....	7-38
Second-row Seats (6:4 Split Adjustable- type Bench Seat Type).....	2-15
Second-Row Seat (Captain Seat Type).....	2-19
Security System	
Immobilizer system.....	3-33
Theft-deterrent system.....	3-35
Shopping Bag Hook.....	5-103
Smart Brake Support (SBS).....	4-128
Collision warning.....	4-129
Stopping the Smart Brake Support (SBS) system operation.....	4-129
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R).....	4-124
Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system operation.....	4-127
Spare Tyre.....	7-5
Specifications.....	9-4
Speedometer.....	4-18
SRS Air Bags	
How the SRS air bags work.....	2-60
Limitations to SRS air bag.....	2-64
Monitoring.....	2-66
SRS air bag deployment criteria.....	2-63
Supplementary restraint system components.....	2-59
Starting the Engine.....	4-5
Steering Wheel	
Horn.....	4-54
Storage Box.....	5-100
Storage Compartments.....	5-99
Armrest box.....	5-101
Centre console.....	5-100
Console box.....	5-100
Glove compartment.....	5-100
Luggage Compartment.....	5-102
Overhead console.....	5-99
Rear coat hooks.....	5-104
Shopping bag hook.....	5-103
Storage Box.....	5-100
Sunshade (Rear door window).....	5-104
Sunvisors.....	5-93

## T

Tachometer.....	4-18
Theft-Deterrent System.....	3-35
Third-Row Seat.....	2-23

Three-flash Turn Signal.....	4-49
Towing	
Hook.....	7-21
Towing caravans and trailers.....	3-44
Towing Description.....	7-19
Traction Control System (TCS).....	4-67
TCS OFF Indicator Light.....	4-68
TCS OFF switch.....	4-68
TCS/DSC indicator light.....	4-67
Trailer Stability Assist (TSA).....	4-70
Transmitter.....	3-4
Trip Meter.....	4-21
Trouble	
Battery runs out.....	7-12
Emergency starting.....	7-15
Emergency towing.....	7-19
Flat tyre.....	7-3
Overheating.....	7-17
Parking in an emergency.....	7-2
Warning/indicator lights and warning sounds.....	7-23
When liftgate cannot be opened.....	7-42
Turn and Lane-Change Signals.....	4-49
Tyres.....	6-31
Flat tyre.....	7-3
Replacing a tyre.....	6-32
Replacing a wheel.....	6-33
Snow tyres.....	3-41
Specifications.....	9-7
Temporary spare tyre.....	6-33
Tyre chains.....	3-41
Tyre inflation pressure.....	6-31
Tyre rotation.....	6-32

## U

Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear).....	4-167
USB Power Outlet.....	5-96

## V

Vanity Mirrors.....	5-93
Vehicle Information Labels.....	9-2

## W

Warning Indication/Warning Lights.....	4-29
Warning Sound is Activated.....	7-38
Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep.....	7-38
AUTOHOLD Warning Beep.....	7-40
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep.....	7-40
Collision warning.....	7-41
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Beep.....	7-40
Electronic steering lock warning beep.....	7-39
Ignition not switched off (STOP) warning beep.....	7-39
i-stop warning beep.....	7-40
Key left-in-luggage compartment warning beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-39
Key left-in-vehicle warning beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-39
Key removed from vehicle warning beep.....	7-39
Lane Departure Warning sound.....	7-41
Lights-on reminder.....	7-38
Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) System warnings.....	7-40
Power Liftgate Warning Beep.....	7-39
Power steering warning buzzer.....	7-40
Request switch inoperable warning beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-39
Seat belt warning beep.....	7-38

# Index

---

Warning/Buzzer.....	7-23
Warranty.....	8-2
Windows	
Power windows.....	3-30
Windscreen Washer.....	4-52
Windscreen Wipers.....	4-50
Winter Driving.....	3-40
Wiper	
Replacing Rear Window Wiper Blade.....	6-24
Replacing windscreen wiper blades.....	6-21

## 0-9

360°View Monitor.....	4-130
-----------------------	-------

Front wide view.....	4-144
How to use the system.....	4-135
Margin of error between road surface on screen and actual road surface.....	4-153
Rear wide view.....	4-151
Side view.....	4-145
Top view/Front view.....	4-141
Top view/Rear view.....	4-148
Types of images displayed on the screen.....	4-133



